Workstation Software

CLIPSTER

Edit Tool

User Guide

CLIPSTER Edit Tool User Guide

Introduction

Basics

Getting Started

The Tool Area

The Control Area

The Timeline

Timeline Element Properties

The Conforming Tool

The Menus

Appendix

Index

User Guide Version 2.5 for the CLIPSTER Edit Tool Version 2.5

Copyright © 2008-2009 by DVS Digital Video Systems AG, Hanover. All rights reserved.

The manuals as well as the soft- and/or hardware described here and all their constituent parts are protected by copyright. Without the express permission of DVS Digital Video Systems AG any form of use which goes beyond the narrow bounds prescribed by copyright legislation is prohibited and liable to prosecution.

This particularly applies to duplication, copying, translation, processing, evaluation, publishing, and storing and/or processing in an electronic system.

Specifications and data may change without notice. We offer no guarantee that this documentation is correct and/or complete. In no event shall DVS Digital Video Systems AG be liable for any damages whatsoever (including without limitation any special, indirect or consequential damages, and damages resulting from loss of use, data or profits, or business interruption) arising out of the use of or inability to use the hardware, software and/or manual materials.

Those parts of this documentation that describe optional software or hardware features usually contain a corresponding note. Anyway, a lack of this note does not mean any commitment from DVS Digital Video Systems AG.

CLIPSTER, DVS and Spycer are registered trademarks of DVS Digital Video Systems AG. Adobe and Photoshop are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries. Apple and QuickTime are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Kodak and Cineon are trademarks of Eastman Kodak Company. IRIX and SGI are registered trademarks of Silicon Graphics, Inc. Windows, the Windows logo and Windows Media are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Any other product names mentioned in this documentation may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners and as such are subject to the usual statutory provisions.

Headquarters:

DVS Digital Video Systems AG
Krepenstr. 8
30165 Hannover
GERMANY

Phone:	+49-511-67807-0
Fax:	+49-511-630070
E-mail:	info@dvs.de
Internet:	http://www.dvs.de

Support:

Phone:	+49-511-67807-25
Fax:	+49-511-67807-31
E-mail:	support@dvs.de

For the Americas:

U.S. Headquarters:

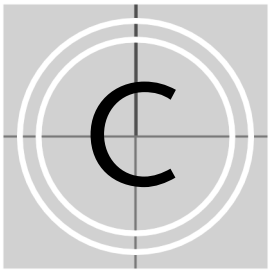
DVS Digital Video, Inc.
300 East Magnolia Boulevard, Suite 102
Burbank, CA 91502
USA

Phone:	+1-818-846-3600
Fax:	+1-818-846-3648
E-mail:	info@dvsus.com
Internet:	http://www.dvsus.com

Support:

E-mail:	support@dvsus.com

Contents



1 Introduction 1-1

1.1 Overview 1-4
1.2 Target Group 1-5
1.3 Conventions Used in this User Guide 1-6
1.4 Important Notes 1-7
1.5 New in the Edit Tool 1-8

2 Basics 2-1

2.1 Overview of the Software Structure 2-2
2.2 Overview of the User Interface 2-6
2.3 The Task Bar 2-9
2.4 Working in Real Time 2-11
2.4.1 Working with Proxies 2-11
2.4.2 Working with Prerendered Data 2-12
2.5 Notes on Project Management 2-14
2.6 Notes on Source Timecode and Keycode 2-15
2.6.1 About Source Timecode 2-15
2.6.2 About Keycode 2-16
2.7 About Timecode / Frame Number Fields 2-17

3 Getting Started 3-1

3.1 Starting the Program 3-2
3.2 First Steps in the Edit Tool 3-3
3.2.1 Preparing the Bin 3-3
3.2.2 Adding Clips to the Timeline 3-6
3.2.3 Changing the View of the Timeline 3-9
3.2.4 Moving Clips in the Timeline 3-10

3.2.5 Manipulating In- and Outpoints in the Timeline 3-11
3.2.6 Adding a Transition to the Timeline 3-13
3.2.7 Applying Effects to Clips in the Timeline 3-15
3.3 Exiting the Program 3-18

4 The Tool Area 4-1

4.1 Changing the Size of the Tool Area 4-2
4.2 The Bin 4-3
4.2.1 Configuring the Bin 4-4
4.2.2 Adding Clips to the Bin 4-6
4.2.3 Details about Clips 4-10
4.2.4 Working with Folders in the Bin 4-14
4.2.5 Working with Clips in the Bin 4-16
4.2.6 Using Proxies 4-22
4.3 Effects 4-25
4.3.1 Adding Effects to the Timeline 4-25
4.3.2 Creating Preset Effects 4-26
4.3.3 Using Preset Effects 4-28
4.3.4 Administration of Preset Effects 4-29
4.4 Jobs 4-33
4.5 The Marker Table 4-34
4.6 The Performance Monitor 4-36
4.6.1 The Chart 4-38
4.6.2 Chart Controls 4-40
4.6.3 The Status Bar 4-41
4.6.4 The Drop Table 4-42
4.6.5 The Table Controls 4-43
4.6.6 Using the Performance Monitor 4-44

5 The Control Area 5-1

5.1 The Video Overlay 5-2
5.1.1 Configuring the Video Overlay 5-2
5.1.2 The Video Scopes 5-3
5.2 The Scrub Bar of the Control Area 5-9
5.3 Controls 5-11
5.4 The Source-Edit Mode 5-14
5.4.1 Controlling the Clip from the Bin 5-16
5.4.2 Setting In- and Outpoint for the Clip from the Bin 5-18

5.4.3 Processing the Source Material of a Video Clip 5-21
5.5 The Trim Mode 5-24
5.5.1 The Trim Controls 5-25
5.5.2 Setting In- and Outpoints of Clips 5-27
5.6 The Slave Mode Control Window 5-29

6 The Timeline 6-1

6.1 Adding Clips to the Timeline 6-2
6.1.1 Taking a Clip Directly from the Bin 6-2
6.1.2 Taking a Clip from the Control Area 6-4
6.2 Configuring the Timeline 6-6
6.2.1 Changing the Layout of the Timeline Area 6-6
6.2.2 Changing the Appearance of Video Clips 6-8
6.2.3 Configuring the Timeline Scale 6-9
6.2.4 Configuring the Tooltips of Clips 6-10
6.2.5 Changing the Display Type 6-10
6.2.6 Configuring the Video and Audio Output 6-12
6.2.7 Further Audio Configurations 6-17
6.2.8 Loading and Applying a 3D LUT File 6-18
6.2.9 Cropping the Timeline 6-21
6.2.10 Burn-in Information at the Output(s) 6-25
6.2.11 Naming Tracks 6-28
6.3 Controlling the Timeline 6-29
6.3.1 Moving within the Timeline 6-29
6.3.2 Setting an In- and Outpoint for the Timeline 6-32
6.3.3 The Insert/Overwrite Mode of the Timeline 6-34
6.3.4 Muting and Locking Tracks 6-36
6.4 Working with the Timeline in General 6-38
6.4.1 Moving Clips within the Timeline 6-38
6.4.2 Selecting Clips 6-40
6.4.3 Cutting, Copying or Pasting Clips 6-41
6.4.4 Adding Clips of a Certain Length to the Timeline 6-41
6.4.5 Deleting Timeline Elements in a Specified Range 6-42
6.4.6 Performing a Cut 6-44
6.4.7 Setting Transitions 6-44
6.4.8 Prerendering of Timeline Elements 6-46
6.4.9 Changing In- and Outpoints of Timeline Elements 6-47
6.4.10 Advanced Trimming 6-50
6.4.11 Marking Positions in the Timeline 6-52

6.4.12 Attaching Audio Clips to Video Clips 6-55
6.4.13 Time Stretching or Time Compression of Clips 6-56
6.4.14 Relinking Clips 6-58
6.5 Working with Video Clips 6-60
6.5.1 The Clip's Information 6-60
6.5.2 The Context Menu of Video Clips 6-61
6.5.3 Consistencies of Clips 6-63
6.5.4 Matching an Individual Video Frame 6-64
6.5.5 Processing the Source Material of a Timeline Element 6-66
6.5.6 Vertical Editing of Video Clips in the Timeline 6-67
6.5.7 Scene Detection 6-69
6.5.8 Displaying the Alpha Channel 6-72
6.6 Working with Audio Clips 6-74
6.6.1 The Clip's Information 6-74
6.6.2 The Context Menu of Audio Clips 6-75
6.6.3 Volume Control 6-77
6.6.4 Waveform Display 6-79
6.7 Finalizing the Timeline 6-80
6.7.1 General Settings 6-81
6.7.2 Configuring Video 6-82
6.7.3 Configuring Audio 6-86
6.7.4 Finalizing 6-88
6.7.5 The Finalized Output (Files per Folder) 6-88
6.7.6 Name Options 6-90

7 Timeline Element Properties 7-1

7.1 Accessing the Timeline Element Properties 7-2
7.2 General Items of the Properties Area 7-3
7.3 Changing Values of Sliders and Entry Fields 7-5
7.4 Closing the Timeline Element Properties 7-6
7.5 Properties of a Transition 7-7
7.6 Properties of a Video Clip 7-10
7.6.1 Adding Effects 7-11
7.6.2 Altering Effect Settings 7-12
7.6.3 Using Preset Effects in the Properties Area 7-14
7.7 The Operator 'Zoom + Pan' 7-16
7.7.1 Items for Zooming 7-16
7.7.2 Items for Panning 7-17

7.7.3 Advanced Settings 7-18
7.8 Keyframing 7-21
7.8.1 The Parameters List 7-21
7.8.2 Viewing the Graph 7-23
7.8.3 Moving within the Graph 7-25
7.8.4 Setting Keyframes 7-27
7.8.5 Positioning Keyframes 7-27
7.8.6 Further Possibilities 7-28
7.9 The Operator 'Flip Flop' 7-30
7.10 The Operator '1st Color Correction' 7-31
7.10.1 Static LUT 7-31
7.10.2 Master / Luma / Chroma 7-32
7.10.3 Global 7-34
7.10.4 Lift / Gamma / Gain 7-35
7.10.5 Color Wheel 7-36
7.11 The Operator '2nd Color Correction' 7-38
7.11.1 Usage of the Secondary Color Correction 7-38
7.11.2 The Color Vector List 7-41
7.11.3 The Color Mask Area 7-42
7.11.4 The Color Correction and Balance Area 7-48
7.12 Picture Masks 7-51
7.12.1 The Shapes List 7-51
7.12.2 Setting Shapes 7-52
7.12.3 Adjusting the Shapes 7-54
7.13 The Operator '6-Vector CC' 7-55
7.14 The Operator 'DeInterlace' 7-57

8 The Conforming Tool 8-1

8.1 Introduction to Conforming with the Edit Tool 8-2
8.1.1 Conforming in General 8-2
8.1.2 The Conforming Tool and its Mode 8-2
8.1.3 Important Notes 8-3
8.2 First Steps to Make a Conforming 8-6
8.2.1 Importing and Adding EDLs 8-6
8.2.2 Building up a Timeline 8-9
8.2.3 Conforming 8-13
8.2.4 Evaluation and Further Processing of the Conforming 8-18

8.3 Working with EDLs from the Timeline 8-22
8.4 The Conforming Mode in General 8-25
8.5 Conforming Mode – The Work Area 8-27
8.5.1 Viewing EDLs 8-27
8.5.2 Adapting the Appearances of the Tables 8-28
8.5.3 Changing Values and Entries 8-28
8.5.4 The Tab 'EDLs' 8-29
8.5.5 The Tab 'EDL Clips' 8-31
8.5.6 The Tab 'EDL Reels' 8-36
8.5.7 The Tab 'Original EDL' 8-38
8.6 Conforming Mode – The Conforming Controls 8-40
8.6.1 The Edit Controls 8-40
8.6.2 The View Controls 8-41
8.6.3 The Modify Controls 8-44
8.6.4 The Execute Controls 8-49
8.7 Conforming Mode – The Preview Area 8-60
8.7.1 Selecting Contents for Viewing 8-61
8.7.2 The Video Overlay 8-61
8.7.3 The Scrub Bar 8-62
8.7.4 The Preview Controls 8-63
8.7.5 Clip Properties 8-64
8.7.6 Working with Split Screen 8-64
8.7.7 Recreating Edit Points for an Offline Edited Clip 8-67
8.7.8 Resolving Multiple Found 8-67

9 The Menus 9-1

9.1 The Menu of the Program Icon 9-2
9.1.1 Minimize 9-2
9.1.2 Exit 9-2
9.2 The 'Project' Menu 9-3
9.2.1 New 9-3
9.2.2 Open… 9-4
9.2.3 Recent files 9-5
9.2.4 Insert Project… 9-5
9.2.5 Add EDL… 9-6
9.2.6 Add clips… 9-6
9.2.7 Save 9-6
9.2.8 Save As… 9-7
9.2.9 Update CineReel 9-7

9.2.10 Export EDL… 9-8
9.2.11 Finalize… 9-14
9.2.12 Prerender all 9-15
9.2.13 Extract files… 9-15
9.2.14 Load KDM… 9-16
9.2.15 Exit 9-16
9.3 The 'Edit' Menu 9-17
9.3.1 Undo 9-17
9.3.2 Redo 9-17
9.4 The 'Bin' Menu 9-18
9.4.1 Import Bin… 9-18
9.4.2 Export Bin… 9-19
9.4.3 Clear Bin 9-19
9.4.4 Check Bin 9-19
9.4.5 Generate proxies 9-21
9.4.6 Delete all proxies 9-22
9.4.7 Activate all proxies 9-22
9.4.8 Deactivate all proxies 9-23
9.5 The 'Options' Menu 9-24
9.5.1 Driver connect 9-24
9.5.2 Project config… 9-24
9.5.3 Defaults… 9-25
9.5.4 Load defaults… 9-25
9.5.5 Save defaults… 9-26
9.6 The 'Help' Menu 9-27
9.6.1 About 9-27
9.6.2 Manuals 9-27

A Appendix A-1

A.1 Glossary of Terms A-1
A.2 Keyboard Shortcuts A-7
A.3 Supported File Formats A-9
A.4 1D LUT Files A-13
A.5 3D LUT Files A-14
A.5.1 General Description A-14
A.5.2 3DL Files A-15
A.5.3 XML Files A-17

A.6 Slave Mode / RS-422 Control A-18
A.7 System Maintenance A-19
A.7.1 The Automatic Defragmentation Process A-19
A.7.2 Cleaning Temporary Data Manually A-21

I Index I-1



Introduction

This documentation describes how to use the Edit Tool of CLIPSTER, the real-time conforming and finishing system manufactured by DVS. CLIPSTER is a powerful high-resolution video workstation with enormous flexibility, especially designed to meet the demands of modern post production houses.

CLIPSTER offers capturing, online editing and storing of digital film and audio data in one device. The system performs all works in real time. Video data is stored and worked with in its original uncompressed format, independent of resolution, color space and bit depth. All formats and resolutions can be processed, from SD up to 4K, and the final result can be played out in a freely selectable format. Conversions and calculation times for render processes are rarely necessary because of the high-quality hardware developed by DVS. Additionally, up to 16 channels of audio can be in- or output by CLIPSTER and their data can be accessed and processed in the software as easily as the video material. All video and audio data are stored in the Windows file system and thus accessible right away when working with other applications.

The Edit Tool of CLIPSTER is the main part of the DVS software package. It is a software module that enables you to add video and audio clips to a timeline in any sequence you like and in a freely configurable number of tracks. When working with video you can edit your material with cuts, dissolves, wipes, etc. and scalings, pannings, zoomings, and/or color corrections. Thus you can create your perfect project. When working with audio, you can control the volume of a clip at every position in the timeline, for example, to create fade-ins and -outs. During all times your original material is never touched or altered because all editing processes are performed virtually. Of course, to provide for the best possible integration the Edit Tool is compatible with the EDL (edit decision list) standard and supports it via import and export functions. For conforming there is also an advanced conforming tool available. Once your project is finished, you can finalize it and save the edited clips in any video and file format you like.

In short, the Edit Tool of CLIPSTER offers:

– Easy and intuitive handling of the user interface,

- clips can be moved via drag and drop,
- user friendly designed timeline including editing functions,
- total control of the editing process via a real-time video overlay,
- project-oriented and adaptable clip management including thumbnail function,
- different formats are allowed in one project (multi-format editing),
- real-time view of timeline,
- EDL import and export function,
- projects can be built up via import or loading of an EDL,
- advanced conforming tool (conforming mode of the control area),
- projects can be finalized to a clip (render function),
- automatic and adaptable scaling of video material in the timeline,
- archive function which copies the files used in a project to a new location thereby reducing it to the necessary data only,
- full audio support, and
- an automatic defragmentation of the video storage for an optimized real-time performance.

Furthermore, there are several features optionally available for the Edit Tool which allow you to adapt the DVS software to your special needs. The following options are available:

JPEG2000 Upgrade Kit	Hardware accelerated JPEG2000 compression and real-time play-out of JPEG2000 encoded material.
DCI Upgrade Kit	Complete workflow for DCI compliant delivery packages, including hardware accelerated JPEG2000 compression, AES encryption as well as MXF wrapping, and real-time play-out of JPEG2000 compressed MXF material.
3D LUT and Color Management	Three-dimensional hardware look-up table for real-time color management and film-look preview/output.
12 Bit	Support of 12- and 16-bit file formats (DPX and TIFF) for in- and output.
4K Workflow	Real-time play-out of 4K material including among others real-time effects (e.g. zoom and pan and primary color correction) and non-real-time capturing.
Color Correction Panel	Tactile colorist control panel in a standard or deluxe variant for CLIPSTER's primary color correction.

Multi-Device	Enables a synchronous play-out/record of multiple DVS systems. One master device controls other devices via RS-422 for a synchronous play-out of the timeline or capturing with the Manual record/VTR task mode of the I/O Tool.
Raster	Customer tailored video rasters for in- and output.
Special Raster Formats	Some standard and non-standard formats including 1080p /50/60 (SMPTE 372), Slow PAL 625i /24 and Eureka 1980 × 1152i /25.
Remote Zoom & Pan	Remote control of real-time zoom and pan operations from a third-party color grader.
Secondary Color Correction	Secondary color correction as an effect for video clips in the Edit Tool.

1.1 Overview

This user guide informs you about the general handling of the Edit Tool as well as of its complete controllable interface.

The chapters in this user guide contain the following information:

Chapter 1	Begins with a short introduction to CLIPSTER and the Edit Tool, followed by a note regarding the audience this manual is written for and an explanation of the conventions used in this manual. Additionally, it provides important notes that you should read.
Chapter 2	Contains basic information about the Edit Tool. Here you can find information about the software structure as well as a first overview of the user interface of the Edit Tool. Furthermore, this chapter provides some general notes, for example, about how to manage projects with the DVS software.
Chapter 3	In addition to the information how to start and exit the program, you can find a beginner's tutorial which explains shortly how to work with the Edit Tool and how to start your first project in this chapter.
Chapter 4	Explains the tool area of the Edit Tool.
Chapter 5	This chapter describes the control area and the video overlay of the Edit Tool.
Chapter 6	In this chapter the timeline of the Edit Tool and timeline related tasks are described.
Chapter 7	This chapter explains and describes the timeline element properties of video clips and transitions. Individual effects that a video clip may provide are explained as well.
Chapter 8	Describes the conforming tool with all its features, and details how to conform data lists (e.g. EDLs or cut lists) with the Edit Tool.
Chapter 9	Provides information about the individual menu options of the menu bar of the Edit Tool.

Appendix	Gives additional information about the software. Among others you can find here a glossary of terms used in this user guide and the file formats that are supported by the DVS software.
Index	This chapter facilitates the search for specific terms.

1.2 Target Group

To use this user guide and the Edit Tool correctly you should have experience in PC handling and be familiar with the hardware handling of a video system. If you want to use the software to its full potential, you should also have extensive knowledge in the field of digital video.

Furthermore, to use the DVS system in connection with other equipment, e.g. a VTR, you should know how to handle this equipment.

1.3 Conventions Used in this User Guide

The following typographical conventions will be used in this documentation:

- Texts preceded by this symbol describe activities that you must perform in the order indicated.

– Texts preceded by this symbol are parts of a list.



Texts preceded by this symbol are general notes intended to facilitate work and help avoid errors.



You must pay particular attention to text that follows this symbol to avoid errors.

“ ” Texts enclosed by quotation marks are references to other manuals, guides, chapters, or sections.

’Window’	Text in bold with single quotation marks indicates a window name
BUTTON	Text in small caps and bold indicates push buttons
Group/Menu	Text in italic and bold indicates either a group name, menu name or options in a menu list
Menu » Option	In the specified group or menu select the stated item
Item	Text in bold only stands for other labeled items of the user interface
File	Directory structure or file
Entry	Parameters, selections or entries made in the program; it may also indicate a file syntax or contents of a file
[Key]	An individual key or a key combination on a keyboard

Keyboard Shortcuts

To perform options or procedures with the keyboard often requires a simultaneous pressing of two keys.

Example:

[Ctrl + F1]	If this is given, hold down the [Ctrl] key and press simultaneously the [F1] key.

1.4 Important Notes

Please observe the following while using the Edit Tool:



Only use the designated video drive (main storage) to store video and audio data. Other storage locations will be too slow for real-time operations.



Leave about 15 % of the overall main storage capacity empty of data for real-time performance reasons.



The real-time capability of CLIPSTER depends to a large extent on the performance of the system's hardware. Therefore, it is recommended to terminate all other programs when working with the DVS software.



After copying or recording large amounts of data to the main storage, it is recommended to leave the DVS software running for a longer period of time (e.g. over night) without performing any real-time tasks (play-out or record) or having the slave mode/VTR task mode activated. This will give the built-in defragmentation tool time to reorganize the files on the storage for an optimized real-time performance. For this the automatic starting of the defragmentation tool has to be enabled.



Your DVS system has been tested thoroughly and is very reliable. However, because of the vast amount of third-party software available, its reactions on the installation of such could not be tested. The installation of third-party software may disrupt the real-time capability and/or limit the functionality of your system.



When working with prerendered files and timeline elements that need a prerendering, it is recommended to activate the autosave function of the DVS software and set it to a relatively short interval.

1.5 New in the Edit Tool

The following lists the most important features and functions that were new in the latest versions of the Edit Tool:



Please note that the features and functions mentioned may be part of optional packages.

For further information please refer to the release notes of the DVS software.

New in Version 2.5

- Comprehensive tool for an easy and fast conforming (conforming mode of the control area)
- Updated export to EDL
- Smaller changes to keyframing
- Adaptable frame numbering for name options during finalizing
- Automatic creation of metadata file (*SequenceInfo.xml*) during finalizing/capturing for multi-clip detection
- Display of alpha channel of individual timeline clips in the video overlay and at the video outputs
- Presets for time stretching and time stretching for audio
- Relinking of clips in the timeline
- Consistency check of clips allows to change the software's default paths to find clips of projects exchanged between systems

New in Version 2.4

- DCI Mastering (see the "CLIPSTER DCI Mastering" supplement accessible via the software's online help)
- Variable information in file names for finalizing (name options)

New in Version 2.3

- Scene detection
- Render times for prerendering and finalizing approx. two times faster
- Real-time effects can be finalized at least in real-time speed
- Background rendering (tab **Jobs** of the tool area)
- 6-vector color correction
- Marker list with thumbnails
- 'Adaptive+' scaling algorithm

New in Version 2.2

- Color scheme for prerendered clips
- Enhanced output settings for SDI and DVI/analog
- Lin-to-Log conversion for 3D LUTs

– Slave mode remote control switchable between different protocols
– More than 100 graphic file formats for import/adding

New in Version 2.1

– Archive function via the ***Extract files...*** menu option
– Bin clip properties accessible from timeline (context menu)
– Keyframing for Zoom & Pan
– Burn-in information at the outputs
– Slave mode control window
– Configurable keyboard shortcuts (function keys) for preset effects
– Picture masks (shapes) for secondary color correction



Basics

The Edit Tool is one of the software modules of the DVS software and thus part of the software package for CLIPSTER. This chapter provides first some background information about the structure of the DVS software which includes a short overview of its different modules. After that an overview of the user interface of the Edit Tool is provided to familiarize you with its appearance. This will be followed by a description of the task bar of the software. The chapter will be concluded with some general notes, for example, about how to manage projects with the DVS software.

2.1 Overview of the Software Structure

The software package for the DVS system consists of various individual programs and modules that combined provide the system's unique capabilities to process digital video and audio in real time. The following diagram shows the communication processes between individual software parts and some hardware components in detail:

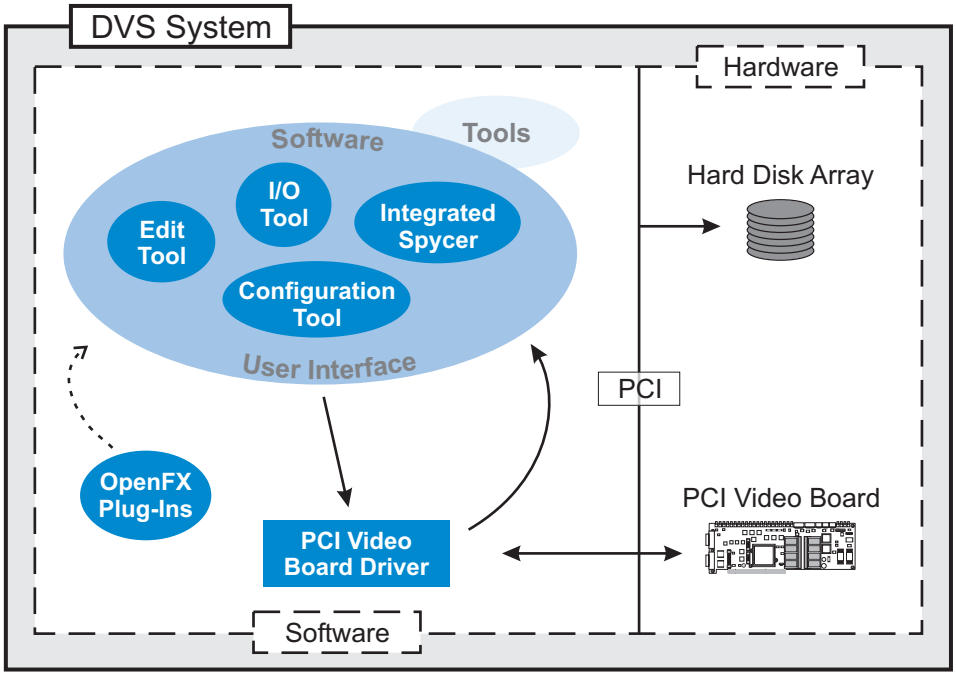


Figure 2-1: Structure of software

Although the graphic shows a software and a hardware side of the video system, this is only an abstraction of the real video device to show the ways of communication within the system.

Video Board and Driver

The central core of the whole system is the DVS PCI video board and its driver because they provide the functionality of the video system. Without them the system would not be able to display any video signals nor would the DVS software components be operational.

The PCI video board driver controls the video board and thus the in- and output of video signals. It runs in the background of your video system and is therefore not visible.

Software User Interface and Software Modules

The software user interface is the visible part of the DVS software package. It consists of individual software modules which control the DVS

system and are used to perform editing and video as well as audio processing tasks. These modules are the Edit Tool, the I/O Tool, the Configuration Tool, and Spycer, the innovative content management software by DVS. They are the basic software modules of the DVS system, i.e. the ones that you will use most in your every day work. You can see them in the drawing above in the oval 'Software User Interface'.

Depending on your system configuration there may be other tools and modules available on your system. Further information about these can be found in their respective user guides.

Once the DVS software is started, you can access the different modules available on your system easily via the task bar of the user interface (see section "The Task Bar" on page 2-9).

The Edit Tool

The Edit Tool is the software module that allows you to assemble video material by adding cuts, dissolves, wipes, etc. as well as audio material on a timeline. In the timeline you can add clips of different formats and resolutions and process them, for example, via color corrections, scalings or zooming and panning. Additionally, in this module you can perform a DCI Mastering and create properly encoded and encrypted digital cinema packages (DCPs, see the "CLIPSTER DCI Mastering" supplement accessible via the software's online help). The Edit Tool module is compatible with the EDL (edit decision list) standard and supports it via its sophisticated conforming tool, allowing you, for example, to import EDLs, conform them, work with the built-up timeline freely, and afterwards export your work to a new EDL. One of the main features of the Edit Tool is that all editing tasks are performed virtually, i.e. the original material on the storage is never altered. The clips used in the DVS software are only representations of the original material on the storage. With this you can use the same material over and over again with different effects while the master is always maintained.

The I/O Tool

The I/O Tool is mainly used for the digitization of a variety of different input sources, meaning the recording/capturing of video and audio data with the DVS system from other sources than computer storages. You can capture material from any source you like and record it in a freely selectable format, with or without color space conversion. For instance, you can capture data from telecines, VTRs, or even cameras – as desired in an automated batch processing mode or manually. Of course, playing out the recorded material as well as of all other clips present on the system can be performed without any effort as well. Furthermore, the processing of EDLs is fully supported in the software, for

example, via import and export functions (import via the I/O Tool and export via the Edit Tool).

Integrated Spycer

With Spycer, the innovative content management software by DVS, you can manage your content easily. It is a software application capable of handling large amounts of video data and their corresponding meta-data, providing you with integrated browse, search and management tools to retrieve data and gather information about them locally as well as via a network. Additionally it can be used to preview clips and add them to the bin of the DVS software, thus offering you even more possibilities than a file manager. Spycer is already integrated in the DVS software. It can be accessed the same way as the other software modules and is thus not needed as a stand-alone application. For CLIPSTER users it comes with the complete feature set and, furthermore, works seamlessly together with other available DVS products, such as the DVS-SAN.

The Configuration Tool

For the configuration and setup of the whole DVS system and its software you can use the Configuration Tool. Here you can set up, for example, the period for the automatic save function of the project file (autosave) as well as more software specific settings, such as the bin properties.

Tools and Services

Also part of the DVS software are various tools that can be used for a more basic configuration of the DVS system or may be of help during service and maintenance tasks, e.g. monitoring and error diagnostics of the hard- and software.

For instance, among them you can find the defragmentation tool which is a process automatically started with the DVS software and running in the background of the system. During stand-still times of the system the defragmentation tool will reorganize the files present on the storage for an optimized performance of real-time tasks such as a play-out or record. Among the tools it is the only process that runs in the system's background.

Most other tools delivered with the DVS software are used during the initial configuration and setup of the system only. In your daily work with the DVS system they are of no use.

Further information about the tools in general can be found in the "CLIPSTER Tools and Services" user guide accessible via the PDF files of the software's online help. For additional information about the defragmentation process in particular please refer to section "The Automatic Defragmentation Process" on page A-19.

Plug-Ins (Operators)

The Edit Tool of the DVS software supports the OpenFX plug-in interface providing you with the possibility to extend the software module's effects feature set with plug-ins developed by third parties. The various available OpenFX plug-ins offer you additional editing possibilities for your video processing tasks, such as color correction or image processing. Once installed, they can be accessed in addition to the standard effects operators as timeline element properties of clips. Further information about this can be found in section "Timeline Element Properties" on page 7-1.

2.2 Overview of the User Interface

The following figure shows the user interface of the Edit Tool as it appears after starting the DVS software (for information on how to start the software see chapter “Getting Started” on page 3-1):

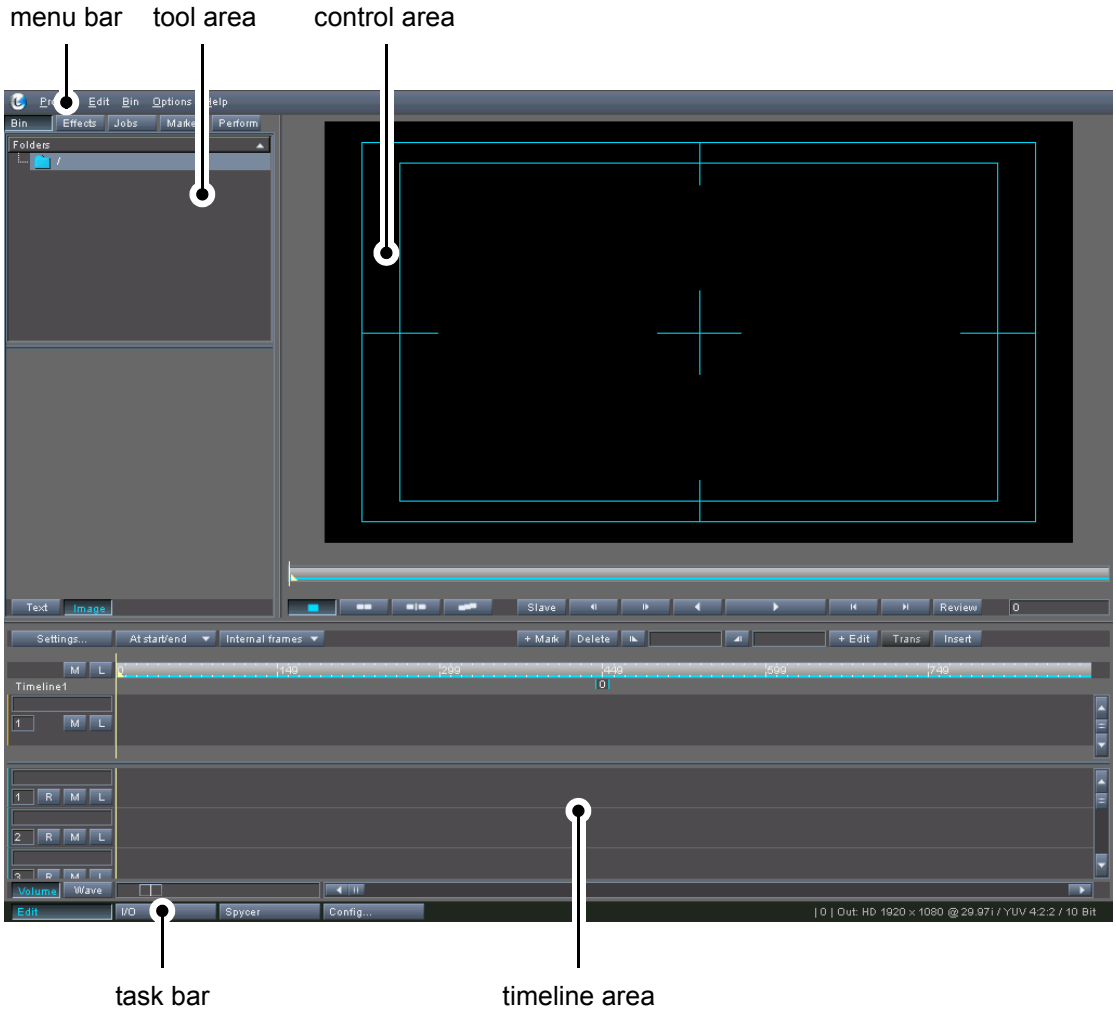


Figure 2-2: User interface of the Edit Tool

The DVS software is designed to run in full-screen mode to provide for an undistracted view on the video material and the editing task at hand. To switch to the operating system environment use the [Windows ( )] key on your keyboard or select from the menu of the program icon on the menu bar the menu option ***Minimize*** (see section “Minimize” on page 9-2).

Via the check box **Don’t show this message again** offered by information messages of the DVS software you can deactivate the appearance of this particular message for the current software session (i.e. next session it will be displayed again).

After starting the DVS software the Edit Tool software module is activated automatically. Here you can see the following items:

menu bar — At the top of the user interface you can find a menu bar. This menu bar provides access to functions and tasks of an administrative nature for the DVS software. Here you can find, for example, import and export functions as well as several menu options generally concerned with projects and project files. A description of the menu bar can be found in chapter "The Menus" on page 9-1.

tool area — Directly below the menu bar you can find the tool area which may show you depending on the currently active software module and/or on the optional features available various tools that can be used during your work with the system. The tools are provided as tabs to switch easily between them. By default you can find among the tools, for example, the bin which provides initial access to the video material. For more details about the tool area and the individual tools see chapter "The Tool Area" on page 4-1.

control area — To the right of the tool area you can find the control area. In the Edit Tool this area is used to pre- and review your current project. At the top you can find the video overlay where you can see the video material. Below the video overlay a scrub bar of the timeline is available. In contrast to the timeline in the timeline area where you can zoom in and out, the scrub bar always shows the complete timeline of the project. Below the scrub bar the controls are located to play out and move within your current project. Here you can also find buttons to switch between the different modes of the control area: the edit mode, the source-edit mode, the trim mode, and the conforming mode. The control area will be described in chapter "The Control Area" on page 5-1.

timeline area — In the timeline area you can find the video and audio tracks. Most of the editing tasks are performed here, for example, by setting cutting points and defining operators. The timeline area can be configured freely and thus be adapted to your individual needs. This area and how to work with projects in the timeline are explained in chapter "The Timeline" on page 6-1.

task bar — The user interface provides at its bottom a task bar where you can switch between the different software modules of the DVS software. The task bar is available in most modules and you can easily start and switch between them. It will be described in more detail in section “The Task Bar” on page 2-9.

2.3 The Task Bar

The user interface provides at its bottom a task bar where you can switch between the different software modules of the DVS software. The task bar is available in most modules and with it you can easily switch to another module.

After starting the DVS software the Edit Tool is started automatically (

). When you click on one of the inactive buttons in the task bar, the respective software module will be loaded, most of them in the upper part of the user interface. The task bar provides the following buttons:



The **EDIT** button activates the Edit Tool of the DVS software. This software module allows to edit video material with effects like color correction, zooming and panning, 3D LUTs, or cropping. Additionally, in this module you can perform a DCI Mastering. It is automatically active after starting the software and described in this user guide.



The **I/O** button starts the I/O Tool of the DVS software. You can use it to capture video and audio material with the DVS system from telecines, VTRs, or cameras. You can find further information about the I/O Tool in the "CLIPSTER I/O Tool" user guide.



With the button **SPYCER** you can activate the local content management software by DVS where you can browse and/or search for data on local and network storages. Its management tools allow you, for example, to defragment data as well as to define or alter metadata. Additionally, you can preview clips and add them to the bin of the DVS software by a simple drag-and-drop procedure. Spycer is described in the "Spycer" user guide.



The **CONFIG...** button opens the Configuration Tool. Here you can configure and set up the whole video system and the software. With it you can, for example, set up the period for the automatic save function of the project file (autosave) as well as more software specific settings, such as the bin properties. More information about the Configuration Tool as well as various other configurations that can be performed can be found in the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.



For a more detailed description of all basic software modules as well as other parts of the software together with references to their descriptions, please refer to section "Overview of the Software Structure" on page 2-2.

Additionally, you can find at the bottom right of the task bar several items which will provide you with information about the currently loaded project, the duration of its timeline in total and the set video output format for the timeline:

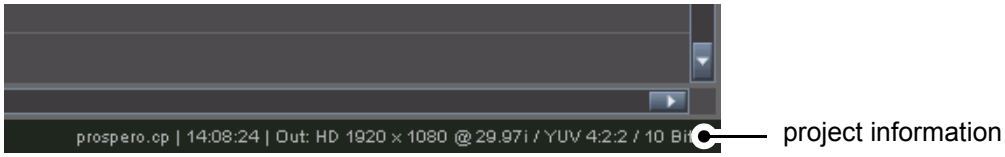


Figure 2-3: Project information

The timeline's duration shows you the duration of all clips present in the timeline tracks and depends on the currently selected video output raster (frame rate).

Furthermore, to the right of the task bar you can find some status messages. They will be displayed as soon as project relevant tasks are performed, for instance, when a project is loaded or saved.

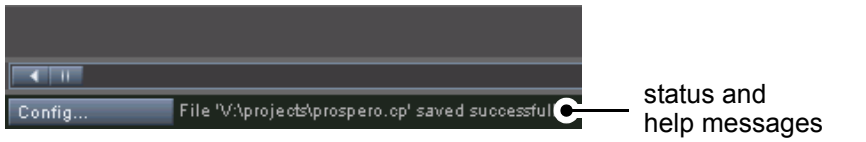


Figure 2-4: Status and help messages of the DVS software

As well, this part of the task bar will provide you with help information about the various menu options available via the menu bar of the DVS software. The help information will be displayed when you place the mouse cursor over one of the menu options.

2.4 Working in Real Time

With the DVS system you can perform most operations in real time. When playing out or recording, the workstation is capable of handling two data streams of 2K material for transitions in real time.

Using CLIPSTER you can even play out one stream of 4K material in real time as long as some conditions are observed: To play out 4K you will need an appropriate hardware equipment (CLIPSTER 4K) and the resolution of the clip should not exceed 4096 × 3112 pixels (10 bit). With this a real-time play-out of 4K material is possible. The usage of a 3D LUT, cropping, zoomings and pannings, and primary color corrections, can also be performed in real time.

However, other effects (e.g. secondary color correction) or clips of an even higher resolution cannot be processed in real time. In such a case the DVS system offers you two different approaches to maintain a real-time workflow as long as possible: You can work with proxies or you can prerender the material and/or operators prior to a play-out.



When working with proxies or prerendered files, additional data (image files) will be created on your main storage. It is recommended to store these project specific for each project separately. For further information about this please refer to section "Notes on Project Management" on page 2-14.

You can set the storage location of such files for each project differently via the Configuration Tool on the tab **Project** (group **Project**, field **Path for proxy data**; see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide).

2.4.1 Working with Proxies

A proxy is a downscaled clip of a higher resolution (greater than 2K). Usually, proxies will be used as a substitute when working with high-resolution film material, such as 4K. Then the original data will be downconverted to a 2K format that can be handled by the DVS software and system in real time without problem.

In this workflow you will add the 4K clips as usual to the bin. But prior to using them in the timeline you will create proxies of them. The downconverted images of the proxy will be stored in a reserved location for temporary data on the main storage.

The stored proxies carry project specific file names that are generated and administered by the Edit Tool automatically for the currently loaded project. The links to the proxies will be stored in the project file, and when reopening the project again you will not have to create them again. When working with proxies, a lot of image files may be generated amounting to a large proportion of disk space.

Once a proxy has been created, it will be available in the bin instead of the original high-resolution clip. Nevertheless, the bin clip and all its representations in the timeline are still linked to its original material and by turning the proxies on or off it is for you to decide whether the material of the higher resolution is used or the proxies. Thus you can work with the downconverted clips as usual in the timeline but when playing out or finalizing you can switch back to the original material in high resolution.

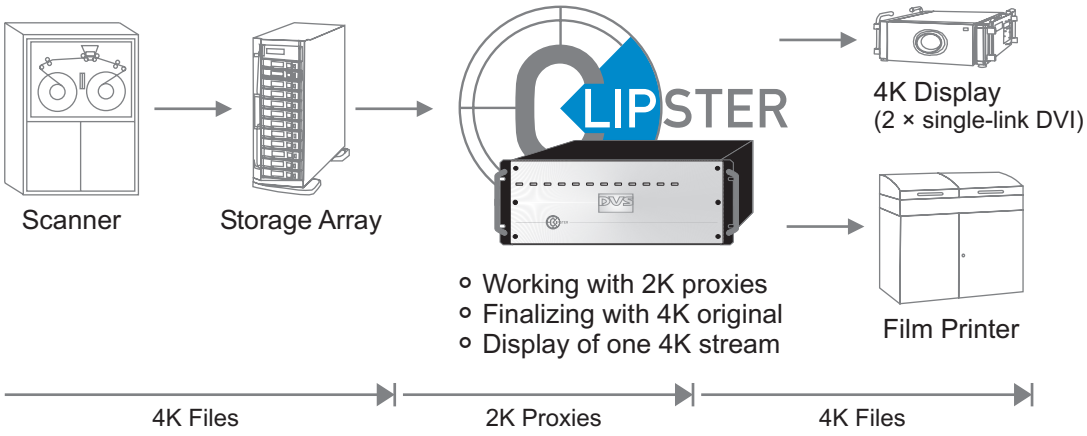


Figure 2-5: Possible workflow when using proxy data

With this workflow you will be able to finish a conformed 4K project with 2K proxies in real time by using color correction, zooming as well as panning and/or other editing features. Once your job is done, the DVS system can finalize (render) the whole project from the original 4K material. Afterwards to check the rendered 4K master you may play it out in real time provided your system is capable of a real-time handling of 4K.

To recognize the downscaled data belonging to one project easily it is recommended to store it project specific for each project separately. For further information about this please refer to section “Notes on Project Management” on page 2-14.

More information about the handling of proxies in the DVS software can be found in section “Using Proxies” on page 4-22.

2.4.2 Working with Prerendered Data

Prerendering generates another kind of proxies, this time from clips and operators added to the timeline that are not real-time capable. A prerendering means that the Edit Tool calculates the respective clips and operators (effects) before a play-out takes place and stores the calculated extra files (rendered images) in a location for temporary data on the

main storage. These proxies are then used for a play-out instead of the original material in the timeline and on-the-fly handled operators.

Depending on your system capabilities all timeline elements, i.e. clips as well as operators (such as transitions or color corrections), can be subject to a prerendering. For example, when using a clip of a resolution that exceeds the real-time capability of your DVS system, it will be marked visibly in the timeline that it is not real-time capable. In order to play it out in real time you will have to prerender it beforehand and it will be rendered in the format that is currently set as the video output format. The prerendered proxies carry project specific file names same as the proxies created from the bin and are generated and administered by the Edit Tool automatically. The links to prerendered proxies will be stored in the project file, and when opening the project later again, it will not be necessary to render them anew.

When working with prerendered data you may get proxies on the storage that are no longer required for your current project but occupying disk space. This will happen, for example, as soon as a timeline element was prerendered and afterwards deleted or changed. Even a switching of the video format will make the already prerendered data obsolete due to the fact that the extra images may no longer coincide with the newly selected format. Because the software can never be sure when proxies are truly obsolete for a project, they will remain on the storage of your system. Nevertheless, to delete prerendered data you can use the menu option ***Delete prerendering*** on the context menu of a video clip (see section “The Context Menu of Video Clips” on page 6-61).



To recognize the prerendered data belonging to one project easily it is recommended to store them project specific for each project separately. For further information about this please refer to section “Notes on Project Management” on page 2-14.

Related to a prerendering of timeline elements are the ***Prerender all*** menu option on the menu ***Project*** (see section “Prerender all” on page 9-15) and the section “Real-time Capability of Clips” on page 4-13, section “Jobs” on page 4-33 and section “Prerendering of Timeline Elements” on page 6-46.

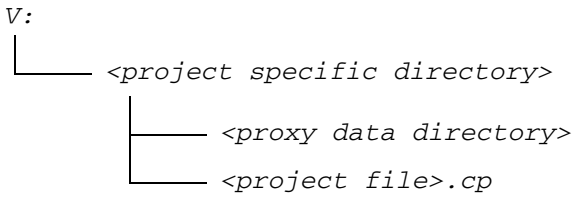
2.5 Notes on Project Management

To display material of a very high resolution or to enable a real-time play-out of some operators (e.g. the secondary color correction) the DVS system may create proxies as well as prerendered files. Both ways to maintain a real-time workflow are based on the same principle: They use calculated extra files to either enable a play-out (prerendering) or make your working environment more comfortable (proxy generation).



For further information about proxies or prerendered data see section “Working in Real Time” on page 2-11.

The location where these extra files are stored is saved project specific in the project file, i.e. each project file can have a different directory for proxy data and the exact location will be stored in the project file. Therefore, it is suggested when working with proxies or prerendered material, to store the project’s data in a directory of its own. DVS recommends, when working with different projects, to create for each project a project specific directory on your main storage where to save the project file. Beneath it create a subdirectory for the additional data:



This structure guarantees a clear and easy to manage project.

You can set the storage location of such data for the currently loaded project with the Configuration Tool of the DVS software in the group **Project** of the tab **Project** (see “CLIPSTER Configurations” user guide as well as section “Working in Real Time” on page 2-11 for more information).

2.6 Notes on Source Timecode and Keycode

Some file formats for clips, e.g. *.dpx files, are capable of storing more information than just their image content. These information are usually written in a specified format into the file headers which can be read and interpreted by different software applications that support these kind of information. Among the information stored you can find, for example, the name of the creator (usually the program that created the files), the creation time and date, the timecode and/or the keycode.

Most of the data stored in file headers and transmitted to the DVS software during a capturing will only be recorded and given back again during a play-out, if appropriate. However, DVS especially makes use of the timecode and keycode information.



The DVS software supports additional information such as source timecode in the *.dpx, *.mov as well as *.mxf file formats. However, some features (e.g. multiple timecodes or the editing of header data) are available for *.dpx files only.

With the help of Spycer the header data, such as timecode or keycode information, can be adjusted to your liking (see "Spycer" user guide for more information).

2.6.1 About Source Timecode

Timecode information stored in file headers (the so-called source timecode) can be used in the whole DVS software. For example, you can use source timecodes in the timeline of the Edit Tool and regardless of their position in the timeline the respective clips will always show and use their source timecode. Then, prior to a play-out you can decide whether the internal timeline timecode should be given out as a timecode signal or the source timecodes provided by the files.

Regarding source timecode there are some peculiarities how the DVS software deals with source timecodes. Some of them are detailed in the following:

The image files capable of storing timecode information usually provide space for one timecode only in their header (generic source timecode). But because DVS systems are able to receive, for example, during a record, several timecodes incorporated in signals at various connectors, they use more than just one timecode. During a write procedure, i.e. when recording clips via the I/O Tool (*.dpx files), the system will write all received timecode information into the file headers. The ones additionally received will be stored at a location for user defined data in the header and usually cannot be interpreted by applications other than the ones developed by DVS. When processing such clips afterwards, for instance, in the timeline of the Edit Tool or when conforming, you can

select between the various timecodes provided by the clips which may give you more control over their position in the timeline.

In the Configuration Tool of the DVS software you can configure the general way the software should deal with timeline and source timecode (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more information). Here you can set in the respective group the type of source timecode that the DVS software will use as the default source timecode. Additionally, you can specify which timecode should be given out when performing a play-out.

Furthermore, throughout the DVS software individual clips may use different source timecodes which is a setting that can be adjusted in the clip's properties (see section "Changing the Properties of Clips" on page 4-21). The type of source timecode used by each clip can be changed even when the clip is already used in the timeline of the Edit Tool. And when clips do not provide a source timecode of their own, you can set the clips to show a virtual source timecode. The DVS software will then use the timecode specified as the source timecode offset as the virtual source timecode.

2.6.2 About Keycode

Keycode information stored in file headers can be used in the DVS software, for example, during a conforming process (see chapter "The Conforming Tool" on page 8-1).

Keycode has its origin in the film world and is a variation of timecode to identify frames on a film roll. It is a machine-readable code printed at certain intervals along the edge of the camera negative film outside the perforations. Besides containing data, for instance, about the film type, the name of the manufacturer and the film stock, it is used to number individual images, i.e. it provides a reference number (<count>+<offset>) for the image where the keycode is written. The numbering available via keycodes can be used, for example, to match the film with a particular position of an EDL or cut list.

In the DVS software the keycode format normally is:
<manufacturer ID and film type><6-digit film roll ID> <count>+<offset>.

Example: KK217312 5235+04

2.7 About Timecode / Frame Number Fields

The DVS software provides various fields where data in timecode format is provided or an entry in such a format is necessary. The timecode format is `hh:mm:ss:ff` (hours, minutes, seconds, and frame number).

Drop-frame Timecode Indication

The last colon of the timecode format may be displayed in the software as a full stop. Then the timecode fields of the software will display, for example, `12:25.07` instead of `12:25:07`. This indicates that the drop-frame timecode feature is activated. When entering timecode, the last colon can also be replaced by a full stop. Further information about drop-frame timecode can be found in the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.

Higher Frequencies and Timecode Format

Additionally, an asterisk may be added to the timecodes of the DVS software (e.g. `12:25:07*`). This will be the case when the video raster's frequency exceeds 30 frames per second because the original timecode format is limited to frame rates as high as that. To account for video rasters with higher frequencies (e.g. 720p at 60 Hz) one timecode number is used for several video frames, meaning every second, third or fourth timecode provides the same timecode (frame) number but is tagged with an asterisk to mark it as repeated. The standard timecodes that will be used for such procedures are 24 Hz, 25 Hz and 30 Hz: For example, a video raster frequency of 48 Hz is provided with a 24 Hz timecode, while a 60 Hz frequency receives a 30 Hz timecode. This will result in a doubling of the timecode numbers:

60 Hz @ 30 Hz TC	60 Hz
...00:00	...00:00
...00:00*	...00:01
...00:01	...00:02
...00:01*	...00:03
...	
...00:29	...00:58
...00:29*	...00:59
...01:00	...01:00
...01:00*	...01:01

At even higher frame rates (e.g. 90 Hz) the timecode numbers will be tripled, quadrupled etc., making a timecode handling of all common frequencies possible.

Entering Timecode

When entering timecode in one of the software's position or length indicators, you may omit digits: if you enter less information, the entered timecode will be interpreted from right to left (the last number is the frame, the next the seconds, etc.). Every digit omitted between the colons is assumed to be a leading zero.

You may also omit the separators (colons). However, then you should observe that no digits are left out: With omitted separators the entered timecode will be interpreted from right to left (the last two numbers indicate the frame, the next two the seconds, etc.).

After pressing [Enter] on your keyboard the entered timecode is accepted in the respective timecode field, for example, to move to a certain position.

Examples:	`1:9`	jumps to 1 sec. frame 9 (`00:00:01:09`)
	`109`	jumps to 1 sec. frame 9 (`00:00:01:09`)
	`247`	jumps to 2 sec. frame 47 (`00:00:03:23` if raster is in 24p)

Additionally, in most position or length indicator fields you can enter a new value by either adding or subtracting the timecode or the frame amount from the given entry. For this simply add the timecode or frame amount with a minus or plus sign (–/+) to the given entry in the timecode/frame number field. After that press [Enter] to confirm your entry.

Examples:	`1:23+2:05`	jumps to 4 sec. frame 4 (`00:00:04:04` if raster is in 24p)
	`4:04-53`	jumps to 1 sec. frame 23 (`00:00:01:23` if raster is in 24p)

Switching the Notation

Scales (e.g. on timelines) and position and length indicators can be switched from a display of the timecode notation to frame numbers and vice versa. For this it is best to use the context menu of a timecode/frame number field (e.g. the position field of the timeline cursor, see section “Controls” on page 5-11).

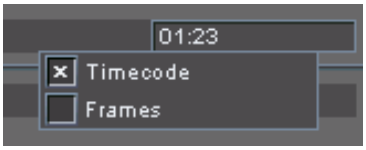


Figure 2-6: Context menu of a position field

Select from the context menu the respective menu option. This will change the position and length indicators of the respective software module to the selected notation.

A switching of the notation may effect the selected display type (internal frames/timecode will be used) and vice versa (see section “Changing the Display Type” on page 6-10).

Getting Started



This chapter provides you with some general information necessary to begin your work with the Edit Tool software module. First, the steps to start the DVS software and the Edit Tool will be explained. This is followed by a beginner's tutorial that shows you how to work with the Edit Tool: In a step-by-step description you will be instructed what to do to start your first project and how to perform some basic editing tasks.



More detailed information about individual items or steps described here can be found in the other chapters of this user guide

The chapter will be concluded with a description how to shut down the software.

3.1 Starting the Program

This section provides you with a description how to get the Edit Tool started.

To start the program you have to do the following:

- Select from the **START** button menu of Windows on the submenu ***DVS*** the entry for the DVS software (for example, ***All Programs » DVS » DVS Clipster***).
  Alternatively, you may also start the program via its icon on the desktop of Windows.

This will load the DVS software. As the starting user interface the Edit Tool will be started automatically.



Because the DVS software is designed to run in full-screen mode to provide for an undistracted view on the video material and the task at hand, the following shortcuts may be helpful:

- To open the Windows Explorer [Windows () + E]
- To open the Task Manager [Ctrl + Alt + Del]
- To switch to the Windows desktop [Windows () + D]
- To switch to another application [Alt + TAB]

To minimize the user interface, for example, to access other applications, you may also use the ***Minimize*** menu option of the program icon on the menu bar (see section "Minimize" on page 9-2).

Via the check box **Don't show this message again** offered by information messages of the DVS software you can deactivate the appearance of this particular message for the current software session (i.e. next session it will be displayed again).

When starting the DVS software, a drop report is as a standard written automatically to the directory `log` available in the installation path of the software (only the last ten files will be kept). Further information about the log files and the drop reports can be found in section "The Performance Monitor" on page 4-36.

3.2 First Steps in the Edit Tool

This section introduces in a step-by-step description how to work with the Edit Tool. It will be explained what to do to begin a project, how to work with the timeline and how to perform some basic editing tasks. Use this tutorial to familiarize yourself with the Edit Tool and the way it has to be handled.

3.2.1 Preparing the Bin

After starting the DVS software the Edit Tool will be started automatically. At the upper left side of the program window you can see the tool area with the bin activated by default.

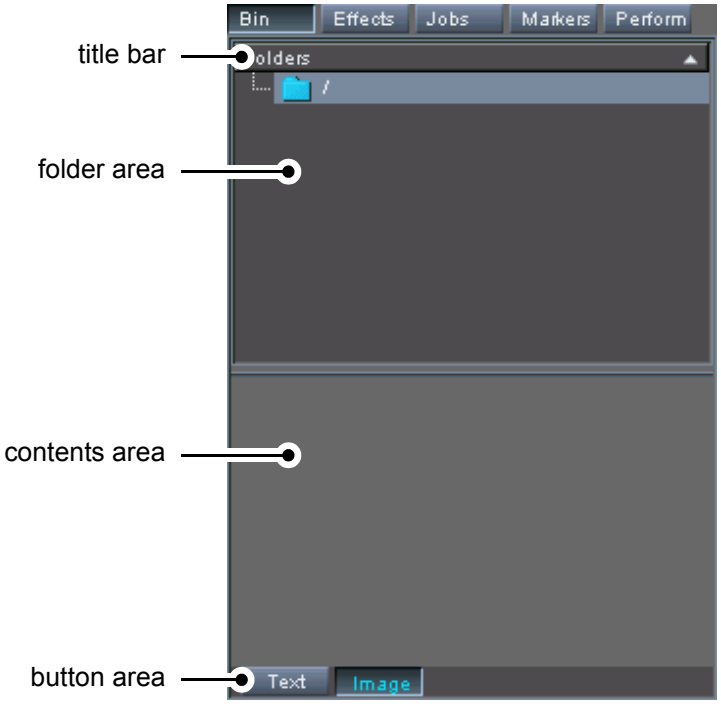


Figure 3-1: The bin activated in tool area

The bin provides initial access to the video/audio material stored on your system. In the bin you can find two main areas: In the folder area you can make folders and directories to sort your material into. This way, you can perform a clip and project management. In the contents area you can preview the material sorted into a folder via thumbnails or text information. The thumbnails also provide a scrub bar to set roughly the inpoint of the respective clip.

You can configure the appearance of the bin freely. It will be saved together with the project file:

- You can arrange the areas horizontally if you like (select the respective appearance from the context menu of the bin's title bar).
- Via the buttons in the button area you can set whether the clips shall be seen as thumbnails with text or with their text information only.
- The kind of text information displayed in the bin can be set freely with the Configuration Tool (button **CONFIG...** or ***Options » Project config...***).

Furthermore, the right edge of the tool area can be moved, for example, to display the contents of the activated tool completely. Then, in case of the bin, you will be able to view the thumbnails together with all text information available. If you pull the right edge of the tool area completely to the left, the tool area will no longer be visible; if you pull it completely to the right, the control area will be hidden and the contents of the activated tool will be displayed in full.

To prepare the bin for a project you have to fill it with audio and/or video material first. There are several ways to do this: The best and most informative way is to use Spycer (see section "Adding Clips to the Bin Using Spycer" on page 4-10), but they can also be added by using a file manager, which is more appropriate when using the Edit Tool for the first time:

The DVS software works with standard computer files. Video and audio data should be stored on the designated storage only (e.g. the system's main storage or a DVS-SAN). Other storage locations may be too slow for real-time operations. Furthermore, it is strongly recommended to use the main storage for video and audio as well as project related data only. Save other data on the system disks.

- Open a Windows file manager, for example, the Windows Explorer with the keyboard combination [Windows ( ) + E].
- In the file manager select a video file (either a file within a directory or the directory itself) on the storage where the video data is stored.

  For a list of the supported file formats see section "Supported File Formats" on page A-9.
- Drag and drop the selected video file/directory to the contents area of the bin with the help of the mouse:

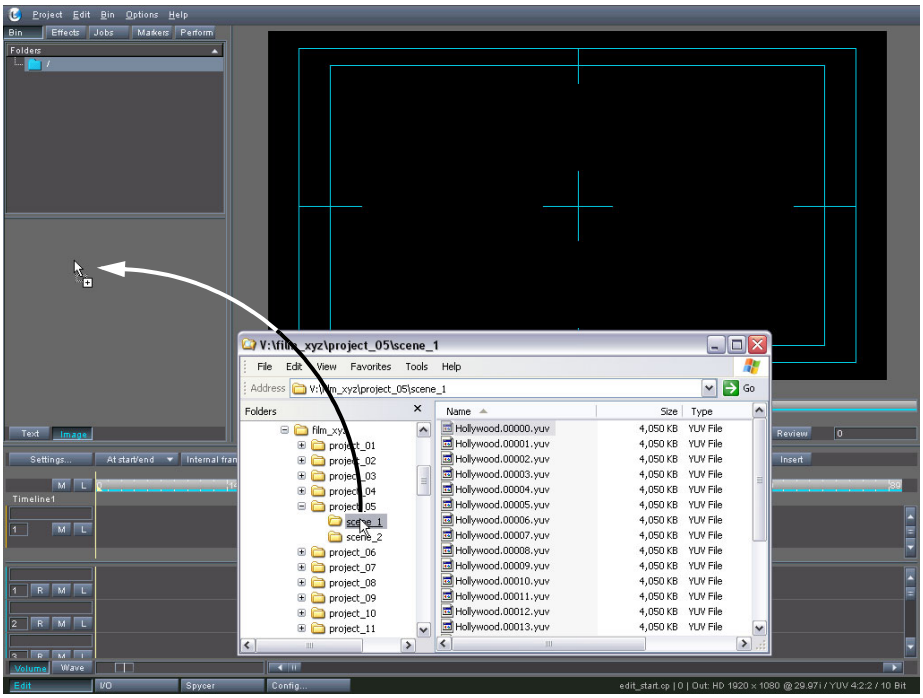


Figure 3-2: Drag and drop of clip to bin

The respective video data will then be made available to the DVS software and you will receive a thumbnail of the material in the contents area of the bin. When the thumbnail is selected, it provides the following features:

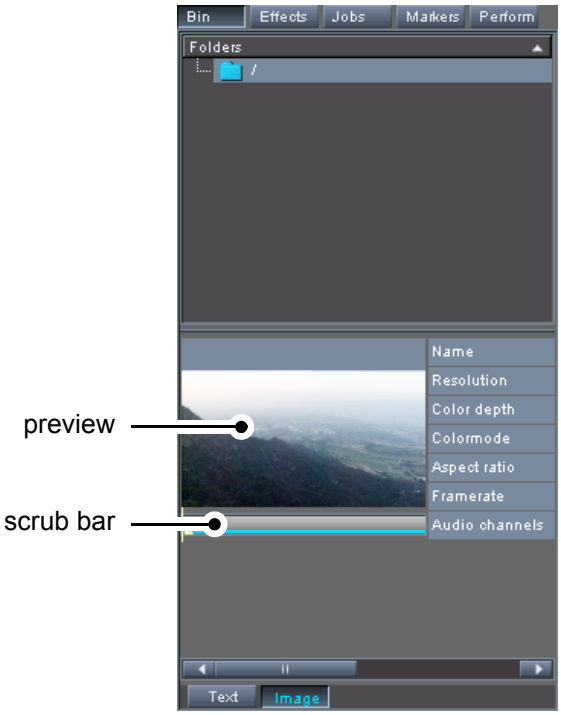


Figure 3-3: Selected clip in contents area of bin

- Add another, different clip to the bin by performing the drag-and-drop procedure again.

The new clip is added to the clip list of the bin as well. Now two clips are available in the Edit Tool and you can start working with them. With the scrub bar below the thumbnails (visible when a clip is selected) you can preview the material and roughly select an inpoint for the respective clip. However, for our demonstration here we will leave the clips' inpoints as they are.



When audio should be used in your project, you have to drag (add) audio clips to the bin as well.

If you select another file than the first frame file in a video directory, the scrub bar cursor of the thumbnail (the clip's inpoint) will be set accordingly.

You may select more than one video directory in the file manager and drag them to the contents area of the bin. The respective clips will all be added to the bin.

You can also add clips to the bin by using the menu option ***Add Clip*** on the context menu of the contents area or the menu ***Project » Add clips…***.

Via the context menu of a clip in the bin (either audio or video) you can call up the clip's properties. Most of these can only be altered if the clip is not already present in the timeline.



When adding clips to the bin with a procedure other than a record, some properties may not be discerned properly due to missing file header information. Then they will either be deduced from the file format, color space, etc. of the clip, or configured to the currently set timeline output settings. If the properties of the clip do not match the material on the storage, you have to change them accordingly (see section "Changing the Properties of Clips" on page 4-21).

3.2.2 Adding Clips to the Timeline

For the editing process the Edit Tool uses a timeline with several video and audio tracks where you can add the clips in the desired sequence as they should be played out in the end. You can then, for instance, define wipes, dissolves or cuts for the material. There is no need to worry about your original material being in different resolutions, bit depths,

color spaces, or file formats: The DVS system works format independent and is capable of handling material up to 4K.

To view your project on an additionally connected monitor, you have to configure the output format of the timeline accordingly. The setting of the output format (video raster) of the project can be configured with the button **SETTINGS...** at the top left side of the timeline area.

To begin an editing work you have to drag the clips to the timeline of the Edit Tool first:

During all works with the DVS software your original material will never be altered. The clips in the software are only representations of the original material on the storage. All editing tasks are performed virtually.

- Select a clip (clip A) in the contents area of the bin and drag and drop it to the beginning of the video track:

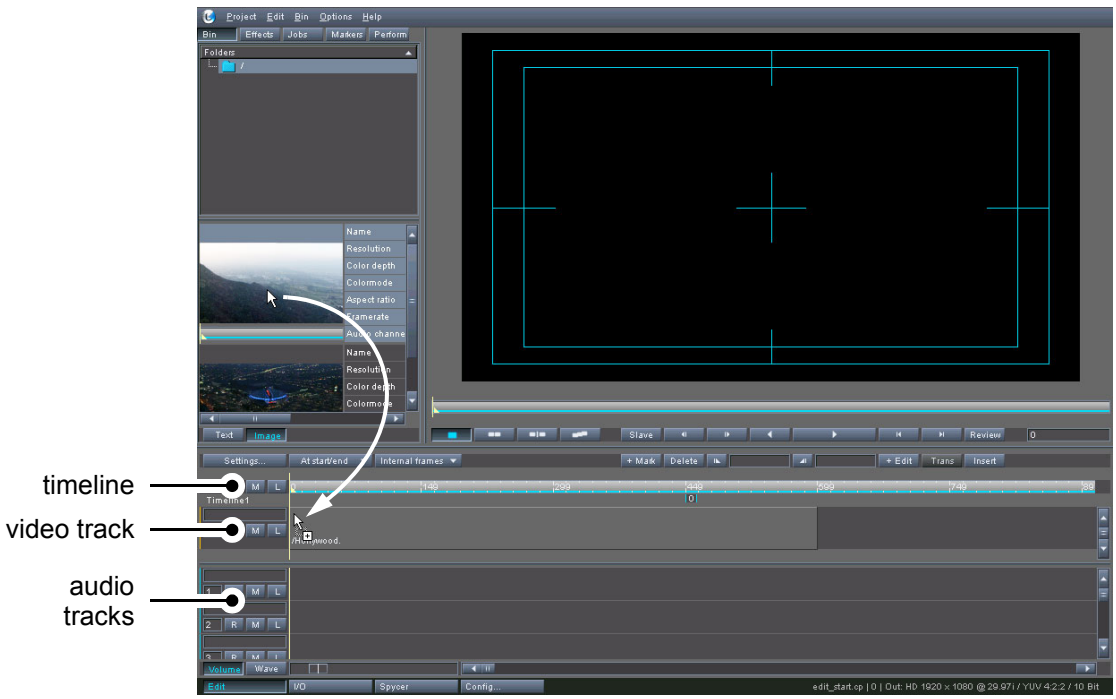


Figure 3-4: Drag and drop of clip to timeline

Once the mouse button is released, a representation of the clip (clip A) is added to the timeline. However, its counterpart in the bin is neither removed nor deleted. It will remain there for future use so that you can add the clip (or other parts of it) to the timeline again.

The video clip will be placed at the position of the mouse pointer where the mouse button is released. However, when the mouse pointer reaches certain elements on the timeline, the added clip will automatically

align itself to these elements, in our example here to the beginning of the timeline. This behavior is called the snapping mode of the Edit Tool.

The snapping mode is a very useful feature if you want to position clips in the timeline. It reacts not only to the starting point of the timeline but also to the in- and outpoint of clips, the position of the timeline cursor or the set in- and outpoint of the timeline. You can disable the snapping mode and activate a fine tuning mode by pressing the [Shift] key.

While the starting point of the clip (its position and inpoint) within the timeline is set during the drag-and-drop procedure by the position of the mouse pointer, its outpoint is usually defined by the length of the clip. However, all these attributes can be changed easily after clips were added to the timeline, their position within the timeline as well as their in- and outpoints.

If the clip is released somewhere in the video track, a gap (part of the timeline without contents) may appear in the timeline. A gap is indicated by a red line in the timeline scale. If this occurs, you can move the clip easily to the beginning of the timeline with a double-click of the mouse on the timeline scale (see section "Moving Clips in the Timeline" on page 3-10).

- Now add the second clip of the bin to the timeline (clip B).

If clip B is dropped in the middle of clip A in the video track, clip A will be divided and the rest of it will move to the end of the timeline.

This behavior can be changed via the button **INSERT**. This button switches between the insert and the overwrite mode of the Edit Tool. In the overwrite mode the rest of the clip (or at least the contents of clip A with the length of clip B) would be overwritten.

For the rest of this tutorial we suppose that this has happened and that clip A is divided into two by inserting clip B in the middle of it.

Audio clips can be dragged from the bin to the audio tracks of the timeline area. If the audio clips incorporate more than one mono or stereo channel, the additional channels will be added to the other audio tracks below the selected one.

If you drag a clip from the bin to the control area of the Edit Tool, the software switches to the source-edit mode where you can select the in- and outpoint of the clip frame accurately before adding it to the timeline. Once everything is set, you can drag the clip from its video overlay in the control area to the video track of the timeline.

3.2.3 Changing the View of the Timeline

Via the sliders below the audio tracks in the timeline area you can change the view of the tracks:



Figure 3-5: Timeline sliders

With the left slider you can zoom in or out of the timeline (keyboard shortcuts [Up Arrow] and [Down Arrow]). If the slider is set to the left-most point, you are able to see the whole contents of the timeline. When it is set more to the right, you will zoom into the timeline.

When you have zoomed into the timeline, you can change the viewing position of the timeline with the right slider. You can go to the end of the timeline by pulling this slider to the right, and to the beginning of the timeline by pulling it to the left.

Via the Configuration Tool (button **CONFIG...** or ***Options » Defaults...***, group **General**) you can set the way the Edit Tool performs a zooming on the timeline. There you can set whether zooming should occur on the position of the timeline cursor or on the current viewing position of the timeline.

For our example project we aim at having only two clips in the video track. For this it is best to view the complete contents of the timeline:

- If appropriate, use the sliders below the audio tracks in the timeline area to zoom out of your project: Move the left slider to the left until you see the complete timeline.

When you have changed the view of the timeline, you will see a screen like the following:

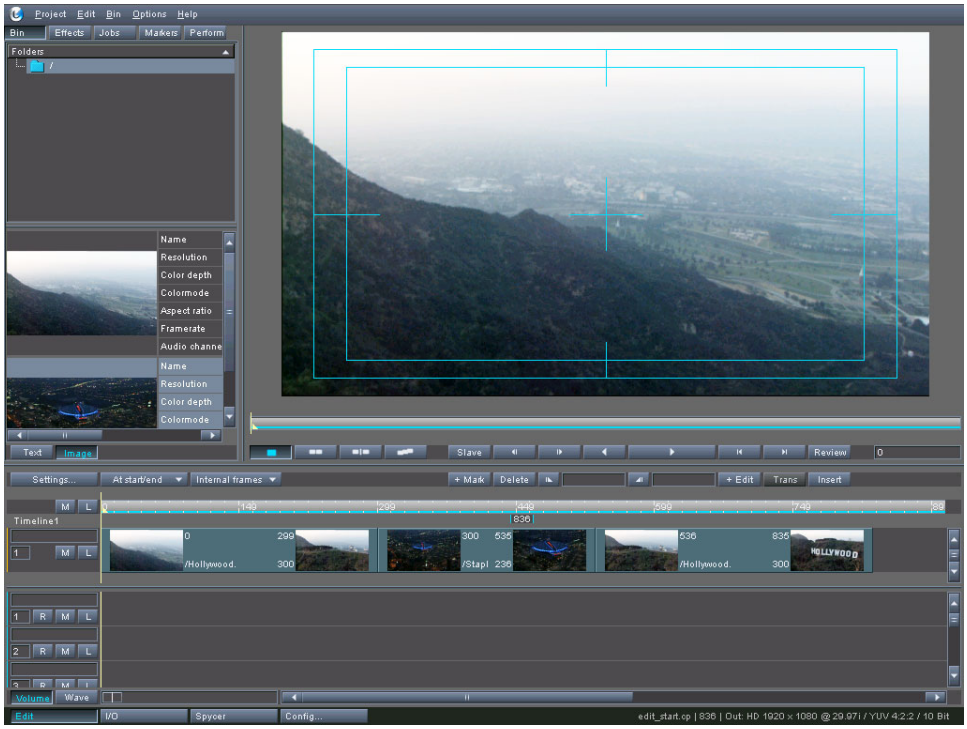


Figure 3-6: Project in timeline

The buttons right in front of the timeline tracks (video as well as audio) determine whether a track is muted (barred from an output, button **M**) or locked (barred from editing, button **L**).

With the button **SETTINGS...** at the top left side of the timeline area you can determine the output format (video raster) of the project. Here you can also configure the size of the video and/or audio tracks. There is also a setting available that performs an autoscaling of the material in the timeline if the resolution differs from the configured output raster.

As a next step we want to delete one of the clips from the timeline and change the sequence of the remaining clips.

3.2.4 Moving Clips in the Timeline

Because for this tutorial we want to have only two clips in the video track, clip B and clip A (in this particular order), we have to delete the second part of clip A and then change the sequence of the remaining two clips. For this perform the steps as described below:

- Select the second part of clip A (the last clip present in the timeline) with a click of the mouse and delete it with the keyboard key [Del].

The representation of the clip in the timeline will be deleted and you will see two remaining clips in the video track of the timeline:

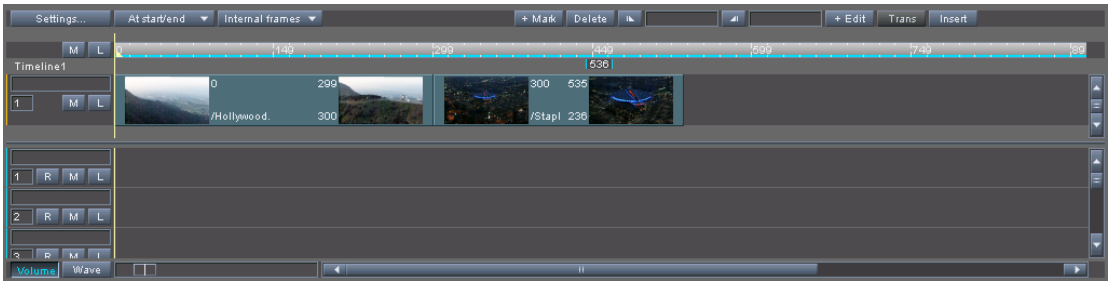


Figure 3-7: Clip A and clip B in timeline

Now we want to change the sequence of the remaining two clips:

- Select clip B (second clip in the timeline) with the mouse and drag it along the timeline to the beginning of the timeline:

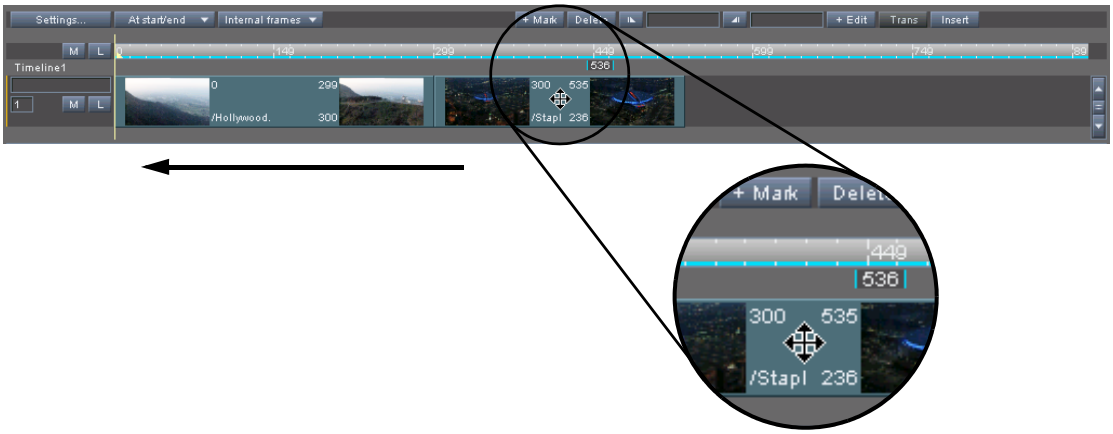


Figure 3-8: Changing the position of the clip

When the dragged clip reaches certain elements on the timeline, it will automatically align itself to these elements (snapping mode, see section "Adding Clips to the Timeline" on page 3-6).

- Once the dragged clip reaches the beginning of the timeline, release and drop it.

With the Edit Tool in the insert mode the rest of the video material will move backwards in the timeline as soon as the clip is dropped.

After changing the sequence of the clips this tutorial goes on with a description how to change in- and outpoints of clips in the timeline.

3.2.5 Manipulating In- and Outpoints in the Timeline

Clip A (now the second clip in the timeline) was cut during the adding of clip B to the timeline. Thus it already provides a trimmed outpoint. However, clip B (now the first clip in the timeline) was added with its full length. If a transition should be set between these two clips, at least

one of their in- and outpoint has to be trimmed, either the outpoint of clip B or the inpoint of clip A. To demonstrate how to add a transition between the two clips, we now want to change the outpoint of clip B in the timeline:

- Select the end of clip B (first clip in timeline) and move it to the left to trim its outpoint (tail).

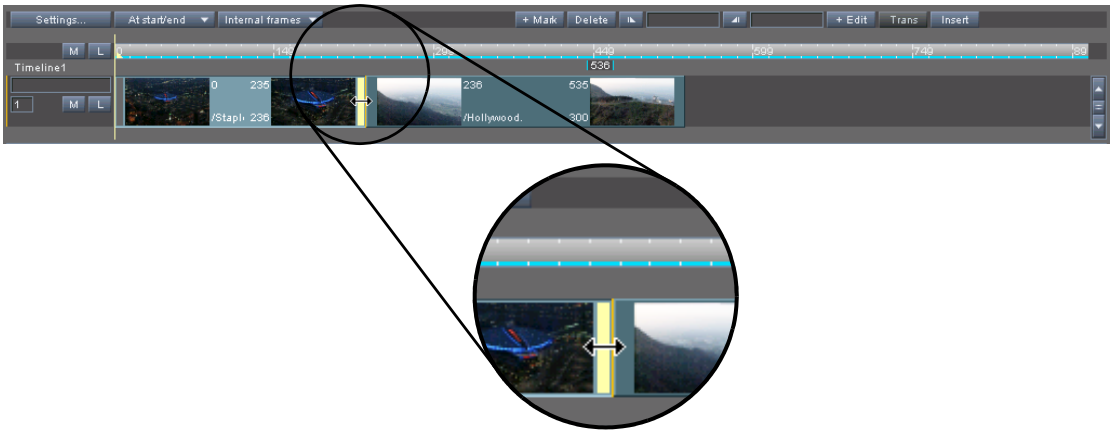


Figure 3-9: Changing of outpoint

As long as the insert mode of the Edit Tool is active, clip A will automatically adjust its position on the timeline respectively.

While trimming the outpoint you will notice a blue line above the selected clip:



Figure 3-10: Display of original length of clip

This line shows the original length of the clip. You can use it to determine easily how much tail is available to, for example, create a transition.

- Once sufficient tail is available, release the outpoint handler and drop it.

With this you have manipulated the outpoint of the clip. The same way you can, of course, change inpoints as well.

You cannot change the in- and outpoint of a clip beyond the limits of its original material on the storage indicated by the head/tail indicator.

Clips in the timeline can also be trimmed by cutting them with the button **+ EDIT** and afterwards deleting the not required part of the clip. The cut will be applied to the position of the timeline cursor. If a track is locked, no cutting will be performed.

Next, we want to add a transition to the cut between clip B and clip A on the timeline.

3.2.6 Adding a Transition to the Timeline

Once at least two clips are present in the video track of the timeline, you can add a transition between the clips. In our example we want to apply a transition to the cutting point between clip B and clip A. For this perform the following:

- Via the controls (|) or the keyboard shortcuts [S] (jump forward) and [A] (jump backward) you can move the timeline cursor to cutting points on the timeline. Use the respective button or key to go to the cutting point between the clips:

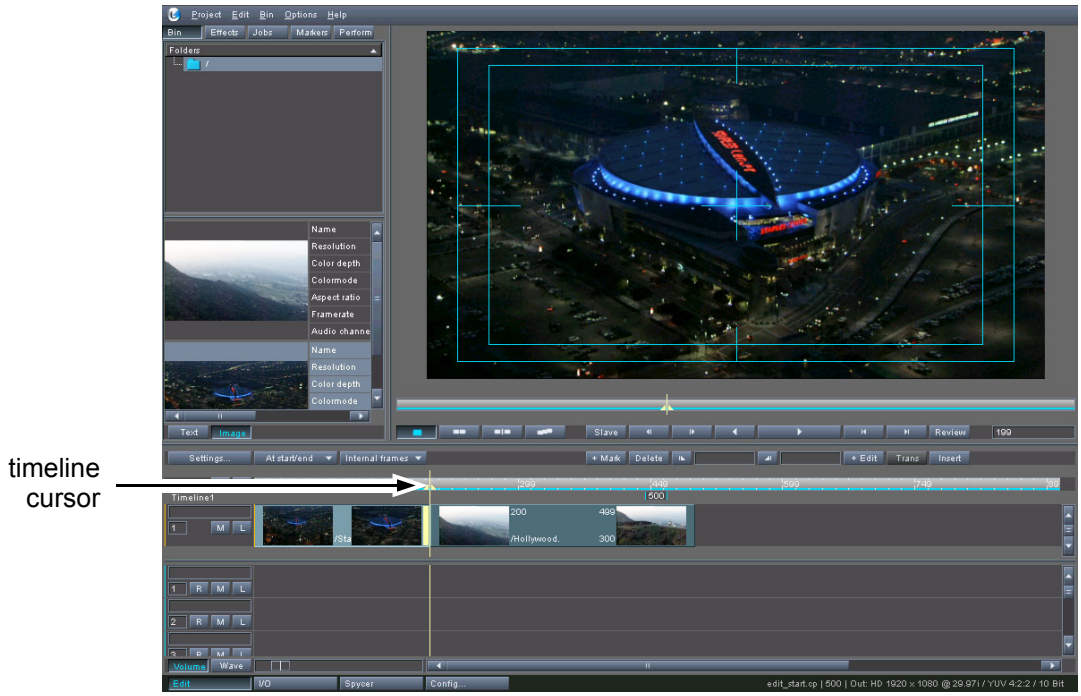


Figure 3-11: Timeline cursor at cutting point

This will make the button **TRANS** available in the user interface.

- Select the button **TRANS**.

A transition appears between the two clips:



Figure 3-12: Transition in timeline

With the transition available between the two clips you can now call its properties, for example, to change the type of wipe for the transition:

- With the mouse double-click the transition in the timeline. Alternatively, you can invoke the context menu on the transition (usually with a right-click of the mouse) and select the menu option ***Show properties***.

The properties will be shown instead of the visible audio tracks right below the timeline area (see section "Properties of a Transition" on page 7-7).

- With the properties of the transition available select as a transition type, for example, `Vertical Wipe` from the list box.

To the left of the properties area you can also set the duration of the transition frame accurately. Simply type in the duration and confirm it with the [Enter] key.

This will apply the selected transition type to the transition between the two clips. You may now use the controls of the Edit Tool to review its outcome.

In the insert mode there must be enough head and/or tail available of at least one clip to set a transition, otherwise the button **TRANS** will be unavailable. If there are not enough head and tail available, you can use the trim mode of the Edit Tool to change the in- and outpoint of the adjacent clips to a cutting point. If you are in the overwrite mode of the timeline, the Edit Tool will create the head and tail necessary for the transition automatically.

You can delete a transition the same way you delete a clip from the timeline. Simply select the transition and press the key [Del] on your keyboard.

3.2.7 Applying Effects to Clips in the Timeline

Adding effects to the timeline of the Edit Tool and playing it out in real time is one strength of the DVS system. Every clip in the timeline provides timeline element properties the same way a transition does: You simply have to double-click the clip on the timeline or invoke the context menu of the clip and select the menu option ***Show properties***. Via the timeline element properties of a clip you can adjust zooming and panning or set color/gamma corrections for the respective clip. All settings can be transferred easily to other clips present in the timeline.

In this step to introduce the Edit Tool we want to apply a primary color correction to clip A of our example project. For this perform the following:

- Select the second clip in the timeline (clip A) with a click of the mouse.

Because in the previous step we have altered the properties of a transition, the area of the timeline element properties should already be visible below the timeline. As soon as the clip is selected, it shows you immediately its properties.

If the timeline element properties area is not visible perform a double-click on the clip in the timeline or select the menu option ***Show properties*** of its context menu.

The effects operator 'Zoom + Pan' is by default available and active for all video clips in the timeline and thus is already available in the effects list of the timeline element properties.

- Next, activate the tab **Effects** in the tool area of the Edit Tool.

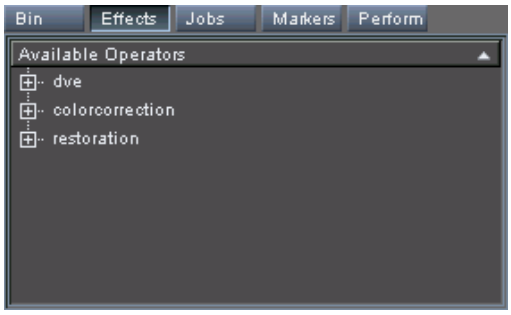


Figure 3-13: Selection of an effects operator

The tool area displays all available effects operators on your system. With a click of the mouse on the little plus or minus sign right in front of an entry or by double-clicking an entry directly you can expand or collapse the operators sorted under this folder.

- Select from the folder 'colorcorrection' the operator for the primary color correction ('1st Color Correction') and drag and drop it to the **Effects** list of the timeline element properties:

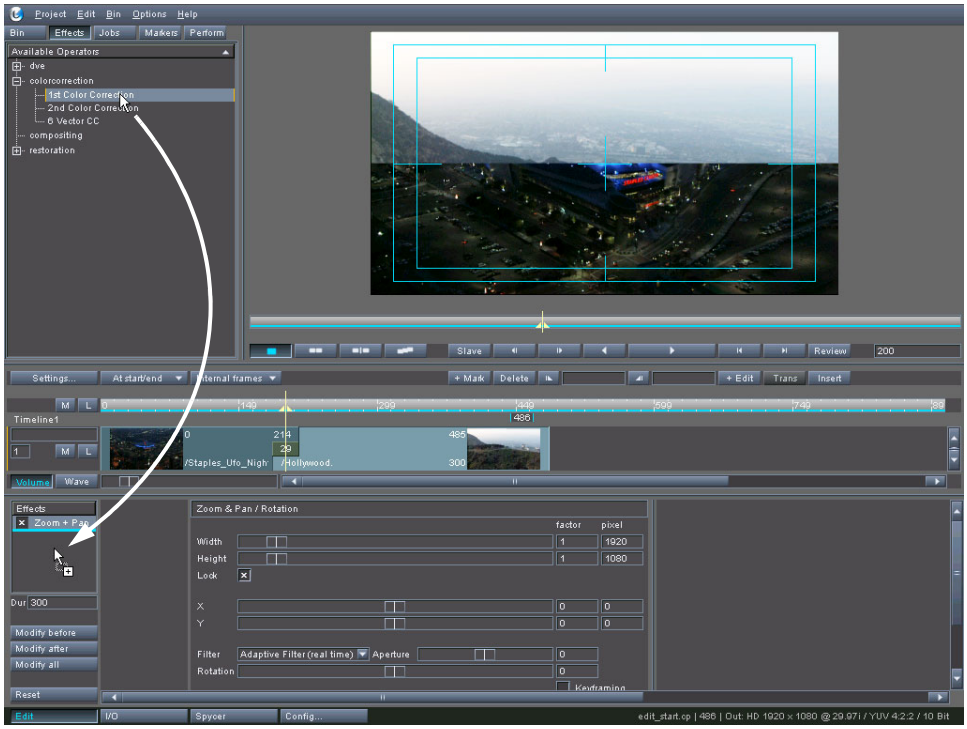


Figure 3-14: Drag and drop of effect

This will apply the selected effect to the clip whose properties are displayed in the area of the timeline element properties. Once an effect is selected from the effects list, its controls will be available in the settings pane to the right.

- With the controls of the primary color correction available adjust, for example, the contrast, brightness or gamma of the clip.

The changes are immediately applied to the clip in the timeline.

With this step our example project is now complete and you can, for example, perform additional works on the timeline or play it out in the selected output format (button **SETTINGS...**).

If you need an operator to be applied only to a limited range of frames of a clip, you have to edit the clip with hard cuts beforehand because the effects operators are valid for a whole timeline clip always.

Some effects are not real-time capable. Prior to a play-out their application to a clip in the timeline has to be rendered (see section “Prerendering of Timeline Elements” on page 6-46).

An effect can be deleted from the effects list of a clip the same way you delete a clip from the timeline. Just select the effect from the effects list in the timeline element properties and press the key [Del] on your keyboard.



A once set and configured effect can also be used as a template effect (preset effect) for other clips in the timeline. Then you can use the same effect settings several times in this project without laboriously configuring the effects operator anew. Further information about this can be found in section “Effects” on page 4-25.

To the left of the properties area you can also set the duration of the clip selected in the timeline area. Simply type in its duration and confirm it with the [Enter] key.

3.3 Exiting the Program

To end the current software session perform the following:



There is no way to end the Edit Tool alone. When you exit the Edit Tool, the whole DVS software will shut down. Therefore, it is recommended to finish all tasks, such as a record or play-out operation, beforehand. Otherwise the respective task may get interrupted.

- Select the option ***Exit*** on the ***Project*** menu or press the key combination [Alt + F4] alternatively.

  You may also use the menu option ***Exit*** of the program icon on the menu bar of the user interface (see section “Exit” on page 9-2).

The DVS software will be closed and you can then, for instance, shut down the system.



When exiting the program, a DVS information file is as a standard written automatically to the directory `log` available in the installation path of the software (only the last ten files will be kept). Further information about the log files and the DVS information file can be found in section “The Performance Monitor” on page 4-36.

The Tool Area



On the left side of the user interface directly below the menu bar you can find the tool area. It shows you depending on the optional features available or the currently activated software module as well as task mode various tools that can be used during your work. The different tools are provided as tabs to switch easily between them.

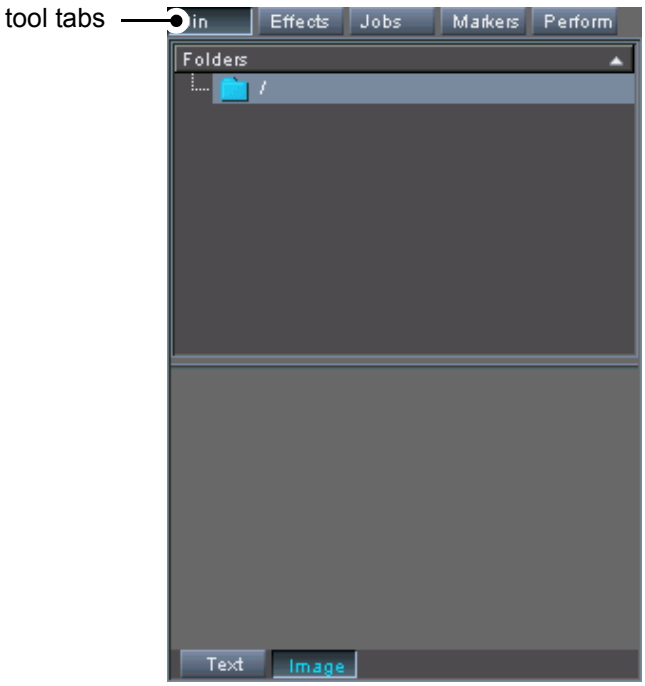


Figure 4-1: The tool area

When you activate one of the inactive tool tabs, the tool area will change its appearance and the respective tool will be displayed in the tool area. Among the tools you can find, for example, the bin which provides initial access to the video material stored on your system, or the performance monitor to assess the real-time operation of the DVS system, for example, during a play-out of the timeline.

This chapter describes the features of the tool area as well as the default tools available in the Edit Tool module in detail. These default tools may also be available in the other software modules of the DVS software.

4.1 Changing the Size of the Tool Area

Some tools may not be shown in full, i.e. with all items or information displayed in the currently visible area of the tool area. To get a better view on the individual tools or make items visible that are otherwise hidden you can change the size of the tool area.

For this perform the following:

- Move the outer right edge of the tool area to the left or to the right with the mouse.

Then you will be able to view, for example, the thumbnails of clips present in the bin together with all their text information.

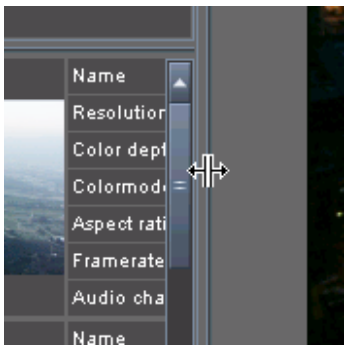


Figure 4-2: Adjusting the size of the tool area horizontally

If you pull the right edge completely to the left, the tool area will no longer be visible and thus can be turned off. If you pull the right edge completely to the right, the control area will be hidden and you can see horizontally the contents of the respective tool in full.

Additionally, you can alter the size of the tool area vertically:

- Move the lower edge of the tool and control area which is also the upper edge of the timeline area up or down with the mouse to enlarge or reduce the areas.

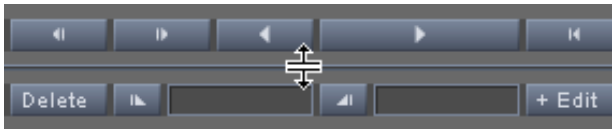


Figure 4-3: Adjusting the size of the tool area vertically

The vertical size of the tool and control area will adjust itself automatically which will also affect the size of the timeline area (see section "Changing the Layout of the Timeline Area" on page 6-6 for further information).

4.2 The Bin

After starting the DVS software and thus the Edit Tool the bin is by default activated in the tool area.

If the bin is not displayed in the tool area of the Edit Tool select the tab **Bin** to activate it.

Then the area will look similar to the following figure:

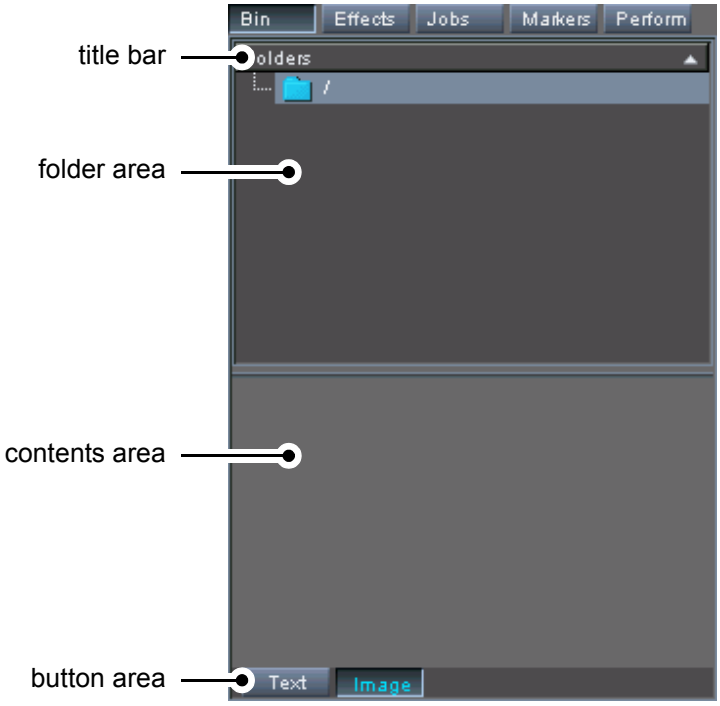


Figure 4-4: The bin

With the bin you can perform a clip and project management by creating folders and sorting your video and audio material into them. Furthermore, you can preview your material via thumbnails and select a preliminary inpoint for the respective clip.

For this the bin provides the following elements:

Most areas or items of the bin provide a context menu to make the various functions of the bin available to the user.

title bar	With the title bar you can change the layout of the bin or sort your created folders present in the folder area.
folder area	In the folder area you can create folders to sort and structure your video and audio material. This way you can perform a clip and project management.

contents area	In the contents area you can see the video or audio material already added to the bin and sorted into the folders via their thumbnails or text information. If the thumbnail view is activated, a scrub bar to preview your material in still images and to set roughly the inpoint of the respective clip is provided by a clip once it is selected. You can administer the clips directly or add new clips to the bin with the help of the context menu of the contents area. Via the context menu of a clip you can also create a proxy from it in case its video format exceeds the real-time capability of CLIPSTER.
view buttons	Via the view buttons of the bin you can select whether the clips in the contents area shall be seen as thumbnails with text or with their text information only.

This section explains all features provided by the bin of the DVS software in detail.

4.2.1 Configuring the Bin

With the bin you can perform a clip and project management: You can structure the clips by sorting them to different folders and you can preview the clips as well as access additional information via their text display in the bin. To serve all these functions at once, you can change and configure the layout of the bin freely:

– The areas of the bin can be arranged horizontally or vertically.
– The appearance of clips in the contents area can be changed.

Both procedures are explained in this section.

Changing the Layout of the Bin

To provide, for example, for a better view on the material in the bin, the areas of the bin, the folder and the contents area, can be arranged horizontally or vertically via the title bar of the folder area. For this do the following:

• Call up the context menu of the bin's title bar (usually with a right-click of the mouse).

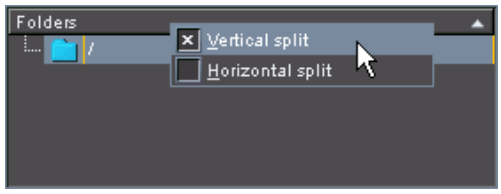


Figure 4-5: Context menu of title bar

- Select the horizontal or vertical appearance of the bin from the context menu.

The context menu to change the layout of the bin can also be called on the area where the view buttons are located.

The layout of the bin will be set accordingly.

Additionally, you may change the size of the tool area to get a better view on the bin or to make items visible that cannot be seen in the visible part of the tool area (see section "Changing the Size of the Tool Area" on page 4-2).

Changing the View of Clips

Via the view buttons at the bottom of the bin you can set whether the clips in the contents area shall be seen as thumbnails with text or with their text information only.



Use the button **TEXT** to view the clips in the contents area with their text information only:

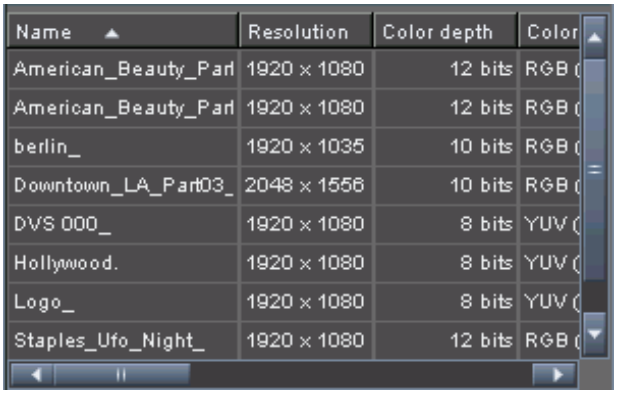


Figure 4-6: Contents area with text information

The kind of text information displayed in the contents area of the bin can be set freely with the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more information).

In this view you can easily sort the clips in ascending or descending order by clicking on the column heading that the clips should be sorted by (see also section "Sorting Clips" on page 4-19). The sorting will also be available after switching to the thumbnail view of the bin again.

A scrub bar to preview and set an inpoint is available in the thumbnail view of the bin only.



With the button **IMAGE** you can activate the view of the thumbnails again.

For the thumbnail view of the contents area there are also text information available that can be set via the Configuration Tool as well (see above). These texts will then appear to the right of the thumbnail (as shown in figure 4-12 on page 4-17).

4.2.2 Adding Clips to the Bin

Before you can begin to work with clips in the Edit Tool you have to fill the bin with clips available on the system. There are several ways to fill the bin with clips of video and audio:

1. You can open a standard file manager (e.g. the Windows Explorer) and drag and drop the clips, either a file within a directory or the directory itself, to the contents area of the bin,
2. you can use the menu option ***Add Clip*** on the context menu of the bin's contents area or the menu option ***Add clips...*** of the ***Project*** menu to fill the bin with contents,
3. you can drag and drop contents to the bin with the help of Spycer, the content management software module, or
4. you can capture clips with the I/O Tool software module of the DVS software.

All these procedures will be explained in this section.

The DVS software works with standard computer files. Video and audio data should be stored on the designated storage only (e.g. the system's main storage or a DVS-SAN). Other storage locations may be too slow for real-time operations. Furthermore, it is strongly recommended to use the main storage for video and audio as well as project related data only. Save other data on the system disks.

When adding clips to the bin with a procedure other than a record, some properties may not be discerned properly due to missing file header information. Then they will either be deduced from the file format, color space, etc. of the clip, or configured to the currently set timeline output settings. If the properties of the clip do not match the material on the storage, you have to change them accordingly (see section "Changing the Properties of Clips" on page 4-21).

Adding Clips to the Bin with a File Manager

In the following it is described how to use a standard file manager of the operating system to move video or audio clips to the bin:

- Open a Windows file manager, for example, the Windows Explorer with the keyboard combination [Windows () + E].
- In the file manager select an audio or video file (either a file within a directory or the directory itself) on the storage where the video data is stored.

  For a list of the supported file formats see section "Supported File Formats" on page A-9.
- Drag and drop the selected file/directory to the contents area of the bin with the help of the mouse.

  You can also drop the file/directory on a folder in the folder area of the bin (e.g. the root folder).

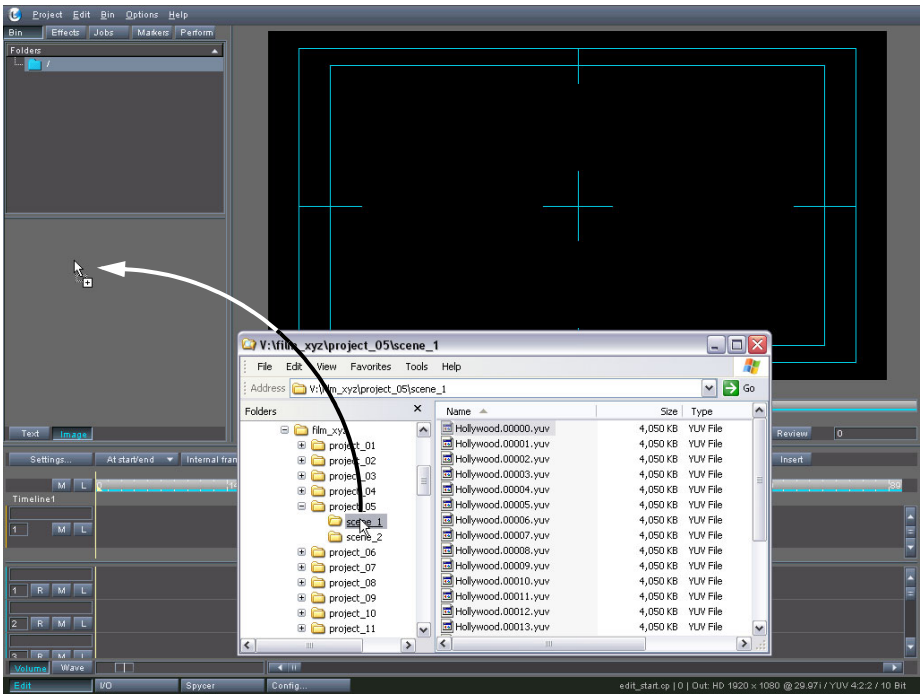


Figure 4-7: Drag and drop of clip to bin

You may select more than one directory (e.g. with the [Ctrl] key pressed) and drag them to the contents area of the bin. The respective clips will all be added to the bin.

With video, if you select another file than the first frame file in a video directory, the scrub bar cursor of the thumbnail (a possible clip's inpoint) will be set accordingly.

After a drag-and-drop procedure from a file manager folders in the folder area may be created automatically. Then they will provide the directory structure present on the storage and the video files will already be sorted into the respective folders. This behavior can be configured with the Configuration Tool of the DVS software (see the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more details).

The same applies to audio multi-clips: if an audio multi-clip is dragged to the contents area of the bin, a subfolder will be created automatically which will then contain the individual audio clips. For more information about multi-clips see section "Details about Clips" on page 4-10.

The respective data will then be made available to the DVS software and you will see it in the contents area of the bin. By repeating the described steps above you can add as many clips to the bin as you need.

Once clips are available in the bin, you can start working with the Edit Tool and add them to the timeline (see section "Adding Clips to the Timeline" on page 6-2).

Adding Clips to the Bin Using the 'Add Clip' Menu Options

You can use the 'Add Clip' menu options to select video or audio clips that you want available in the bin.

For a list of the supported file formats see section "Supported File Formats" on page A-9.

- Either select the ***Add Clip*** menu option on the context menu of the bin's contents area or the menu option ***Add clips...*** on the menu ***Project*** (section "The 'Project' Menu" on page 9-3).

Both possibilities open a standard dialog window of the operating system for the selection of a file:

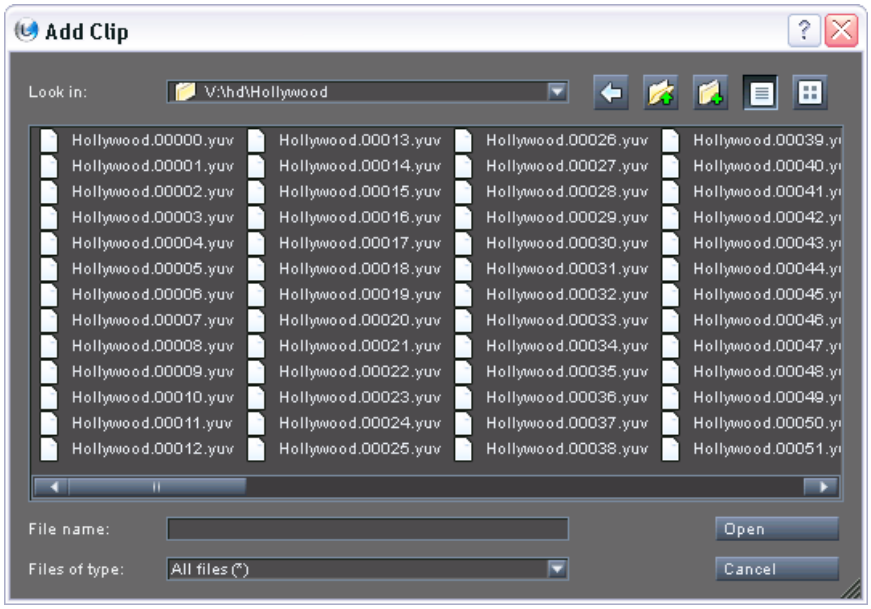


Figure 4-8: Dialog window to add a clip to the bin

- Select a video or audio file from the list box or enter its name in the entry field **File name**.

  If you select another file than the first video frame file in a video directory, the scrub bar cursor of the thumbnail (a possible clip's inpoint) will be set accordingly.

- Confirm your selection with the button **OPEN**.

The selected video or audio clip will then be added to the contents area of the bin. By repeating the described steps above you can add as many clips to your bin as your project needs.

Once clips are available in the bin, you can start working with the Edit Tool and add them to the timeline (see section "Adding Clips to the Timeline" on page 6-2).

Adding Clips to the Bin Using Spycer

To add clips to the contents area of the bin you can also use Spycer, the content management software integrated in the DVS software. It is the best and most informative way to add clips to the bin, because with Spycer you can, for instance, perform management tasks on the clip or preview it before adding it to your project.

Once the Spycer software module is activated with the button **SPYCER** in the task bar of the DVS software (see section "The Task Bar" on page 2-9), it shows two browsing panes where you can browse for data easily. Additionally you can see right below the menu bar the bin as it is available in the Edit Tool. When audio or video clips are displayed in the browsing panes of Spycer, they can be dragged and dropped to the contents area of the bin without any difficulty.

Further explanations of Spycer and its usage are not part of this user guide. You can find them in the "Spycer" user guide.



When the software module of Spycer is started for the first time, the initial setup of the application may be launched. In order to run Spycer you have to specify these (see the "Spycer" user guide for further details).

Adding Clips to the Bin via a Capturing

Clips can also be added to the bin by performing a capture operation with the I/O Tool of the DVS software. Once the record is finished, the recorded clip(s) will be available in the contents area of the bin.

Contrary to all previously described methods to add a clip to the bin, this procedure will set the properties of the clips correctly: No manual configuration of their properties will be necessary, for example, to correct their color space, field mode, etc. (see attention note in section "Adding Clips to the Bin" on page 4-6).

The exact procedure how to add clips to the bin via a capture operation is not described in this user guide. It is in detail explained in the "CLIPSTER I/O Tool" user guide.

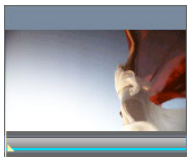
4.2.3 Details about Clips

During the adding of clips to the bin, the clips are checked for their type, length, resolution, bit depth, etc. If set accordingly, the text information of the clips in the bin will show you these information about the clips (see also section "Changing the View of Clips" on page 4-5). This section provides some details about clips in the DVS software.

The Clip Types

You can add video, audio and so called multi-clips to the contents area of the bin:

video clip:



Video clips are seen in the contents area of the bin usually with their thumbnail previews. When a clip is selected, a scrub bar below the thumbnail will be available that can be used to preview the clip in still images and select an inpoint of the clip roughly (if enabled via the Configuration Tool).

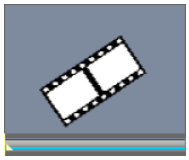
audio clip:



To use audio in the Edit Tool you have to make the files available the same way as with video files: You have to add them to the bin as described in section "Adding Clips to the Bin" on page 4-6.

The DVS software supports audio clips that contain more than one mono or stereo channel (multiple channels) in the audio file. These clips will be available as one clip in the bin, but when added to the timeline, the additional channels will be added to the other audio tracks below the selected one.

invalid clip:



This icon indicates a video clip whose data is currently not available or an invalid clip. Then wait a few seconds and give the software time to gather the data. If after that the icon is still visible, you have to set the properties of this clip correctly via its context menu or provide the right video material on the storage to receive a valid clip in the bin.

multi-clips: Multi-clips are clips of either video or audio that are present in the bin as one clip but consist of several individual clips on the storage. Usually, these individual clips are stored in a subdirectory each, and all subdirectories are located under one main directory. When adding a multi-clip to the bin via a drag-and-drop procedure from a file manager (see section "Adding Clips to the Bin with a File Manager" on page 4-7), you may select the main directory as a clip and add it to the bin. All individual clips will then be available as one clip in the bin. Even when dragged to the timeline, the multi-clip is handled as one clip.

Multi-clips are a necessity due to file system limitations of the operating system, meaning Windows may cause problems if more than 20,000 files are stored in one directory. However, the DVS software will create multi-clips automatically, for example, during the finalizing of a project or when recording a clip with the I/O Tool. Then, when the clip exceeds a configurable number of frames in one directory, the DVS software divides the clip and saves it in as many subdirectories as needed under one main directory. Afterwards this main directory can be added to the bin as a multi-clip. To recognize multi-clips correctly a metadata file (*Sequence-Info.xml*) is created during finalizing or record, detailing the number of files per folder for this clip. Further information about finalizing and the storing of a clip in subdirectories can be found in section "Finalizing the Timeline" on page 6-80.

When adding an audio multi-clip to the bin, a thumbnail of the multi-clip will be added to the contents area of the bin as described above (possibly several ones if audio was captured in stereo/mono channel files). In addition, one or more subfolders will be created in the bin which will contain the individual clips used for the audio multi-clip. This behavior is useful because, contrary to video multi-clips, you cannot change the properties of an audio multi-clip via the context menu. If you want to change the properties of an audio multi-clip, you have to change them for each clip individually in its respective bin subfolder (see section "Changing the Properties of Clips" on page 4-21).

pending clip: 

Clips of either audio or video that were not completely recorded, receive this icon. Then you will know that parts of this clip may be missing. However, you can already use them in the timeline of the Edit Tool and work with them.

unknown: 

Files of an unknown type, i.e. files where the DVS software is not able to determine whether they are audio or video files, will get this icon. They cannot be used in the DVS software.

Real-time Capability of Clips

With an optimized system and a main storage that incorporates fully functioning hard disks, the DVS system can handle two data streams of film material up to 2K in RGB 12 bit in real time. If you want to process material of a higher resolution or bit depth, the real-time capability of the system cannot be ensured.

The real-time capability of the DVS system depends on various factors, such as frame size, play-out frequency, location of the clip on the storage, etc. When adding a clip to the bin, it will be checked whether its location and/or file format are real-time capable.

Additional checks will be performed when adding clips to the timeline. If any exceed the real-time capability of the DVS system, they will be subject to a prerendering (see section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46).

Clips that may cause trouble because of their location and/or file format invoke a warning message when added to the bin. Then the clip will be visibly marked in the contents area of the bin: In the thumbnail view a warning icon will be superimposed on the thumbnail and the respective text information that is the cause for this warning will be colored in yellow:

This behavior, i.e. the warning message as well as the marking of a clip in the contents area of the bin, can be configured with the setting **Warn if base directory mismatch** (group **General**) in the Configuration Tool of the DVS software (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more details).

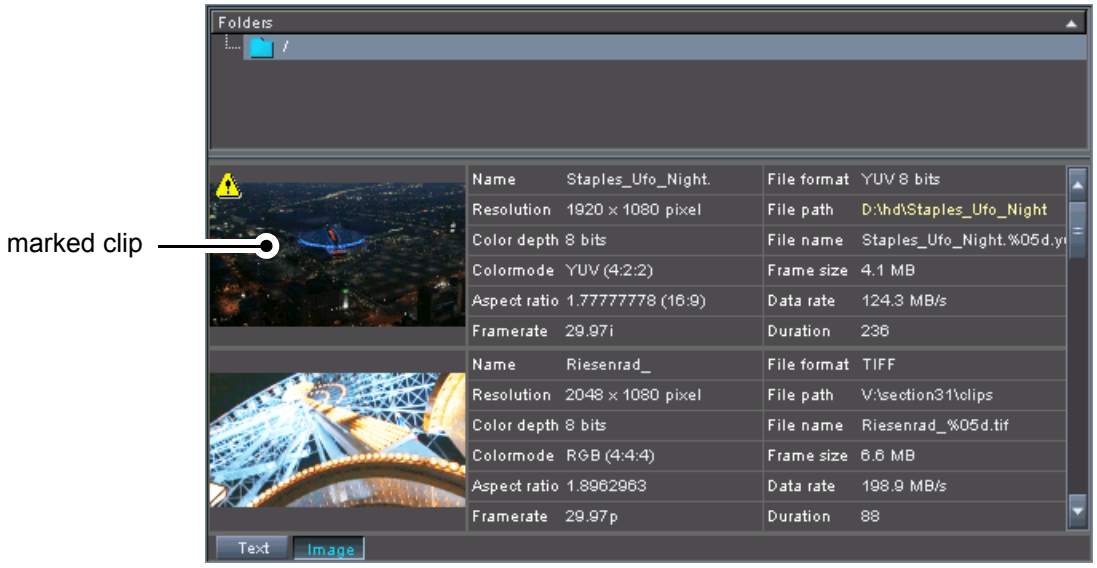


Figure 4-9: Clip marked in the bin

In the figure above the top clip is stored on a system drive. Because this location is not real-time capable (it may not provide enough data trans-

fer rate to make the vast amount of data accessible in time), a warning icon is visible at the top left side of the thumbnail and the respective value of the text information that is the cause for this warning is marked in yellow.

The location of the real-time capable storage is a configurable setting in the Configuration Tool of the DVS software (**System base video directory**, see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide). This setting is also used during the exchange of project files between different DVS systems.

The **System base video directory** should always be configured to the native main storage (stripe set) of the DVS system (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide). Other storage locations may be too slow for real-time operations.

Via the setting **Additional real-time paths** of the Configuration Tool you can also configure other storage locations as real-time storages.

4.2.4 Working with Folders in the Bin

The folder area of the bin is used to create folders to sort and structure your video and audio material by sorting them to different folders. This way you can perform a clip and project management. In this section you can read what to do to create folders and how to administrate them.

For most of these tasks the context menu of the folders in the folder area is used. It provides different folder related functions, such as the creation of a new folder in the folder area or the renaming of an existent one.

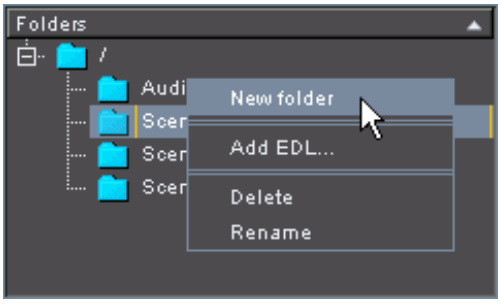


Figure 4-10: Context menu of a folder in the folder area

For information about the menu option ***Add EDL...*** see section "Importing and Adding EDLs" on page 8-6.

Creating Folders

Via the context menu you can create a new folder manually in the folder area of the bin:

- Call up the context menu on a folder in the folder area of the bin and select the menu option ***New folder***.

This will create a new folder in the folder area. It will be placed as a subfolder below the selected folder where the context menu was invoked. After this you have to assign a name to the newly created folder.

- Enter the name of the folder via the keyboard and confirm it with the [Enter] key.

Then the new folder will be present in the folder area of the bin and you can use it to sort your audio and/or video material into it (see section "Working with Clips in the Bin" on page 4-16).

Folders can also be created automatically with a drag-and-drop procedure from a file manager (see section "Adding Clips to the Bin with a File Manager" on page 4-7).

Sorting Folders

As soon as folders are available in the folder area of the bin, you can sort them in descending or ascending order. If your project contains a lot of folders in the bin, this will make it easier for you to find an individual folder. To sort the folders do the following:

- Simply click on the title bar with the mouse.

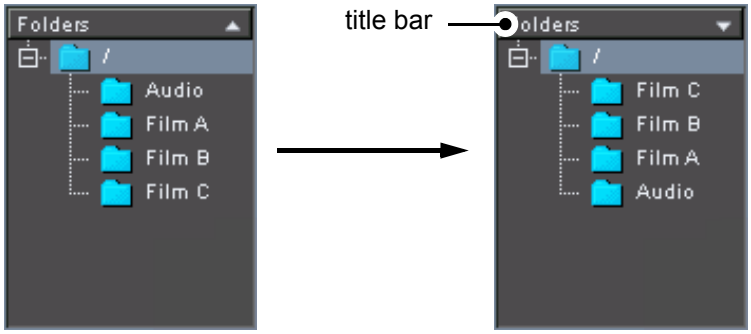


Figure 4-11: Sorting the folders

This switches between a descending and ascending order of the folders in the folder area. The type of order will be indicated by the triangle at the right-hand side of the title bar.

Renaming Folders

To rename folders and thus to give them a different name after they were created in the folder area of the bin perform the following:

- Call up the context menu on a formerly created folder in the folder area of the bin and select the menu option ***Rename***.

After this you can change the name of the respective folder:

- Enter the new name of the folder via the keyboard and confirm it with the [Enter] key.

Then the selected folder will be given the new name.

Only previously created folders can be renamed. The root folder cannot be changed in any respect.

Deleting Folders

Folders can be deleted the same way they are created, via the context menu:

- Call up the context menu on a formerly created folder in the folder area of the bin and select the menu option ***Delete***.

To delete a folder you may also select the folder and press the key [Del] on your keyboard.

After this a warning message will appear on the screen.

- If you want to delete the folder and all clips that are sorted into it, confirm the warning message.

This will delete the respective folder where the context menu was invoked. If clips were sorted into the selected folder, they will be deleted as well.

Only formerly created folders can be deleted. The root folder cannot be changed in any respect.

4.2.5 Working with Clips in the Bin

In the contents area of the bin you can see the video or audio material already added to the bin and sorted into the folders via their thumbnails and/or text information. If the thumbnail view is activated and a clip is selected in the contents area, a scrub bar to preview your material in still images and set roughly the inpoint of the respective clip is provided by each thumbnail.

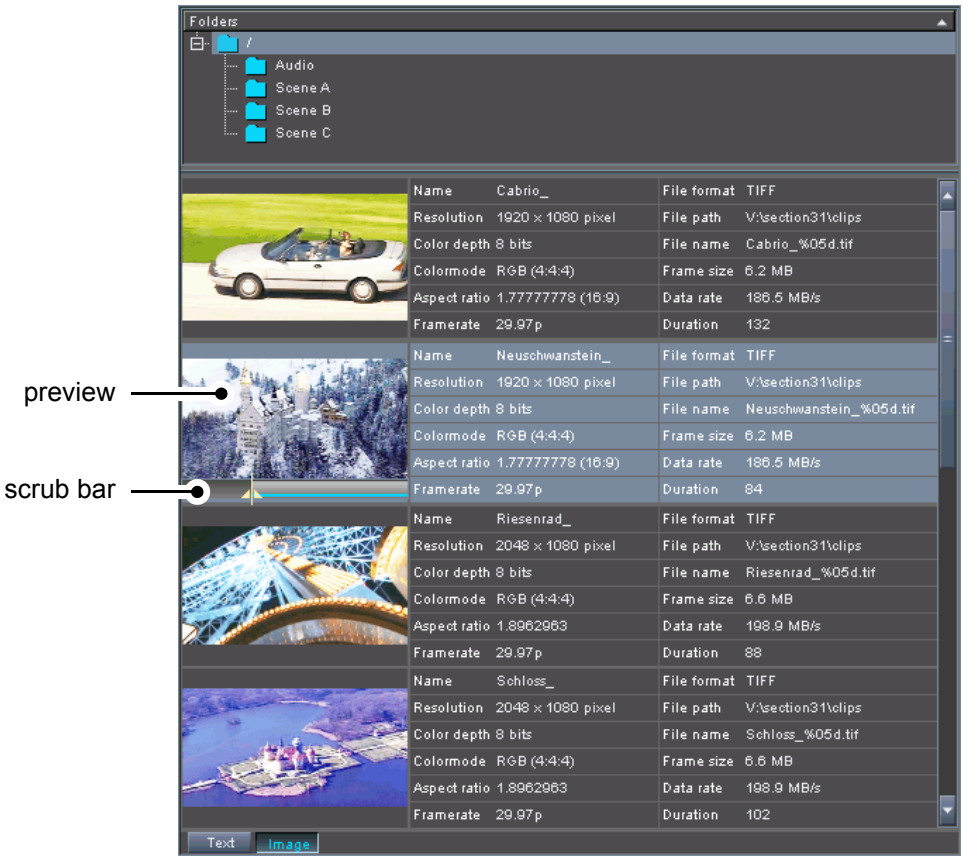


Figure 4-12: Clips in the contents area of the bin

In this section you can read what to do to administer clips.

For some of these tasks the context menu of the clips in the contents area is used. It provides different clip related functions, such as the adding of a new clip to the contents area of the bin or altering its properties.

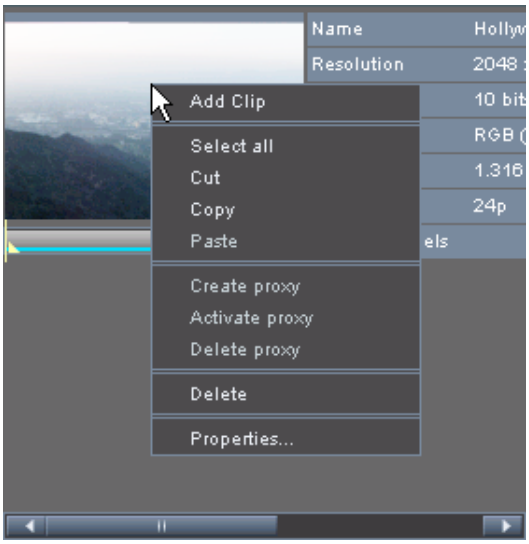


Figure 4-13: Context menu of a clip in the bin

If the contents area is empty of clips and you call up the context menu, not all menu options are displayed.

How to add clips to the contents area of the bin is in detail described in section "Adding Clips to the Bin" on page 4-6.

How to work with proxies in the bin is described in section "Using Proxies" on page 4-22.

Selecting Clips

Clips can be selected or deselected easily in the contents area of the bin. For this perform one of the following procedures or their combination:

Although the table below describes how to select clips only, most procedures can be used to deselect clips as well.

Individual clips	Individual clips can be selected with a click of the mouse on the respective clip.
Several clips	Several clips can be selected disjointedly when clicking them while holding down the [Ctrl] key at the same time.
Range of clips	A range of adjoining clips can be selected by clicking one clip (the starting clip) and afterwards holding down the [Shift] key while clicking the clip that marks the end of the range.
All clips	All clips displayed in the contents area can be selected in one step either with the menu option ***Select all*** of the context menu or the keyboard shortcut [Ctrl + A] (when the contents area has the focus).

Cutting, Copying or Pasting Clips

Bin clips and timeline elements can be cut or copied to the clipboard of the operating system and afterwards pasted again at the location of your choice, either in the contents area of the bin or on a timeline track. The elements in the clipboard can also be pasted into a new project.

With this you can copy or move the selected element(s) within the bin (e.g. from folder to folder), within the timeline (e.g. between tracks or within one track), between the bin and the timeline tracks, or vice versa. Elements such as clips pasted into the timeline will be added at the current position of the timeline cursor. Furthermore, to paste clips to different timeline tracks rather than the first track you have to lock the

lower track numbers where the pasting should not occur (see section "Muting and Locking Tracks" on page 6-36).

When operating between bin and timeline or vice versa, the selected clip(s) will be added (i.e. copied).

For these procedures the focus must be set correctly. For example, when operating in the bin, its contents area (not the folder area) must have the focus.

The cut, copy and paste operations can be initialized either via the context menu of the selected element(s) or via the usual keyboard shortcuts (see section "Keyboard Shortcuts" on page A-7). Clips within the bin can also be copied or pasted between folders via a drag-and-drop procedure (see section "Sorting Clips into Folders" on page 4-19).

Sorting Clips

When the text information view is selected for the clips in the contents area of the bin (see section "Changing the View of Clips" on page 4-5), you can sort the clips easily:

- In the text information table simply click on the respective column heading to sort the entries under this column in ascending or descending order.

Then the clips will be sorted accordingly and the type of order will be indicated by the triangle to the right of the column heading. The sorting will also be available after switching to the thumbnail view of the bin again.

The already sorted clips can even be sorted further, i.e. they can be sorted by up to three criteria in total. With this you are able, for instance, to sort clips by their names as well as by their duration:

- To sort the list further hold the [Ctrl] key pressed while clicking with the mouse on another column heading.

To the right of the additionally selected column heading a figure will appear to indicate that this is the second or third criteria the list is sorted by. Whether this sorting occurs in ascending or descending order is determined by the sorting order of the very first column heading, i.e. if the first selected column is sorted in descending order, all following sorting criteria will also be sorted in descending order. By repeating the last step you can sort the list of clips by up to three criteria, and the whole sorting will also be available when switching to the thumbnail view of the bin.

Sorting Clips into Folders

As soon as clips are present in the bin you can sort them into previously created folders (see section "Creating Folders" on page 4-15) to keep your project file in order and thus to perform a clip and project management.

- To sort the clips into folders simply select the clips in the contents area of the bin and drag and drop them to the respective folder in the folder area.

They are then present in this folder and you can view them again in the contents area when the folder is selected from the folder area.

If you drag and drop the clips while the [Ctrl] key is pressed, the clips will be copied instead of moved.

Preparing Clips for Editing Purposes

To begin an editing process you have to use the clips of the bin and drag and drop them either to the control area or directly to the timeline of the Edit Tool.

If a clip is selected in the contents area of the bin when in the thumbnail view, you can use the scrub bar below the thumbnail to preview the material and roughly select an inpoint for the respective clip:

The feature to select an inpoint can be enabled or disabled via the Configuration Tool. When disabled, every time you add a clip to the timeline of the Edit Tool the full clip will be added to the timeline regardless of the set scrub bar cursor (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more information).

- Move the scrub bar cursor to the left or right to preview your material and/or to select an inpoint:



Figure 4-14: Preview and setting of inpoint of the bin material

While adding a clip to the bin, you can already set the position of the scrub bar cursor and thus define a possible inpoint for the clip. During the adding (see section "Adding Clips to the Bin" on page 4-6) select the particular frame file where the inpoint should be set and add it to the bin. The scrub bar cursor of the thumbnail will be set accordingly.

- After that simply select the clip and drag it either to the control area or a video or audio track of the timeline to start your editing work.

The Edit Tool will use the selected inpoint as the starting point of your clip if this feature is enabled. However, if you drag a video clip from the bin to the control area of the Edit Tool, the software switches to the

source-edit mode where you can select the in- and outpoint of the clip frame accurately before adding it to the timeline (see section "The Source-Edit Mode" on page 5-14).

Changing the Properties of Clips

In the bin you can call up the properties of clips. Then you can, for example, assign flags to clips or change their properties, such as their names or video formats. Use the opening window to change the clip's properties if the DVS software does not recognize its video or audio format correctly:

- Call up the context menu on a clip present in the contents area of the bin and select the menu option ***Properties***.

This will open the **'Clip properties'** window where you can change the clip's properties.



Some clip properties can only be altered if the clip is not already present in the timeline. Furthermore, the properties of audio multi-clips can only be changed by individually altering the properties of each audio clip in the provided bin subfolder of the audio multi-clip.

The window of the clip properties can also be opened from a clip added to the timeline (see section "The Context Menu of Video Clips" on page 6-61).

The description of the **'Clip properties'** window is not part of this user guide. It is in detail described in the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.

Deleting Clips

To delete a clip from the contents area of the bin perform the following:

- Call up the context menu on the clip that you want to delete in the contents area of the bin and select the menu option ***Delete***.



Alternatively you may also select the clip and press the key [Del] on your keyboard.

After this a warning message will appear on the screen.

- If you want to delete the clip from the bin as well as all its representations present in the timeline, confirm the warning message.

This will delete the selected clip (either video or audio) from the contents area of the bin. If the clip was already added to the timeline, its representations there will be deleted as well.

4.2.6 Using Proxies

A proxy can be used when working with high-resolution film material, such as 4K. It is a downscaled clip of the high-resolution data that will be internally used by the Edit Tool as a substitute for its original material to ensure a real-time working environment. Once a proxy has been created, it will be available in the bin instead of the original material. Nevertheless, the bin clip and all its representations in the timeline are still linked to the original material and by turning the proxies on or off you can decide whether the material of the high resolution is used in the Edit Tool or the proxy. Thus you can work with the downconverted clips as usual in the timeline but when playing out or finalizing you can switch back to the original material in high resolution.

This section describes how to administrate proxies in the DVS software.



For more information about proxies in general see section “Working in Real Time” on page 2-11.

Creating Proxies

For each clip available in the bin that may exceed the real-time capability of the DVS system you can create a proxy to ensure a real-time capable environment. This means when the resolution of the clip is greater than 2K, you can create proxies via its context menu in the bin:



If the clip’s resolution does not exceed the real-time capability of the system, the respective menu options to administrate proxies will not be available.

- In the contents area of the bin select the clips that you want to create proxies of (see section “Selecting Clips” on page 4-18).
- Next call up the context menu on one of the selected clips and activate the menu option ***Create proxy*** or use the menu option ***Generate proxies*** on the ***Bin*** menu (see section “Generate proxies” on page 9-21).

This switches the tool area from the **Bin** to the **Jobs** tab which will then detail the status of the render operation(s). For each triggered render job one entry will be displayed. In case of several render jobs, they will be dealt with in the current sorting order of the bin (see section “Sorting Clips” on page 4-19). During the rendering the downconverted images of the proxy will be stored in a reserved location for proxies on the main storage.



It is best to handle and administer the proxy data project specific, meaning for each project in a different storage location. Further information about this can be found in section “Notes on Project Management” on page 2-14.

Once the render operations are finished, their entries will disappear from the list of the **Jobs** tab. Afterwards you can begin to work with the proxies. They will be already activated in the bin and ready for use.



After a proxy generation save your project file. If an already saved project file is not saved again after creating proxies, the proxy files will not be recognized by the Edit Tool when the project file is loaded once more: Neither will they be used for the project nor can they be deleted via the software. They have to be deleted manually (as described in section "Cleaning Temporary Data Manually" on page A-21).



For further information about the **Jobs** tab see section "Jobs" on page 4-33.

Activating or Deactivating Proxies

The created proxies substitute the original high-resolution material on the storage to make the environment of the DVS system real-time capable. By activating or deactivating proxies their usage instead of the original material can be determined: When a proxy is activated, the bin clip and all its representations in the timeline will show you the down-converted material; when it is deactivated, the original high-resolution material is used in the Edit Tool.

To activate or deactivate proxies perform the following:

- In the contents area of the bin select the clips that provide a proxy (see section "Selecting Clips" on page 4-18).
- Next call up the context menu on one of the selected clips and choose the menu option ***Activate proxy***.

If this menu option shows a cross in front after it was clicked, the proxies are activated and will be used for the selected clips. The selected bin clips are now configured to the proxies as their source and the properties of the clips will detail this accordingly.

In case the menu option does not show the cross in front, the proxies of the selected clips are deactivated. Then the original materials will be used for the respective bin clips and their representations in the timeline. The properties of the clips will detail this accordingly.



You can also use the menu options ***Activate all proxies*** or ***Deactivate all proxies*** on the ***Bin*** menu to activate or deactivate all proxies in the bin in one step (see section "Activate all proxies" on page 9-22 and section "Deactivate all proxies" on page 9-23).

Deleting Proxies

Once you are finished with your editing work using the proxies, you may want to dispose of them, i.e. delete them from the main storage:

- In the contents area of the bin select the clips whose proxies you want to delete (see section “Selecting Clips” on page 4-18).
- Next call up the context menu on one of the selected clips and choose the menu option ***Delete proxy***.



In case you want to delete all proxies available for the current project in a single step, you can use the menu option ***Delete all proxies*** on the ***Bin*** menu (see section “Delete all proxies” on page 9-22).

The proxies of the selected clips will be deleted immediately from the storage and, if applicable, the bin clips will be configured back to their original source materials.

4.3 Effects

The tab **Effects** of the tool area provides access to all effects delivered with the DVS software. After starting the software the bin is by default activated in the tool area. Once you select the tab **Effects** in the tool area, the area will look similar to the following:

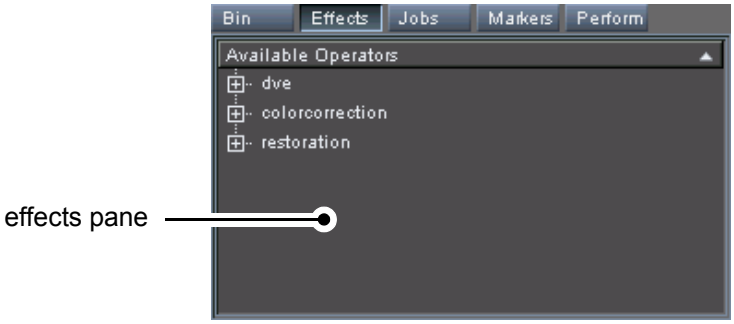


Figure 4-15: Available effects in the tool area

The effects pane offers you the available effects operators in a tree structure. Either by double-clicking an entry with the mouse or by clicking on the plus (+) or minus (-) sign in front you can expand or collapse the contents sorted under this entry. As soon as the individual effects operators are visible, you can start using them on clips in the timeline.

The individual effects operators provide you with additional editing features for your video processing tasks. Depending on the configuration of the DVS system and the optional features installed, there may be numerous operators available that enhance the editing functionality.

This section explains how to administer the effects available in the effects pane, i.e. how to create and apply preset effects.

Further information about effects in general as well as individual effects operators and their controls can be found in chapter “Timeline Element Properties” on page 7-1.

4.3.1 Adding Effects to the Timeline

The effects operators available in the effects pane can be applied to clips in the timeline easily. You simply have to add them to the effects

list of the respective clip which is a part of its timeline element properties.



Information about how to add a clip to the timeline can be found in section "Adding Clips to the Timeline" on page 6-2.

You can call up the properties of a timeline element with a double-click of the mouse on the respective element in the timeline, or by selecting the menu option ***Show properties*** on the element's context menu. Further information about this can be found in section "Accessing the Timeline Element Properties" on page 7-2.

Once at least one video clip is available in the timeline, it can receive an effect from the effects pane of the tool area. This is in detail described in section "Adding Effects" on page 7-11.

4.3.2 Creating Preset Effects

To apply the same effect settings of one clip to another the adjusted effect's settings in the timeline element properties can be created as an independent effect easily. For this perform the following in advance:

- If not already available in the timeline element properties, apply the respective effect to a clip in the timeline as described in section "Adding Effects" on page 7-11.
- Adjust the settings of this effect according to your needs in the settings pane of the timeline element properties.

All changes to the effects operator are immediately applied to the selected clip in the timeline. Further information about the settings items and possibilities of each effects operator can be found in chapter "Timeline Element Properties" on page 7-1.

Then, to create preset effects three ways are available:

1. They can be created with a drag-and-drop procedure using the mouse.
2. They can be created via the keyboard and assigned to function keys.
3. They can be created with the help of the timeline element properties area.

The first two ways will be described in the following. A description how to operate with preset effects in the timeline element properties area can be found in section "General Items of the Properties Area" on page 7-3 and section "Using Preset Effects in the Properties Area" on page 7-14.

Creating Preset Effects with the Mouse

To create a preset effect with the mouse via drag and drop perform the following:

- If necessary, activate the tab **Effects** in the tool area of the Edit Tool.
- Take the adjusted effect from the effects list of the timeline element properties and drag and drop it back to the effects pane in the tool area. The effect can be dropped anywhere you like in the effects pane:

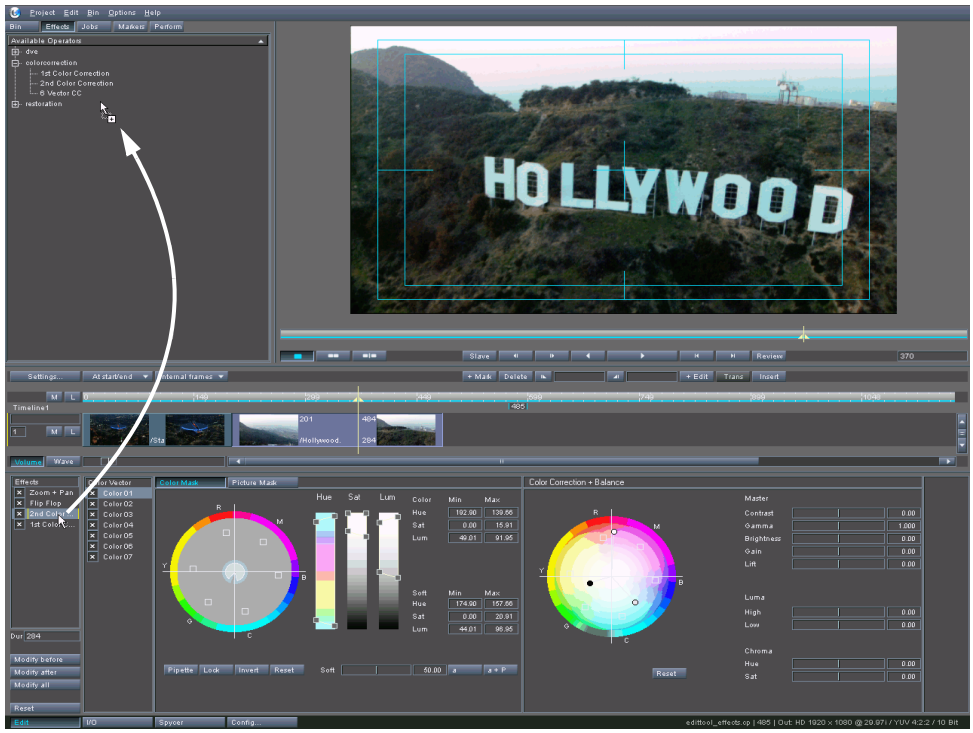


Figure 4-16: Drag and drop to create a preset effect

This will create a 'subeffect' under the respective effects operator in the effects pane. By performing the above said repeatedly you can create as many preset effects as you need.

Once dragged to the effects pane, the preset effect can be named to your liking easily (see section “Administration of Preset Effects” on page 4-29) and/or used immediately for other clips in the timeline (see section “Using Preset Effects” on page 4-28).

Creating Preset Effects via the Keyboard

Preset effects can also be created via the keyboard. Then they can be used as keyboard shortcuts to apply the respective preset effect. For this perform the following:

- Select the adjusted effect from the effects list of the timeline element properties.
- Then press the key combination [Shift + F<n>], with <n> as the number of the function key on your keyboard that you want to assign the preset effect to (i.e. keys [F1] to [F12]).

This will create a 'subeffect' under the respective effects operator in the effects pane. It will carry in its name the function key written in square brackets as the last element. By performing the above said repeatedly you can create as many preset effects for this effects operator as there are function keys available.

Once available in the effects pane, the name of the preset effect can be changed (see section "Administration of Preset Effects" on page 4-29) and/or it can be applied immediately to other clips in the timeline (see section "Using Preset Effects" on page 4-28).

The assigned function keys are valid for the selected effects operator alone, meaning you can assign the same function key(s) to different effects operators. For example, you can assign the [F2] key to a primary color correction as well as to a zoom-and-pan effect, each providing the correct effect settings for this respective effects operator when applied to a clip.

The assignment of function keys for preset effects can also be adjusted manually: The function key has to be stated last in the name of the preset effect in square brackets to enable it as a keyboard shortcut for a preset effect. For example, by changing a preset effect name to `<name string> [F2]` you will assign the function key [F2] to it.

4.3.3 Using Preset Effects

When preset effects are available in the effects pane of the Edit Tool, they can be applied to clips in the timeline easily:

Effect settings can also be transferred to other clips in the timeline with the help of the timeline element properties area (see section "General Items of the Properties Area" on page 7-3 and section "Using Preset Effects in the Properties Area" on page 7-14).

- A preset effect can be applied the same way as any default effect available in the effects pane of the tool area: Simply drag and drop it to the effects list of a clip's timeline element properties as described in section "Adding Effects" on page 7-11.

The predefined settings of this effect will be applied to the clip's timeline element properties right away.

You can also use the preset effects to alter settings of an effects operator already applied to a clip:

- Select the effects operator from the effects list of the timeline element properties so that its settings are visible in the settings pane to the right.
- After this drag and drop the preset effect into the settings pane.



In case the preset effect has been assigned a keyboard shortcut (see section "Creating Preset Effects via the Keyboard" on page 4-27), you may also press the function key of the respective preset effect to apply it.

By pressing an unassigned function key you can call up a list of all available preset effects for this effects operator. Then you can use it to select one of the preset effects and apply it (same as ***Load Preset***, see section "Using Preset Effects in the Properties Area" on page 7-14).

The predefined settings of the preset effect will be set for the already applied effects operator.



The settings will only be adjusted if the preset effect is of the same type as the effect selected from the effects list of the timeline element properties.

4.3.4 Administration of Preset Effects

To facilitate your work with preset effects they can be administered in several ways. For example, they can be renamed or deleted as well as saved or loaded. This section explains the various possibilities to administer preset effects.

Most of these tasks require the usage of the context menu of an effect in the effects pane (usually invoked with a right-click of the mouse):

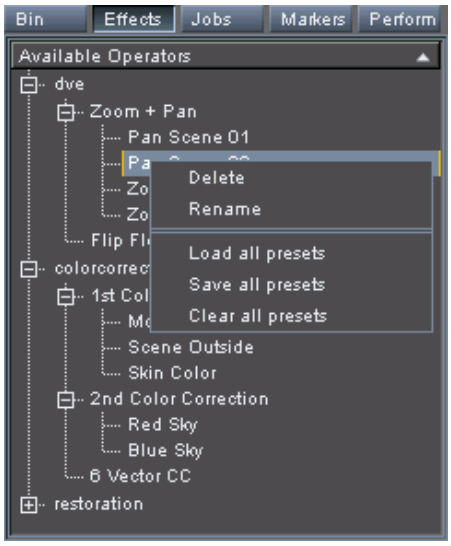


Figure 4-17: The context menu of the effects pane

Renaming Preset Effects

To rename a preset effect and thus to give it a different name once it was created in the effects pane perform the following:

- Call up the context menu on the respective preset effect and select the menu option ***Rename***.

Alternatively you may click on a preset effect a second time with the mouse.

After this you can change the name of the effect:

- Enter the new name of the preset effect via the keyboard and confirm it with the [Enter] key.

Then the selected effect will be given the new name.

By renaming preset effects you can also assign function keys as keyboard shortcuts to them. For further information about the appropriate naming conventions see section "Creating Preset Effects via the Keyboard" on page 4-27.

Deleting Preset Effects

Preset effects can be deleted either individually or all in one step.

To delete an individual preset effect perform the following:

- Call up the context menu on the preset effect that you want to delete and select the menu option ***Delete***.

This will delete the respective preset effect where the context menu was invoked.

To delete all preset effects from the effects pane in one step perform the following:

- Call up the context menu on an entry in the effects pane and select the menu option ***Clear all presets***.

After this a warning message will appear on the screen.

- If you want to delete all preset effects from the effects pane, confirm the warning message.

This will delete all preset effects from the effects pane.

Saving All Preset Effects

You can save the contents of the effects pane, i.e. all preset effects, to a file:

- Call up the context menu on an entry in the effects pane and select the menu option ***Save all presets***.
- In the opening dialog window specify a storage path and file name for the effects file to be saved and confirm your entries with the button **SAVE**.

File extension:	*.xml	Effects file

This will save the preset effects to the specified file. By performing the above detailed procedure several times you can build up a library of different effects settings that can be loaded again later and thereby added to any project you want.

Loading All Preset Effects

Already saved preset effects can be loaded at any time into the Edit Tool again. With this you can add the presets available in the file to your current content of the effects pane.



Preset effects can be loaded from various sources: You can use a specially created preset effects file (see section “Saving All Preset Effects” on page 4-31), a standard project file or its derivatives (autosave or backup files, see section “Save” on page 9-6).

To load preset effects perform the following:

- Call up the context menu on an entry in the effects pane and select the menu option ***Load all presets***.

This will open the standard dialog window for the selection of a file.

- In the dialog window select the file that contains the desired settings from the list box or enter its name in the respective entry field.

File extensions:	*.xml	Effects file
	*.cp	Project file
	*.cp.autosave	Automatically saved intermediate situation
	*.backup.cp	Backup file of old project file

- Once the appropriate file is selected, confirm your choice with the button **OPEN**.

The preset effects available in the file will now be added to the effects pane: In case the effects pane already contains preset effects, they are not deleted but will remain there, while the new preset effects will be added.

Sorting Default and Preset Effects

The default effects as well as preset effects can be sorted. You can sort them in descending or ascending order. If your project contains a lot of preset effects, this may make it easier for you to find an individual effect. To sort the effects do the following:

- Simply click on the title bar **Available Operators** above the effects pane with the mouse.

This switches between a descending and ascending order of the effects tree as well as of all effects visible in the effects pane.

4.4 Jobs

The tab **Jobs** details information about the status of render operations that have been initialized in the DVS software. On this tab you can find, for example, information about the progress of prerenderings or proxy generations. For each triggered job one entry will be displayed:

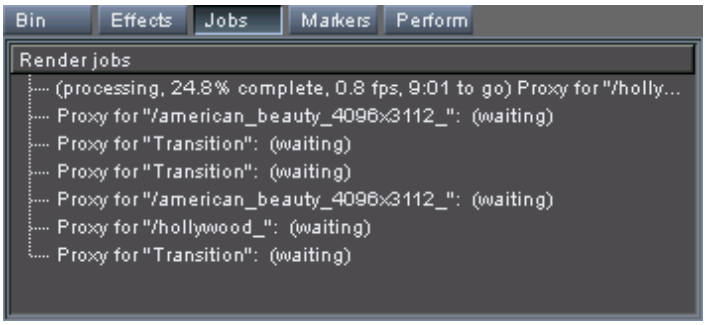


Figure 4-18: Jobs in progress

Whenever possible, the render jobs will be performed in the background of the system, i.e. during their creation you can continue to work in the timeline of the Edit Tool as usual. In case of several render jobs, they will be processed one at a time in the order indicated. Once the render operations are finished, their entries will disappear from the list of the **Jobs** tab.

For further information about renderings in general see section "Working in Real Time" on page 2-11 or section "Finalizing the Timeline" on page 6-80.

The corresponding clip and processed image will be displayed in the video overlay when selecting from the list the job that is currently under processing.

When entries are displayed in the list on the tab **Jobs**, you can cancel the respective job and thus delete its created files. For this call up the context menu on the job entry that you want to abort. It offers you the following:

Delete	Cancels the selected render job where the context menu was called and deletes already rendered files.
Delete all	Cancels all render jobs listed on the tab **Jobs** in a single step. Already rendered files will be deleted as well.

4.5 The Marker Table

In the timeline of the Edit Tool you can place markers at certain positions, e.g. as a reminder to cut the clip at this position at a later stage or other reasons. These markers can be placed either manually in the timeline of the Edit Tool or automatically.

Additional information about markers and their placing can be found in section "Marking Positions in the Timeline" on page 6-52 as well as in section "The Drop Table" on page 4-42.

Once markers are positioned in the timeline, the tab **Markers** of the tool area provides further information about them. After its selection and when markers are available in the timeline, the area will look similar to the following:

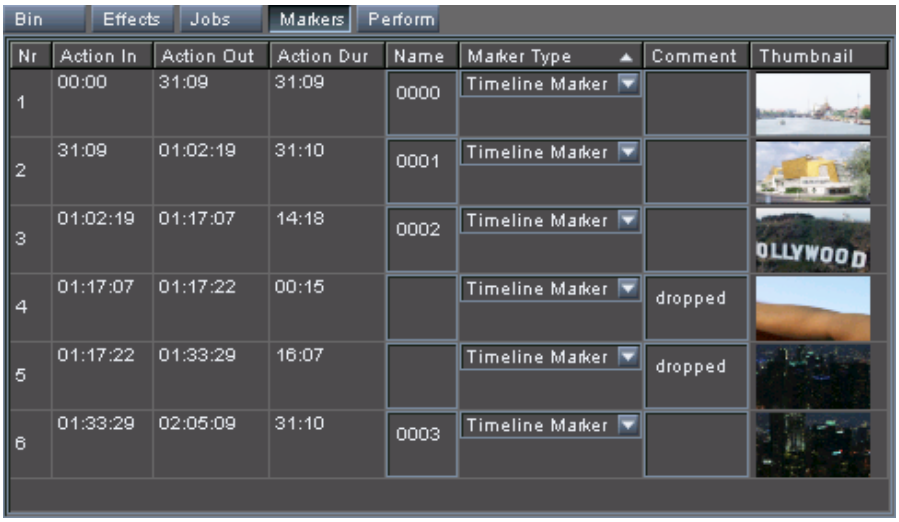


Figure 4-19: List of timeline markers in the tool area

The tab **Markers** provides in a table a list of all timeline markers that are currently available in the timeline of the Edit Tool. The individual entries show the positions of the markers in the timeline and provide further details if available:

Column	Description
Nr	Number of the marker in the timeline.
Action In	Shows the actual position of the marker or, in terms of a timeline stretch indicated by the marker, its 'Action Inpoint'. It is displayed either in timecode or in frames notation, depending on the selected notation for the Edit Tool (see section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17).

Column	Description
Action Out	Shows the end of the timeline stretch indicated by the marker (see 'Action In').
Action Dur	Shows the duration of the timeline stretch indicated by the marker (see 'Action In').
Name	In the fields of this column you can enter a customized name for the marker. The number of characters is not limited and all characters are allowed.
Marker Type	Indicates the type of the marker. Further information about the available types can be found in section "Marking Positions in the Timeline" on page 6-52.
Comment	Same as the column 'Name' but used for comments about this marker. For some markers comment entries will be automatically generated by the Edit Tool. However, they can be easily changed and adapted afterwards.
Thumbnail	This column shows a preview of the frame where the marker is positioned in the timeline as a thumbnail. The thumbnail view can be configured via the Configuration Tool (group ***Markers***, see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide).

When selecting an entry from the list with a double click of the mouse, the timeline cursor will jump to the respective timeline marker on the timeline.

The entries in the table can be sorted in descending or ascending order. For this simply click on the respective column heading with the mouse that you want to sort the list by (most columns offer this feature, but some (e.g. 'Thumbnail') cannot be used for a sorting). This switches between an ascending and descending order of the entries in the respective column. The type of order will be indicated by a triangle to the right of the column heading.

4.6 The Performance Monitor

With the performance monitor of the DVS software you can monitor the workload of the DVS system during a real-time operation. Thus you can verify, for example, the status of the hard disks of the storage as well as of certain files.

After starting the DVS software and thus the Edit Tool the bin is by default activated in the tool area. As soon as you select the tab **Perform** in the tool area, the area will look similar to the following figure:

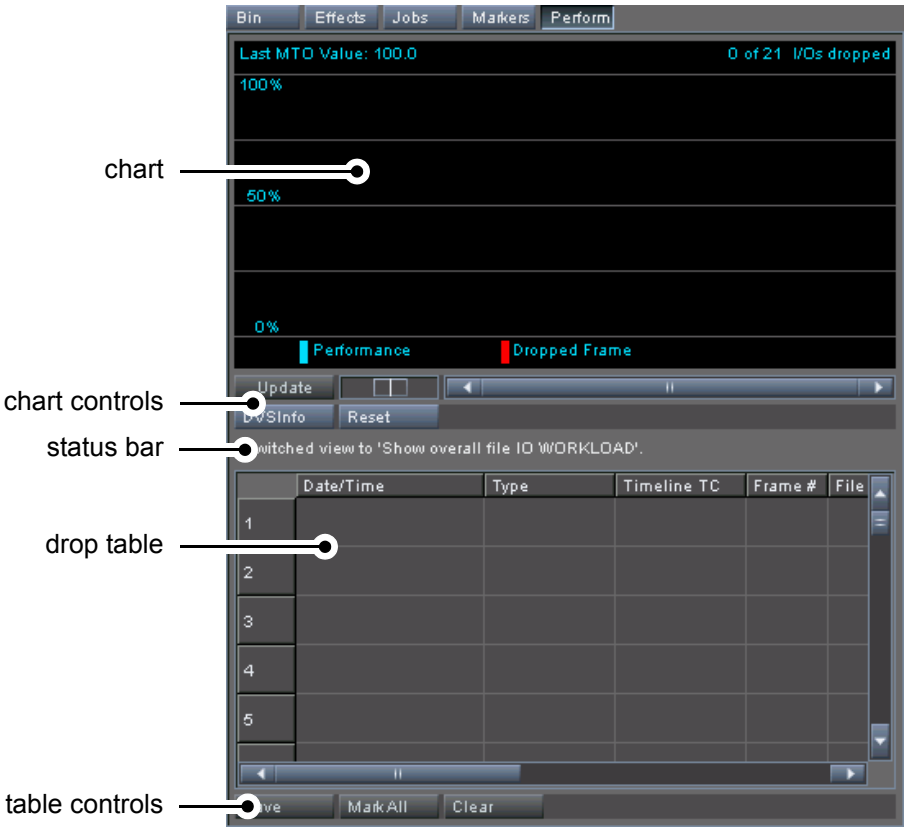


Figure 4-20: The performance monitor

The performance monitor provides you with detailed information about dropped frames (frames that the DVS system could not load or write in time during a real-time operation). Via the table below you can get information about the location where the drop took place.

For this the performance monitor provides the following items:

chart — The chart offers you a graphical interpretation of the measured workload of the system. During a play-out or record operation the processing workload will be shown via bars in the chart. It is in detail explained in section “The Chart” on page 4-38.

chart controls	With the chart controls you can control the appearance of the results in the chart or create a proprietary DVS information file. They are explained in section "Chart Controls" on page 4-40.
status bar	Right below the chart controls you can find a status bar which will provide you with status messages about the operation of the performance monitor. It is described in section "The Status Bar" on page 4-41.
drop table	As soon as drops occur during a real-time operation, entries will appear in the drop table, one for each drop that could be detected. The entries provide information, for example, about the date and time when the drop occurred or about the file that was the cause for this drop. You can find a description of the drop table in section "The Drop Table" on page 4-42.
table controls	Via the table controls you can either save the results shown in the drop table to a file or set markers in the timeline of the Edit Tool where the respective drop took place. They are in detail explained in section "The Table Controls" on page 4-43.

If the chart controls, the drop table as well as the table controls are dimmed, the performance monitor is turned off. Then, in the status bar the message 'Performance Monitor disabled' will be displayed. To measure the workload of the system with the performance monitor it has to be enabled via the Configuration Tool of the DVS software (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more information).



The DVS software is able to process several different image files simultaneously (multi-threaded I/O mode). Therefore, one bar drawn in the chart may represent several file accesses.

Although the multi-threaded I/O mode is the recommended mode for the DVS software, it can be set to a single-threaded I/O mode via a setting available in the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide).

As soon as the software is started, the performance monitor will write by default a drop report into the subdirectory *drop_reports* under the directory *log* available in the DVS software's installation path (default: *C:\Program Files\DVS\Clipster*). There will be one report written per session. However, it will inform you about drops that occurred during this session only when the performance monitor is enabled. Then the report contains information about, for example, the date and time when the drop occurred or about the file that was the

cause for this drop. If the performance monitor is disabled, the log file will be written but provide no information about drops that occurred.

Drops are reported by the real-time core of the DVS software. In some cases it may not be able to provide information about the file name and/or path.

Only the last ten reports will be stored.

Individual frames missing in an image sequence (clip), i.e. image files that are not present on the storage at all, are not registered as drops. You can check the consistency of your material added to the bin with the menu option ***Check Bin*** on the ***Bin*** menu (see section "Check Bin" on page 9-19 and section "Consistencies of Clips" on page 6-63).

You can retrieve the location of files where drops occurred also by setting timeline markers with the help of the drop table or its controls (see section "The Drop Table" on page 4-42 and section "The Table Controls" on page 4-43).

This section explains the basic usage and the items of the performance monitor.

4.6.1 The Chart

The chart of the performance monitor provides a graphical representation of the measured performance of the system. During play-out or record operations the performance will be displayed via bars in the chart.

The DVS software can operate in two different I/O modes: It can process several image files simultaneously (multi-threaded I/O mode) or one file at a time (single-threaded I/O mode).

Although the multi-threaded I/O mode is the recommended mode for the DVS software because it is more flexible and faster, it can be set to a single-threaded I/O mode via a setting available in the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more information).

The performance monitor can be switched between two measurings for the performance of the system:

- *Overall file I/O workload*
  With this setting the performance monitor measures the overall workload of the system that occurred during a timed interval.
- *Individual file I/O duration*
  This measuring is especially useful when operating in a single-threaded I/O mode. Then the performance monitor displays the access times of single files.

You can switch between the two measurings with a setting available in the Configuration Tool (see “CLIPSTER Configurations” user guide). They and their effect on the drawn charts will be explained in the following.

Missing frames on the storage are not registered by the performance monitor as drops.

The Chart in 'Overall File I/O Workload'

If the performance monitor is set to the 'overall file I/O workload' setting, the chart indicates the overall workload of the system during a timed interval (40 ms).

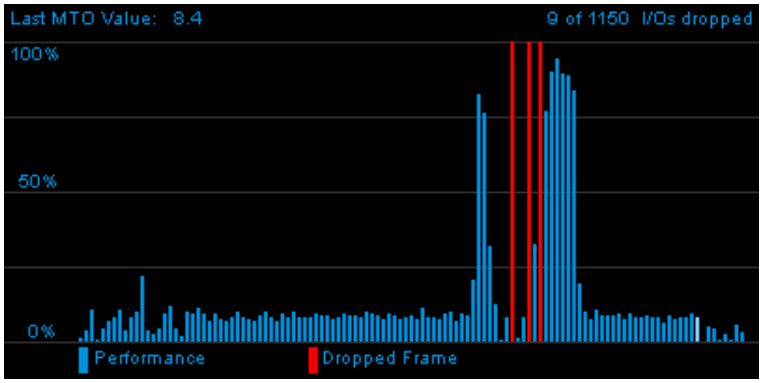


Figure 4-21: Chart of performance monitor (overall file I/O workload)

With this setting you can find at the top left of the chart the value of the last multi-threaded operation. It details in certain intervals during operation the workload of all threads in percent, i.e. the value of one bar in the chart.

At the top right of the chart you can find an indication about how many frames were processed total and how many drops occurred during this time.

When operating, the system's workload is displayed via blue bars in the chart. The bars may well reach the 100 % line during an operation which does not necessarily mean that a drop may occur soon. It simply shows that all threads of the software were processing continuously at that point of time and that no thread was idle. Drops exceed the workload of the system shown in the chart. They are displayed as bars in red that are cut at the top.

The Chart in 'Individual File I/O Duration'

If the performance monitor is set to the 'individual file I/O duration' setting, the chart of the performance monitor shows the access times of single files, which is especially useful when the system is operating in

the single-threaded I/O mode. If used in the multi-threaded I/O mode, the drawn access times to a single file (one bar) may be longer because several files were read/written at the same time.

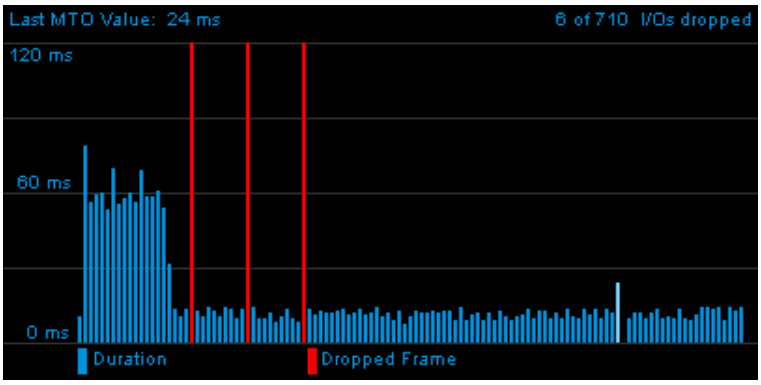


Figure 4-22: Chart of performance monitor (individual file I/O duration)

At the top left of the chart you can find the last measured access time. It details in certain intervals during operation the measured access time in milliseconds, i.e. the value of one bar in the chart.

At the top right of the chart you can find an indication about how many frames were processed total and how many drops occurred during this time.

When operating, the access times are displayed via blue bars in the chart. If bars reach the top line during an operation, it may indicate difficulties during the loading of particular files. However, clips of a higher resolution usually require more time to access, especially when transitions are applied to the timeline. Then, high bars do not necessarily mean that a drop may occur soon. Drops are detected by the real-time core of the DVS system and they will be displayed as bars in red that are cut at the top.

4.6.2 Chart Controls

With the chart controls you can control the appearance of the chart or create a proprietary DVS information file.

The chart controls provide the following items:

If the controls appear dimmed, the performance monitor is disabled. To use it you have to enable it first. This can be done with the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more information).

Update — Currently this button provides no functionality.



The slider to the right of the **UPDATE** button determines the viewing resolution of the chart. When pulled to the left, you will receive a higher resolution: The bars displayed in the chart will get thinner and more bars will be displayed in the chart. When pulled to the right, the bars will get thicker and fewer bars will be visible.



In case of problems with your DVS system you may get asked by the DVS service department to create and generate log files. Then you may use the button **DVSINFO** to store the most important information in one file (in ASCII format). The file name of the log file will be `requested_dvsinfo_<system time>.txt`, with the `<system time>` added in the format `yyyy-mm-dd_hh-mm-ss`. It will be stored in the subfolder *`dvsinfo`* in the *`log`* directory under the DVS software's installation path (default: *`C:\Program Files\DVS\Clipster\log\dvsinfo`*).

When exiting the DVS software, a DVS information file (without `requested_` in front of the file name) is by default written to the stated location.

Only the last ten DVS information files will be stored. If necessary, the oldest log file will be deleted.



The button **RESET** enables you to set the indication about how many frames were processed total and how many drops occurred during this time at the top right side of the chart back to zero. Afterwards you may start a new evaluation of the real-time performance of the DVS software which in turn may report new drops in the table.

This button does not reset the drop table of the performance monitor. For this you have to use the button **CLEAR** of the table controls (see section "The Table Controls" on page 4-43).

4.6.3 The Status Bar

Right below the chart controls you can find the status bar which will provide you with status messages about the operation of the performance monitor.

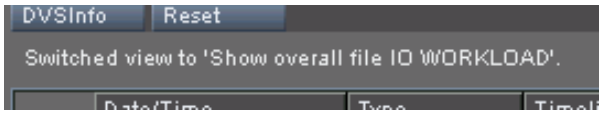


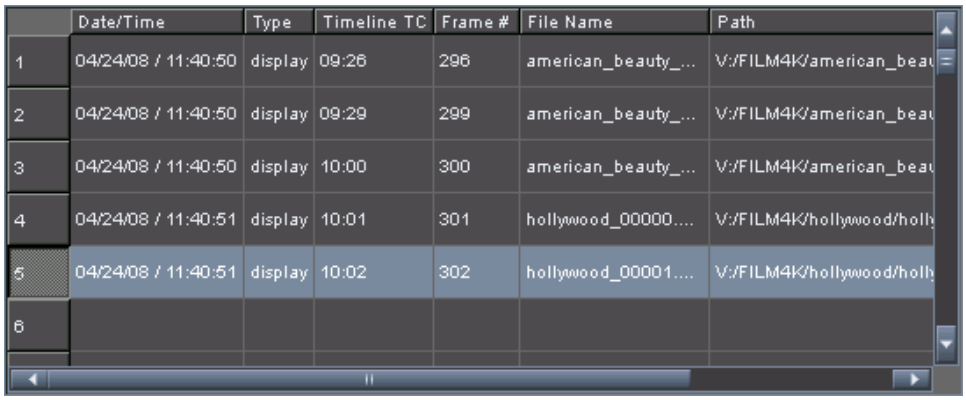
Figure 4-23: Status message in the status bar

The messages in the status bar inform you, for instance, about whether the performance monitor is enabled and ready to measure the workload.

4.6.4 The Drop Table

As soon as drops occur during your real-time operation, entries will appear in the drop table, one for each drop that could be detected.

If the drop table is unavailable (dimmed), the performance monitor is disabled. To use it you have to enable it first. This can be done with the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide).



	Date/Time	Type	Timeline TC	Frame #	File Name	Path
1	04/24/08 / 11:40:50	display	09:26	296	american_beauty_...	V:/FILM4K/american_beau
2	04/24/08 / 11:40:50	display	09:29	299	american_beauty_...	V:/FILM4K/american_beau
3	04/24/08 / 11:40:50	display	10:00	300	american_beauty_...	V:/FILM4K/american_beau
4	04/24/08 / 11:40:51	display	10:01	301	hollywood_00000....	V:/FILM4K/hollywood/holl
5	04/24/08 / 11:40:51	display	10:02	302	hollywood_00001....	V:/FILM4K/hollywood/holl
6						

Figure 4-24: Drop table of performance monitor

The entries provide information, for example, about the date and time when the drop occurred or, if detected as well, about the file that was the cause for this drop.

Drops are reported by the real-time core of the DVS software. In some cases it may not be able to provide information about the file name and/or path.

You can retrieve further information about the location where the drop occurred by double-clicking an entry in the drop table. Then the timeline cursor will jump to the approximate location where the drop happened and a timeline marker will be placed at this position in the timeline.

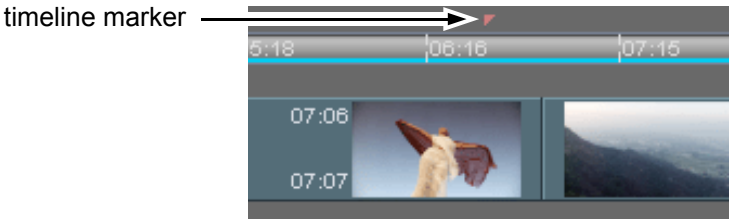


Figure 4-25: Timeline marker in timeline

Additional information about timeline markers can be found in section “Marking Positions in the Timeline” on page 6-52 and section “The Marker Table” on page 4-34.

Furthermore, with the controls below the table you can, for example, save the results shown in the drop table to a file (see section “The Table Controls” on page 4-43).

4.6.5 The Table Controls

With the table controls below the drop table you can, for example, save the results written in the drop table to a file or set markers in the timeline of the Edit Tool where drops occurred.

Additional information about timeline markers can be found in section “Marking Positions in the Timeline” on page 6-52 and section “The Marker Table” on page 4-34.

The following controls are available:

Save

This button saves the entries in the drop table to a file. Enter in the opening dialog window a storage path and file name for the drop table list to be saved. Then confirm your settings with the button **SAVE** and the table will be saved to the specified location.

Compared to the drop report saved by default by the performance monitor, this button only saves the entries currently available in the drop table (see section “The Performance Monitor” on page 4-36).

Mark All

As soon as the real-time operation is finished and when drops have occurred, the button **MARK ALL** will be available. With it you can retrieve further information about the locations where drops occurred. It places timeline markers in the timeline of the Edit Tool for each entry available in the drop table.

Once the placing of the markers is finished, this button shows the labeling **UNMARK ALL**. Then you can remove with it all timeline markers from the timeline in one step.

The **MARK ALL** button will not be available in the I/O Tool because this module provides no timeline where markers can be set.



The **CLEAR** button deletes all entries displayed in the drop table. Afterwards you may start a new real-time operation which in turn may report new drops in the table. This button will be available as soon as drops are displayed in the drop table and the real-time operation is finished.

4.6.6 Using the Performance Monitor

The performance monitor monitors the hard disk accesses of the DVS software to the video data. With it you can verify, for example, the status of the hard disks of the storage array as well as of certain files on the array.

Individual frames missing in an image sequence (clip), i.e. image files that are not present on the storage at all, are not registered as drops. You can check the consistency of your material added to the bin with the menu option ***Check Bin*** on the ***Bin*** menu (see section "Check Bin" on page 9-19 and section "Consistencies of Clips" on page 6-63).

This section will explain shortly how to use the performance monitor: First, it will be described how to prepare the monitor and the DVS software for the measuring of the system's workload. After that follows a description of how to perform the actual test with a play-out operation.

Although the following describes how to use the performance monitor during a play-out of video data, it can also be used during a record operation. Then it will measure the workload when writing files to the storage instead of reading them. A record can be performed with the I/O Tool (for further information see the "CLIPSTER I/O Tool" user guide).

Preparing the Software and the Performance Monitor

This section explains how to prepare the DVS software as well as the performance monitor for the measuring of the system's workload during a play-out operation.

After starting the software and thus the Edit Tool the bin is by default activated in the tool area. Then perform the following:

- Add at least one clip to the bin of the Edit Tool.
- Afterwards take this clip and add it to a video track of the timeline (see section “Adding Clips to the Timeline” on page 6-2).

For our example described here you may also set transitions and/or apply effects to the clip(s) in the timeline as long as they are not a subject to a prerendering (see section “Prerendering of Timeline Elements” on page 6-46).

- Then select the tab **Perform** in the tool area of the DVS software.

The tool area switches to the performance tool of the DVS software:

If the controls of the performance monitor appear dimmed, the performance monitor is disabled. To use it you have to enable it first. This can be done with the Configuration Tool (see “CLIPSTER Configurations” user guide for more information).

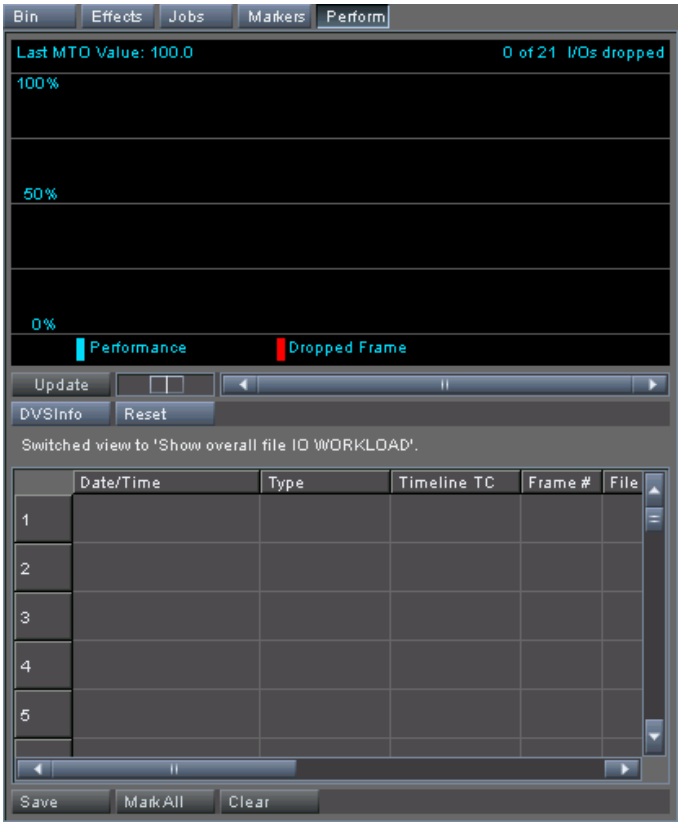


Figure 4-26: The performance monitor

After this the performance monitor is ready to assess the performance (workload).

Measuring the Performance

Once the performance monitor and the software are prepared as described in section “Preparing the Software and the Performance Monitor” on page 4-44, you can begin the assessment of the workload:

- Start the play-out operation of the material added to the timeline with the play button available in the control area of the Edit Tool (see section “Controls” on page 5-11).

This will start the play-out of the video material added to the timeline and as soon as the play-out starts, the performance monitor will start its monitoring of the performance as well:

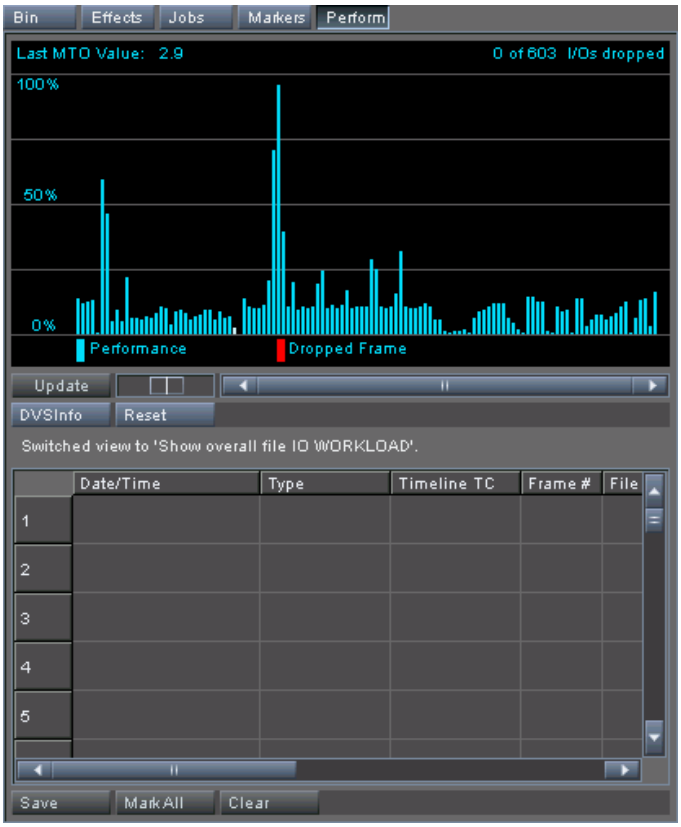


Figure 4-27: Healthy performance

Because the DVS system is capable of handling even high-resolution material in real time, you usually will not encounter any problem: The performance bars will always appear in blue and no drops should occur. The DVS software is able to process several different image files simultaneously (multi-threaded I/O mode) and one bar shown in the chart may represent several file accesses. Thus the bars may well reach the 100 % line during an operation which does not pose a problem to the real-time operation. It simply shows that all threads of the software are currently processing and no thread is idle.

If drops occur, they will be entered in the drop table of the performance monitor and red bars will appear in the chart. Then please proceed as follows:

- Check the position of the drops on the video timeline by double-clicking entries individually or by selecting the **MARK ALL** button of the table controls.
- Afterwards perform the play-out operation and the checking of the drop positions again.
- Then compare the results and confront them with the following table:

Marker Position	Timeline Element	Probable Cause	Solution
At certain position(s)	On video clip(s) or transitions	Material at certain frames faulty	Check the material on the storage and replace the faulty files. After this the problem should be resolved.
At random	Within certain video clips	The material has a resolution that is too high	Finalize the timeline to a format that can be handled in real time (see section "Finalizing the Timeline" on page 6-80). After this the problem should be resolved.
		The storage location is not real-time capable	Move the material to a real-time capable storage.
		The storage location where the material is stored is too full	It is recommended to use only 85 % of the overall storage capacity. If the storage is too full, delete some of the data.
	On transition(s)	Timeline material has a resolution that is too high for two simultaneous video streams	If the respective transitions are displayed in the timeline without a prerendering indication, reduce the value that indicates when a timeline element has to be prerendered (see Configuration Tool in the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide). Then prerender the transitions (see section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46). After this the problem should be resolved.

Marker Position	Timeline Element	Probable Cause	Solution
	Throughout the timeline	The storage location(s) is(are) not real-time capable	Move the material to a real-time capable storage.
		The storage location(s) where the material is stored is(are) too full	It is recommended to use only 85 % of the overall storage capacity. If the storage(s) is(are) too full, delete some of the data.
		Configurations of the system have been altered so that it is no longer capable of real-time operations	Contact the DVS service department.
		One or more hard disks of the storage array may be damaged	Replace the defective disk(s) as described in the hardware guide of the DVS system.

If drops occur during a record operation with the DVS system, one or more hard disks of the storage array may be damaged. In this case replace the defective disk(s) as described in the hardware guide.

After applying the recommended solution the problem should be resolved. However, if the drops persist, please contact the DVS service department.

The Control Area



To the right of the tool area you can find the control area of the Edit Tool. This area is used to pre- and review your current project and set frame accurately the in- and outpoint of clips, either coming from the bin or already present in the timeline.

After starting the program the control area of the Edit Tool is in its edit mode:

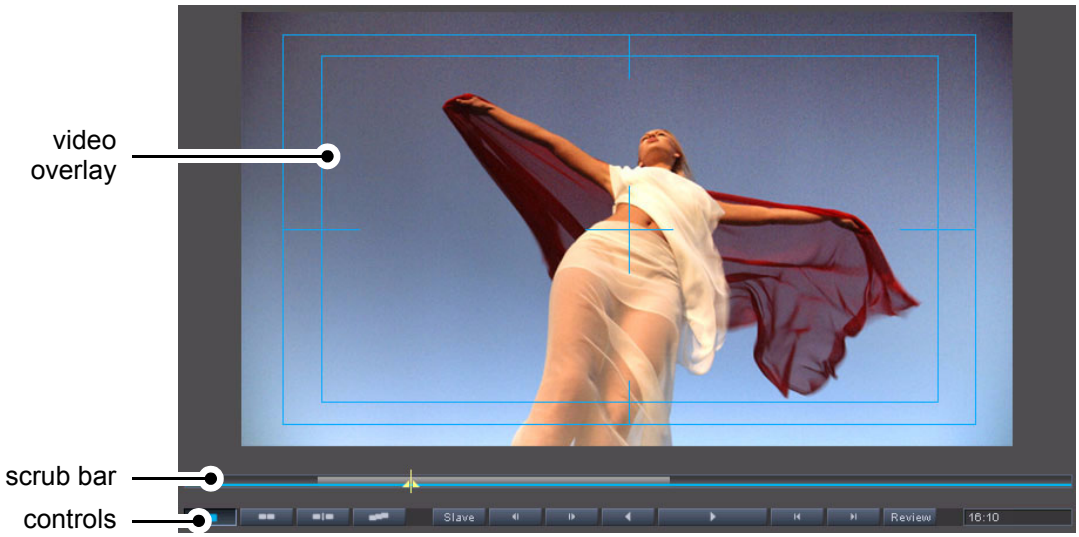


Figure 5-1: The control area

With the control area in the edit mode you can see at its top the video overlay which is used to view the video material. Below the video overlay a scrub bar of the timeline is available. At the bottom of the control area the controls to play out and move within your current project are located. Here you can also find the buttons to switch between the different modes of the control area as well as other important buttons. All items of the control area are described in detail in the following sections.

5.1 The Video Overlay

With the video overlay you can view the material present in the timeline. All clips and added operators to the timeline – as long as they do not require prerendering – can be viewed in real time. While working, the video overlay will always adjust to your moves on the timeline. This provides a total control for your work and you can immediately monitor your progress.

The video overlay will adapt its layout (aspect ratio) to the currently set video output raster of the timeline. Due to the fact that the output raster may have an effect on the video material of the timeline, you can use the video overlay to see its output effect immediately. For example, clips of different sizes in the video track(s) of the timeline may get cropped, stretched or compressed, or scaled according to your settings for the respective clips and your output settings. All these effects can be viewed instantaneously via the video overlay. Further information about how to set the video output raster can be found in section "Configuring the Video and Audio Output" on page 6-12.

This section describes the possibilities of the video overlay in detail.

5.1.1 Configuring the Video Overlay

The video overlay can be configured to your liking. You can adjust the safety areas as well as the size of the overlay.

The video overlay provides action safety and title safety areas that can be turned off or adjusted to your personal needs. You can set the color as well as the sizes of these areas.

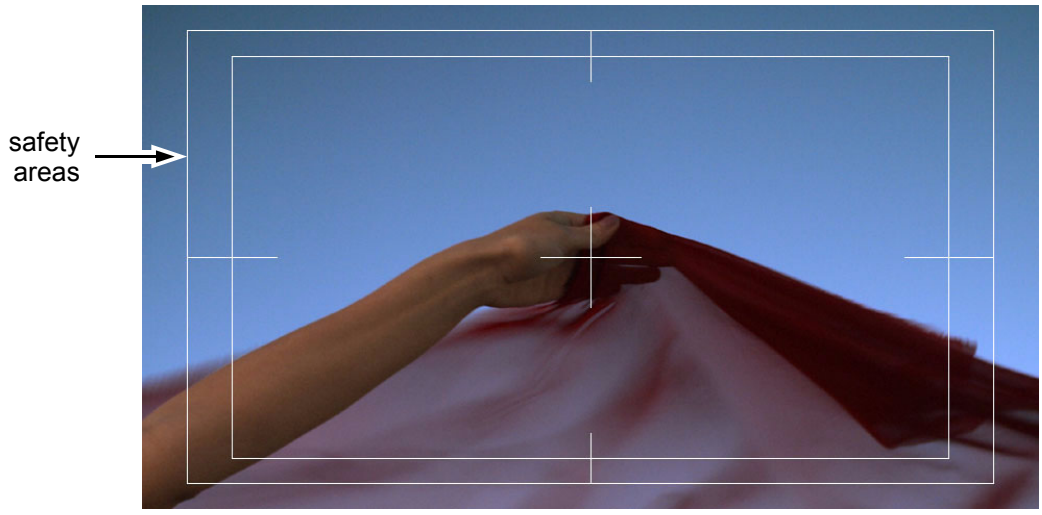


Figure 5-2: The video overlay

This can be done with the Configuration Tool. Please refer to the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for further information.

Furthermore, you can adjust the size of the video overlay with the edges of the control area at its very bottom and to the left. Simply enlarge or reduce the area by dragging the edges (see section "Changing the Size of the Tool Area" on page 4-2).

5.1.2 The Video Scopes

To monitor color corrections and to make sure that the images comply with broadcast standards, the video overlay of the Edit Tool provides video scopes to help you during such tasks. With them you can view the material, image for image if necessary, and assess the different color values (if needed, prior to processing as well as afterwards). The scopes can be activated via the context menu of the video overlay:

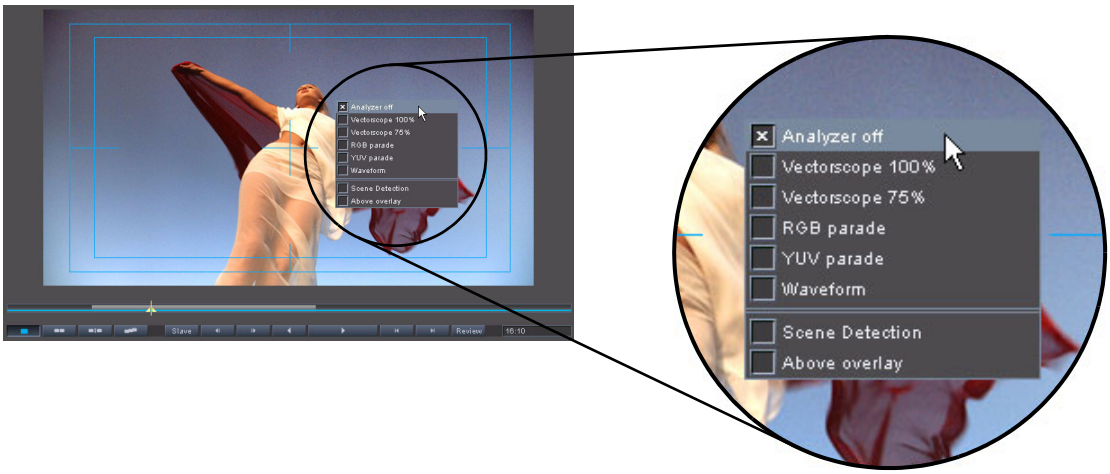


Figure 5-3: The context menu of the video overlay

The DVS software offers various scopes to choose from. Among them you can find waveform, vectorscope and parade monitors. Once one of the available video scopes is selected, the control area will change its appearance and two items will be displayed: the left one shows the selected video scope, while the right one displays the video overlay as usual.

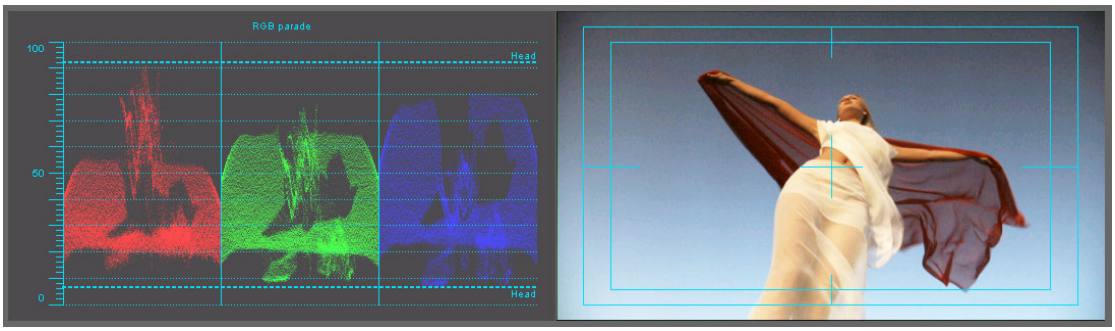


Figure 5-4: Video scope in control area

With the menu option ***Above overlay*** available on the context menu of the control area this layout can be altered. When the menu option is deactivated, the scope and the overlay are displayed separately in the control area; when activated, the selected video scope will be superimposed on the video overlay.

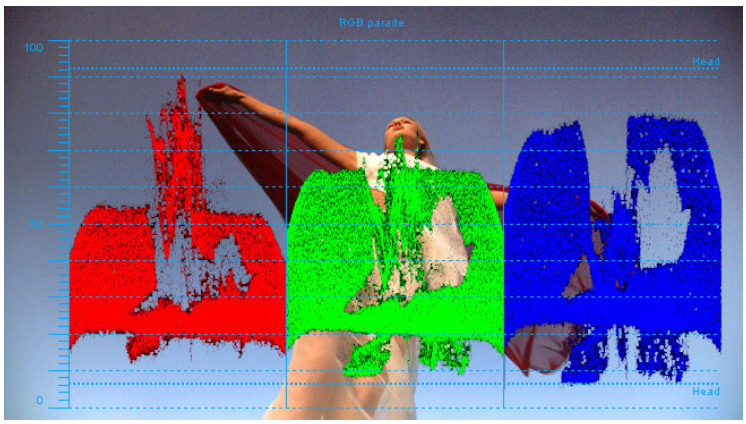


Figure 5-5: RGB parade superimposed on video overlay

Most video scopes provide in its graph an indication of the headroom. In case your project has to provide a legal broadcast signal no color component should reach into that area. When staying on the computer side and working with RGB material, the headroom may be disregarded.

Further information about color spaces, headroom and full value ranges as well as color space conversions can be found in the “CLIPSTER Configurations” user guide.

By using the menu option ***Analyzer off*** the selected video scope can be turned off again at any time.

The color of the graph, of the graph's background as well as of the drawn data (for vectorscopes and the YUV parade only) can be adapted to your needs via the Configuration Tool. Please refer to the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for further information.

The menu option ***Scene Detection*** provides an RGB parade. For further information about this video scope see section "Scene Detection" on page 6-69.

Vectorscope 100 %

The vectorscope 100 % is most suited when playing out in YUV. It displays the chroma information of an output image without its luma information, i.e. the color components U and V without Y.

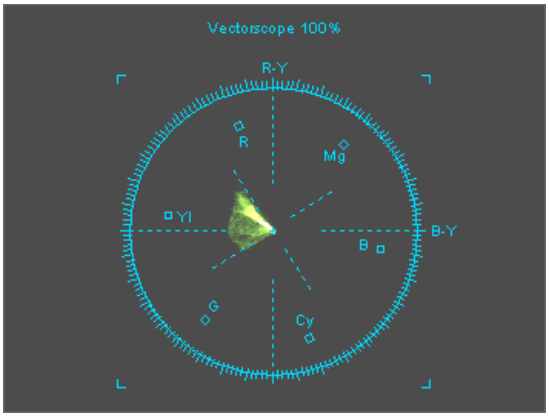


Figure 5-6: The vectorscope 100 %

This scope shows a circular graph where the center represents no chroma (color saturation zero). All white, black and grey parts of the output image are located at the center of the graph. The more the color values of an image increase, the farther away the graph's dots will be dispersed from the center. Regarding color the abbreviations 'R', 'G' and 'B' of the video scope indicate the usual primary colors red, green and blue, while 'Mg' stands for magenta, 'Cy' for cyan and 'Yl' for yellow (secondary colors).

The color distribution in a vectorscope is the same as in a color wheel, as, for example, in the secondary color correction (see section "The Operator '2nd Color Correction'" on page 7-38).

Vectorscope 75 %

The vectorscope 75 % is the same as the vectorscope 100 % (see section "Vectorscope 100 %" on page 5-5). However, to provide safe col-

ors, for example, for a legal broadcast signal, this video scope already indicates the safety area of the colors: The dotted line represents the full color values (100 %) whereas the squares show the colors with 75 % of their values.

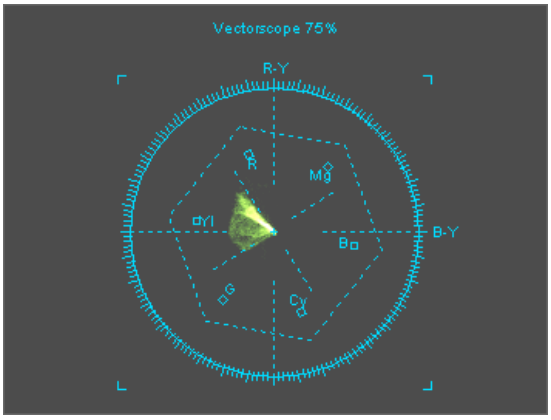


Figure 5-7: The vectorscope 75 %

The colors of the output image should be located within the area enclosed by the squares. Any point beyond them will be located inside the headroom and it may not be possible to give it out correctly during a play-out.

RGB Parade

The RGB parade displays graphically the distribution of the color components red, green and blue (RGB). Each component is displayed separately. For a parade the output image is evaluated line by line, and for each line the color distribution is drawn.

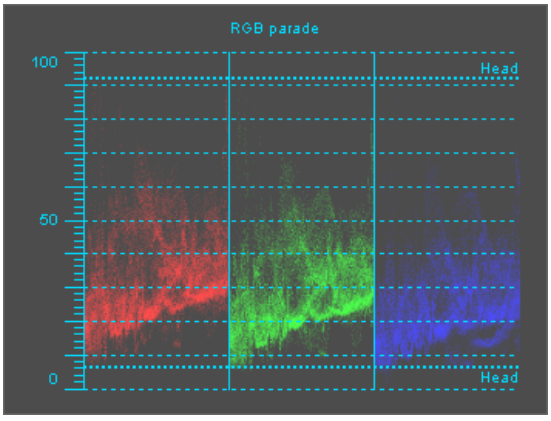


Figure 5-8: The RGB parade

White areas of an output image would appear as an accumulation of dots in all three color components near the 100 % line (minus headroom, if applicable). Black image areas would be displayed as an accu-

mulation of dots in all three color components near the 0 % line (plus headroom, if applicable). When playing out in RGB, this video scope can be used to evaluate the color distribution of the output image accurately.

YUV Parade

The YUV parade displays graphically the distribution of the components Y, U and V separately. The Y graph is shown on the left side, while the color difference signals U and V are displayed in the middle and to the right. As with the RGB parade the output image is evaluated line by line and for each line the distribution is shown.

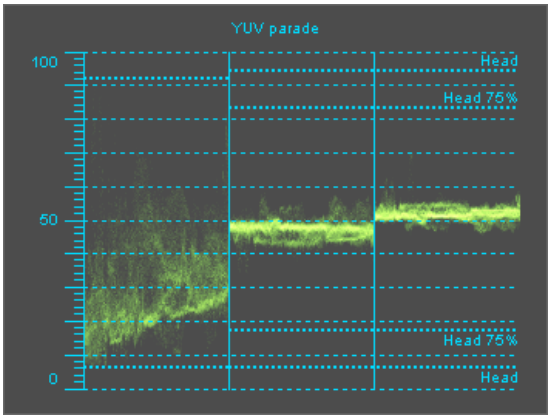


Figure 5-9: The YUV parade

However, because U and V can take on negative as well as positive values their graphs usually are distributed around a center line. It can be found in the middle of the YUV parade because in digital video an offset of 128 (for 8 bit data) is added to U and V to get rid of the negative value. In case the output image is black and white only, U and V would be zero (128) resulting in a flat line in the middle of their graphs. The more the color saturation of an output image increases, the more the two graphs would be dispersed. Values of U greater than 50 in the graph indicate positive values and blue hues, while values of less than 50 indicate yellow hues and negative values. The same applies to V with the exception that values greater 50 would indicate red hues, and values less than 50 cyan hues. Regarding the luma signal Y a value of zero indicates black, while a value of 100 represents white. Nevertheless, especially when working with YUV, a reserved headroom for all components should be observed.

Waveform

The waveform video scope is similar to the RGB parade. It displays graphically the distribution of the color components red, green, and

blue (RGB) of an output image. For this the image is evaluated line by line and for each the color distribution is displayed.

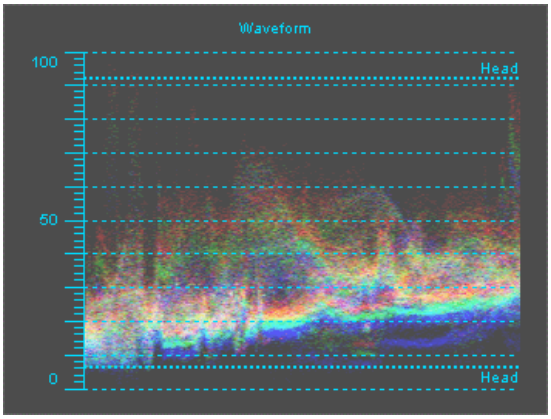


Figure 5-10: The waveform

The horizontal scale of the scope represents the image's horizontal direction, while the vertical axis shows the RGB levels. The color components are drawn in their respective colors. The more scan lines of an image provide the same color at the same horizontal location, the more saturated the color will be in the graph. In case different colors are located at the same position with the same intensity, they would be added in the graph until the respective position shows white.

5.2 The Scrub Bar of the Control Area

Below the video overlay a scrub bar of the timeline is available.

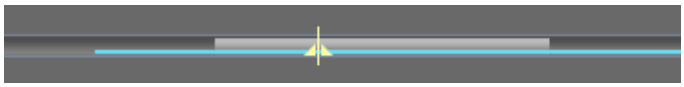


Figure 5-11: Timeline scrub bar

In contrast to the timeline of the timeline area where you can zoom in and out (see chapter "The Timeline" on page 6-1), the scrub bar of the control area always shows the complete timeline of the loaded project. You can use the scrub bar for overview purposes or to move within your project.

The scrub bar of the control area provides several features, for example, different colors indicating the state of the timeline. The following features are provided by the scrub bar:

Items of Scrub Bar	Description
in dark grey	Parts of the scrub bar displayed in dark grey indicate parts of the timeline that are not visible in the timeline area at the moment. You can change the size of this part by zooming in or out of the timeline (see section "Moving within the Timeline" on page 6-29).
in light grey	Parts in light grey show the part of the timeline that is currently visible in the timeline area. You can change the size of this part by zooming in or out of the timeline. Furthermore, by moving within the timeline you can change its position (see also section "Moving within the Timeline" on page 6-29). This part can be selected directly with the mouse and moved along the scrub bar to switch the view of the video and audio tracks in the timeline area to another part of the timeline.

Items of Scrub Bar	Description
	The blue line indicates the part of the timeline selected via the timeline's in- and outpoint. For information on how to set the in- and outpoint of the timeline see section "Setting an In- and Outpoint for the Timeline" on page 6-32.
	With the scrub bar cursor you can move within your project. Simply select the cursor with the mouse and move it along the scrub bar to the desired position. You can also click on a position outside the visible timeline area on the scrub bar directly to move the cursor and the visible part of the timeline there immediately. Additionally, with a mouse click directly below or above the part of the scrub bar in light grey you can position the scrub bar cursor there instantly.

5.3 Controls

At the bottom of the control area the controls to play out and move within your current project are located. In addition to other important buttons you can also find buttons to switch between the different modes of the control area here: the edit mode, the source-edit mode and the trim mode.



With this button you can switch to the edit mode. The edit mode of the Edit Tool is the standard operating mode of this software module. By default this mode is activated after the starting of the program. In the edit mode usually only one video overlay is visible where you can see and check your changes applied to the clips in the timeline.



This button activates the source-edit mode of the Edit Tool where you can select the in- and outpoint of a clip coming from the bin before adding it to the timeline. Once everything is set, you can drag the clip from the control area to a video track of the timeline. The source-edit mode is described in more detail in section “The Source-Edit Mode” on page 5-14.



You can switch to the trim mode of the Edit Tool with this button. After its activation the Edit Tool will automatically jump to the nearest cutting point and the timeline cursor will be positioned there. Use the trim mode of the Edit Tool to change in- and outpoint of adjacent clips to a cutting point, for example, if there are not enough head and tail available for a transition. The trim mode is described in more detail in section “The Trim Mode” on page 5-24.



This button activates the conforming mode of the Edit Tool’s conforming tool. It allows you to add (import) EDLs and cut lists, to the timeline, conform them and work with them in anyway you want. Afterwards you may export the timeline, for example, as an EDL again, or process it further via finalizing or archiving. The conforming tool and its mode is described in more detail in chapter “The Conforming Tool” on page 8-1.



The **SLAVE** button activates the slave mode of the Edit Tool. With the slave mode the DVS system can be controlled via RS-422 from another workstation, e.g. a VTR or a digital disk recorder such as the Pronto3 by DVS. Then it will behave like a VTR by using preroll, postroll, etc. The specifications of these parameters can be found in section "Slave Mode / RS-422 Control" on page A-18. When the slave mode is activated, the slave mode control window will be displayed on the screen (see section "The Slave Mode Control Window" on page 5-29). To clear the software from the slave mode, press the button **CLOSE** of the window **'Slave mode'**.



With these buttons you can step one frame for- or backward in your project. The timeline cursor will move accordingly. Alternatively, you may use the keyboard shortcuts [Left Arrow]/[Right Arrow] or [3]/[4].



With this button you can play-out the timeline backwards, i.e. it will start a reverse play-out. Once activated, the button changes its appearance to its active state. To stop the reverse play-out you have to click it again. Alternatively, you may use the keyboard shortcut [J] to start a reverse play-out and [Space]/[K]/[Shift + K] to stop it.



With this button you can start a play-out of the timeline. After activation the button changes its appearance to its active state (). To stop the play-out you have to click this button again. Alternatively, you may use the keyboard shortcuts [Space]/[5] to start or [Space]/[K]/[Shift + K] to stop a play-out.

To view your project on an additionally connected monitor, you have to configure the output format of the timeline accordingly. The setting of the output format (video raster) of the project can be configured with the button **SETTINGS...** at the top left side of the timeline area (see section "How to Configure the Video Output" on page 6-12).



If you activate a play action of the clip from the bin in the source-edit mode (see section “The Source-Edit Mode” on page 5-14), a play-out of the timeline will be terminated.



You can jump to particular points on the timeline, such as cutting/edit points and timeline markers, with these buttons. The first button jumps to the point that is previously located on the timeline while the second button jumps to the next one. Alternatively, you may use the keyboard shortcuts [A] and [S].



This button plays around the current position of the timeline cursor (± several sec.) in a loop. To deactivate the loop review press the button **REVIEW** again. The duration of the review can be configured freely with the with the Configuration Tool (see “CLIPSTER Configurations” user guide for more information).



This field shows the current position of the timeline cursor in timecode or frames notation. If you want to move to a certain position on the timeline, you can enter the position in the appropriate format here. After that press [Enter] and the cursor will then move to the entered position. For more information about the timecode/frame number fields and their format see section “About Timecode / Frame Number Fields” on page 2-17.

5.4 The Source-Edit Mode



If you drag either a video or audio clip from the bin to the control area of the Edit Tool, the software changes to the source-edit mode.

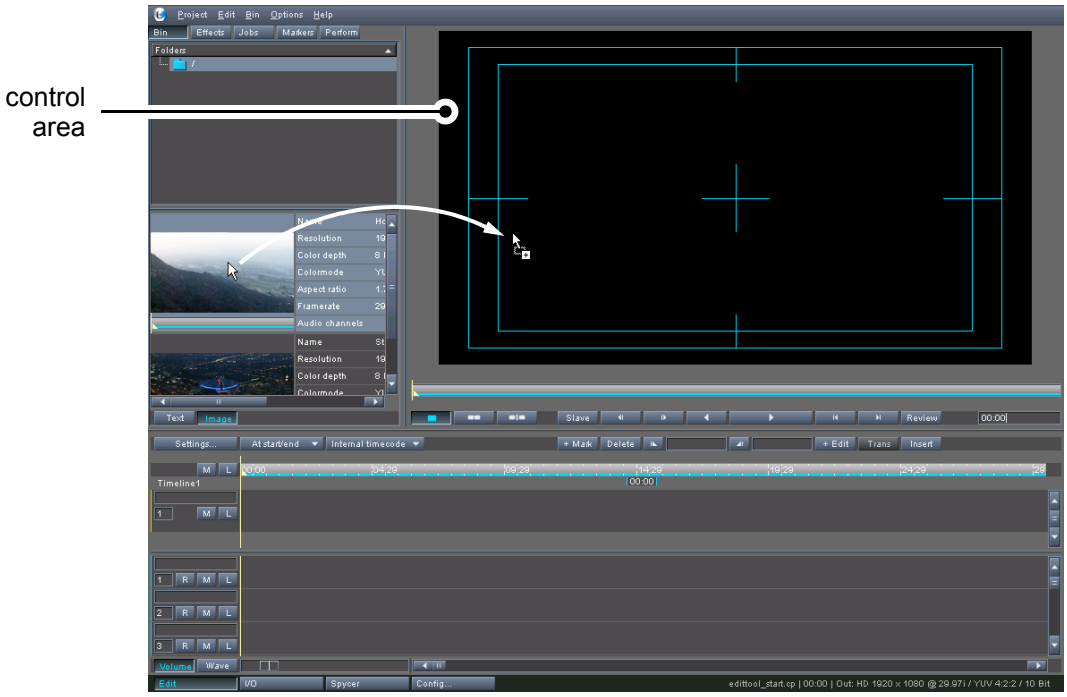


Figure 5-12: Drag and drop of clip to control area



The clip in the bin is neither removed nor deleted when it is dragged to the control area. It will remain there for future use so that you can add the clip (or other parts of it) to the timeline again.

You can also switch to the source-edit mode manually by pressing the respective button of the controls (see section “Controls” on page 5-11). In the source-edit mode there are two video overlays visible in the control area of the Edit Tool:

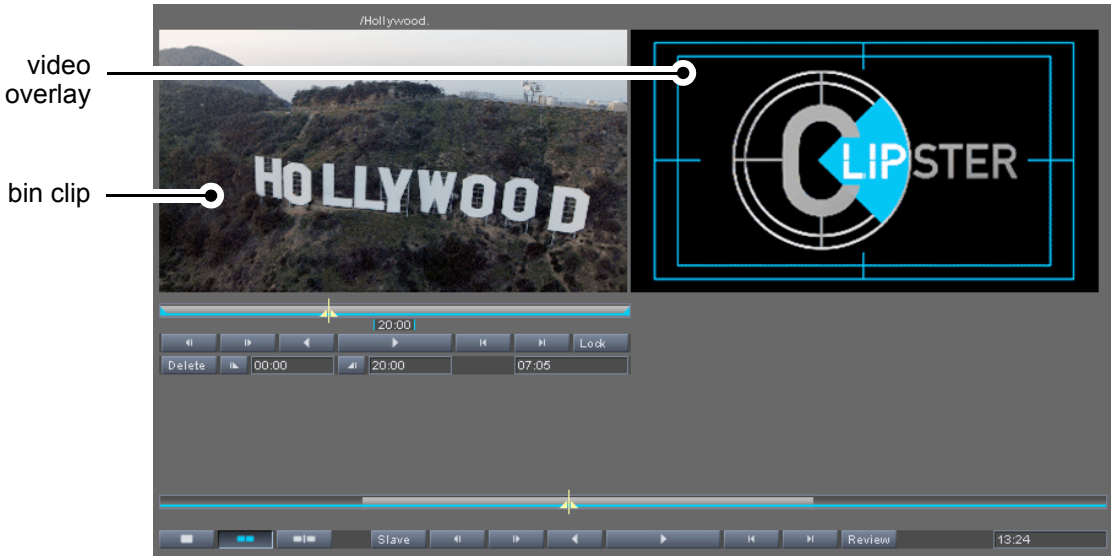


Figure 5-13: The source-edit mode

The left part of the control area shows the clip coming from the bin (in the following called 'bin clip'). Its contents will be displayed in the overlay to the left. The right part of the control area displays your current video overlay as it would be in the edit mode.

Audio clips can be used the same way as video clips in the source-edit mode. When dragging an audio clip to the control area, the audio clip will be shown in the video overlay with a part of its waveform. The length (duration) of the waveform displayed can be configured via the Configuration Tool (see the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for further information).

The waveform of the audio bin clip is not displayed when performing a play-out of this clip in the source-edit mode.

The entry fields of the bin clip are connected to the selected display type of the Edit Tool's timeline. For example, if source timecode is selected as the display type and such a timecode is provided by the clip, the bin clip's entry fields will provide the source timecode instead of a relative timeline timecode (see section "Changing the Display Type" on page 6-10).

If your bin clip was already set to a preliminary inpoint in the bin, you will see the selected inpoint in this mode. How to set an inpoint for a clip in the bin can be read in section "Preparing Clips for Editing Purposes" on page 4-20.

In the source-edit mode you can select frame accurately an in- and outpoint for your bin clip. Once the in- and outpoint is set, you can drag the bin clip from the control area to the respective tracks of the timeline

(as described in section "Taking a Clip from the Control Area" on page 6-4).



While in the source-edit mode you can use the controls at the bottom of the control area as usual. They control the video overlay on the right side (see section "Controls" on page 5-11).

Furthermore, although the edit mode is the most appropriate mode to perform editing tasks, you can also perform your work in this mode.

In addition to setting an in- and outpoint for the bin clip, you can select in the source-edit mode other applications than the DVS software to process your video data (see section "Processing the Source Material of a Video Clip" on page 5-21).

5.4.1 Controlling the Clip from the Bin

Below the scrub bar of the clip from the bin (bin clip) you can find the controls to control the bin clip. In detail they perform the following:



Audio clips provide the same trim and play-out possibilities as video clips. The contents of the audio clip will be played out at channel 1 and 2 of the digital audio outputs. If these are routed to the analog outputs, you can hear the clip at these outputs as well (see section "Configuring the Video and Audio Output" on page 6-12).



With these buttons you can step one frame/sample for- or backwards in the scrub bar of the bin clip. The scrub bar cursor will move accordingly.



With this button you can play-out the bin clip backwards, i.e. it will start a reverse play-out. When a reverse play-out is initiated, the contents of the bin clip between the set out- and inpoint will be displayed in its overlay on the left as well as at the video output of the DVS system. Once activated, the button changes its appearance to its active state. To stop the reverse play-out you have to click it again.



With this button you can play out the bin clip in real time. When a play-out is initiated, the contents of the bin clip between the set in- and outpoint will be displayed in its overlay on the left as well as at the video output of the DVS system. If the bin clip is an audio clip, the contents of the audio clip will be played out at channel 1 and 2 of the system's digital audio outputs. If these are routed to the analog outputs, you can hear the clip at these outputs as well (see section "Configuring the Video and Audio Output" on page 6-12). After activation the button changes its appearance to its active state () and you have to press it again to stop the play-out.

To view the bin clip (video) on an additionally connected monitor, you have to configure the output format of the timeline accordingly. The setting of the output format (video raster) of the project can be configured with the button **SETTINGS...** at the top left side of the timeline area (see section "How to Configure the Video Output" on page 6-12).

With the activation of a play of the bin clip, a play of the timeline will be terminated.



These buttons move the scrub bar cursor to the next marked point on the scrub bar of the clip coming from the bin. Marked points are the start as well as end of the timeline or the set in- and outpoint. The first button jumps to previous points on the timeline while the second button jumps to next ones.



With the **LOCK** button you can synchronize the timeline cursor of the timeline with the scrub bar cursor of the bin clip. Then the timeline cursor will adjust to your moves of the scrub bar cursor, for example, if you scrub the bin clip's scrub bar or move via the buttons to step for- or backwards. The way the synchronization is performed can be set with the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide).

This way you can check a conformed, offline composed project frame accurately with, for example, the master in the timeline and the offline edited clip in the source-edit mode.

5.4.2 Setting In- and Outpoint for the Clip from the Bin

When the video or audio clip from the bin (bin clip) was dragged to the control area and the source-edit mode is activated, you can set the in- and outpoint of the clip frame accurately. For this you have to use the scrub bar and the position items:

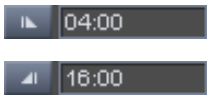


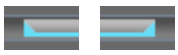
Figure 5-14: Bin clip in source-edit mode

The scrub bar provides a timeline of the clip coming from the bin. You can use it and the position items to adjust the in- and outpoint of the bin clip. In detail you can find the following elements:

The entry fields are connected to the selected display type of the Edit Tool's timeline. For example, if source timecode is selected as the display type and such a timecode is provided by the clip, the bin clip's entry fields will provide the source timecode instead of a relative timeline timecode (see section "Changing the Display Type" on page 6-10).

Audio clips provide the same trim possibilities as video clips. However, with the timecode notation for the entry fields activated, the audio values will be shown as seconds with a decimal number, i.e. with milliseconds; when the frame notation is activated, the values will be displayed in milliseconds only; and when the file number viewing is activated, the values indicate individual samples.

Items	Description
	The **DELETE** button is a toggle button. If it is activated (), you can delete the in- or outpoint by clicking the in- or outpoint button. Regardless of the position of the scrub bar cursor the in-/outpoint will be deleted. If the **DELETE** button is deactivated, a click on the in- or outpoint button will set the in- or outpoint respectively at the current position of the scrub bar cursor.
	For a frame accurate positioning you may use the in- and outpoint entry fields. Simply type in in the entry field to the right of the in- or outpoint button the position of the in-/outpoint that the clip should provide when added to the timeline of the Edit Tool. Then press [Enter] to take on the selected position. The in- or outpoint handler will be set accordingly. Further information about timecode/frame number entry fields can be found in section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17.
	The inpoint button sets or deletes the inpoint of the bin clip depending on the state of the **DELETE** button. The inpoint will be set at the position of the scrub bar cursor.
	The outpoint button sets or deletes the outpoint of the bin clip depending on the state of the **DELETE** button. The outpoint will be set at the position of the scrub bar cursor.
	The position field displays the current position of the scrub bar cursor on the scrub bar of the bin clip (its timeline). To move the cursor you may enter a position and press [Enter]. Further information about timecode/frame number entry fields can be found in section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17.
	With the scrub bar cursor you can move and view the contents of the bin clip. Simply select it and move it along the scrub bar. Additionally, you can control it via the controls, e.g. the play button, or the position field. Furthermore, with a mouse click anywhere below or above the scrub bar you can position the scrub bar cursor there instantly.

Items	Description
	The in- and outpoint handlers together with the blue line show you the selected part of the clip. To position them you can select and move the in- and outpoint handlers with the mouse. They can also be set via the in- and outpoint position items. Once the final length of the clip to be inserted is set, you can move the selected part of the scrub bar (indicated by the blue line) with the mouse to position it.
	The counter displays either the length of the clip in timecode format or the amount of frames that the bin clip will provide when dragged to the timeline. This is calculated from the set in- and outpoint handlers.
Scrub bar in dark grey	Parts of the scrub bar in a dark grey show the parts of the clip that were deselected via the set in- and outpoint. If you click on such a part, the scrub bar cursor will be positioned there instantly.
Scrub bar in light grey	Parts of the scrub bar displayed in light grey indicate the part of the clip that is selected via the set in- and outpoint. If you click above or below such a part, the scrub bar cursor will be positioned there instantly.

To set the in- and outpoint perform the following:

If your bin clip was already set to a preliminary inpoint, you will see the selected inpoint in this mode. Then you can adjust it more accurately.

- If necessary, pull the scrub bar cursor out of the way to grab the in- or outpoint handler.
- With the mouse select the in- or outpoint handler and move each to their desired positions.

For a frame accurate positioning of the in- and outpoint handlers you may also perform one of the following: Either enter the position of the in- and outpoint handlers in the in- and outpoint entry fields of the position items (then press [Enter]), or move the scrub bar cursor to the desired position and press the in- or outpoint button.

The still selected part of the scrub bar will be shown in light grey while the deselected part is displayed in a dark grey. Additionally, the counter will decrease:

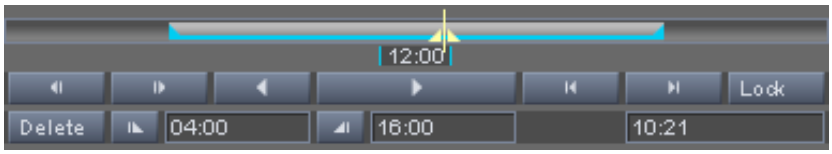


Figure 5-15: Set in- and outpoint of the bin clip

You can also work the other way around: you can first determine and set the length of the clip to be inserted and then move the part in light grey along the scrub bar with the mouse to position it.

When everything is set as desired, select the bin clip in its video overlay and drag and drop it to the respective video or audio track of the timeline (see section "Taking a Clip from the Control Area" on page 6-4 for further information).

To switch the control area back to its edit mode use the appropriate button of the control area ( ).

5.4.3 Processing the Source Material of a Video Clip

In addition to setting an in- and outpoint for the bin clip, the source-edit mode also provides the possibility to select other applications than the DVS software to process your video data with.

The Edit Tool provides two ways to export either the original source material or a copied version of it to a third party application of your choice: You can export video data visible in the source-edit mode of the Edit Tool, or you can export video data that is available in the timeline to another application. This way you can process the source material of a video clip further and afterwards use it again in the DVS software without any difficulty. This section describes how to process source material when a bin clip was dragged to the control area (source-edit mode) of the Edit Tool.

The export of source material that is present in the timeline of the Edit Tool is described in section "Processing the Source Material of a Timeline Element" on page 6-66.

When a bin clip is available in the source-edit mode of the control area, you can process its source material either by using the original data directly (destructive export) or by previously copying the material beforehand. To do this you have to use the menu option ***Export to Application*** on the context menu of the bin clip's video overlay:

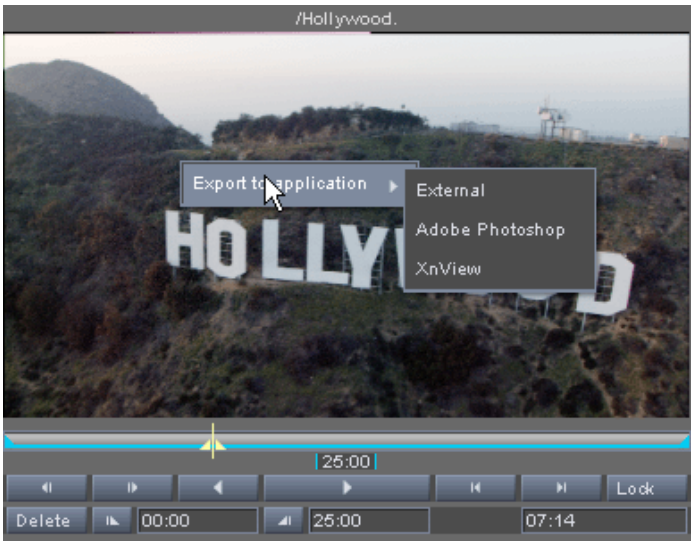


Figure 5-16: Processing video material

The menu option ***Export to Application*** opens a submenu where you can select another application than the DVS software to process your video data.

To have an application available in this submenu you have to define and set it first. This can be done with the Configuration Tool (group **External**, see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide). Please note that you have to set the appropriate program parameters, if applicable, in the **Options** entry field as well.

Please note that the **Destructive export** option is valid for all specified external applications. If activated, the source data will always be processed directly. When saving the data in such a case with an external application, the source material will be overwritten.

As soon as an application under this option is selected, the video data will be transferred to the respective program according to your settings made for this application in the Configuration Tool.

For a detailed description of the settings see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.

In the source-edit mode of the Edit Tool you can select an in- and outpoint for a clip to be added to the timeline. When sequence processing is activated, each frame between the set in- and outpoint of the clip will be sent to the external application.

If a non-destructive export is selected for the external applications, the source material of the clip will be copied to the same path and location where the original material is stored with an incrementing number added to the directory name of the clip (*<name of clip's directo-*

ry><incrementing number>). After this the copied source material will be opened in the external application where you can process it. In the meantime a new bin clip will be added to the bin of the Edit Tool which will refer to the location of the copied material. Once the material is processed with the other application, you can save it and then use the new bin clip as well as the unaltered original source in the DVS software as usual (its bin clip is still present in the bin).

When a destructive export is selected for the external applications, no changes will be applied to the bin or the bin clip in the Edit Tool. The source material is sent directly to the external application where it can be processed. Once the changes are saved, the material can be immediately accessed via the old bin clip in the DVS software. However, due to the destructive export, your original source material on the storage will be lost.

5.5 The Trim Mode



With the trim mode of the Edit Tool you can change the in- and outpoint of adjacent clips to a cutting point, for example, if there are not enough head and tail available for a transition. When a transition is already applied to the cutting point, the in- and outpoint of the clips can be changed in this mode as well.



You can also change in- and outpoints of clips with their respective representations in the timeline directly (see section “Changing In- and Outpoints of Timeline Elements” on page 6-47).

As soon as two clips are present in the video track(s) of the timeline, the trim mode can be activated via its button from the controls (see section “Controls” on page 5-11). Then the control area changes its appearance and you will see something like the following:

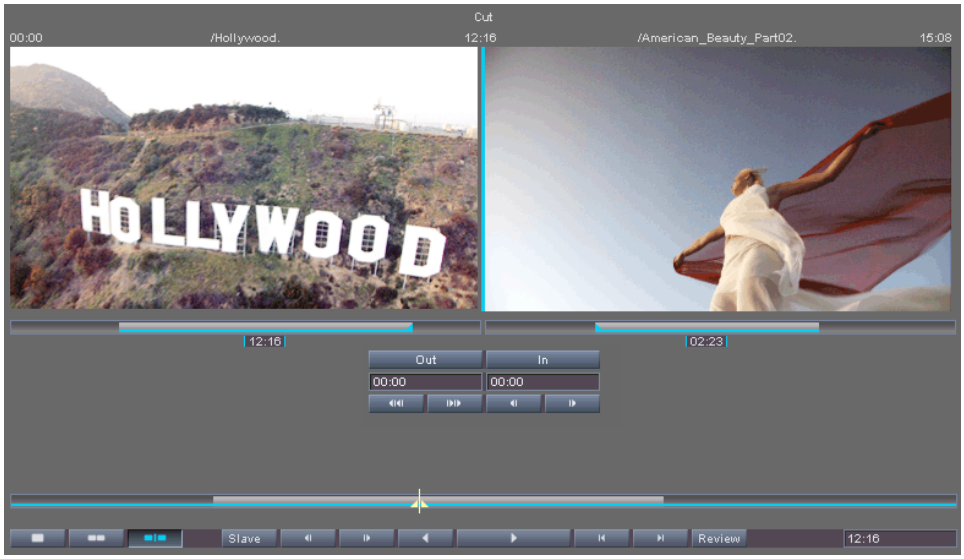
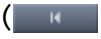


Figure 5-17: The trim mode

When the trim mode is activated, the Edit Tool will automatically jump to the nearest cutting point of the timeline and the timeline cursor will be positioned there accordingly. If the timeline cursor is positioned on another cutting point than the desired one, move it to the correct one with the respective controls (  or key [A]/[S] on your keyboard).



In this mode you cannot move inside the project as usual. The timeline cursor is restricted to the location of cutting points only.

The control area in the trim mode shows then the two clips adjacent to the selected cutting point. The left overlay shows the outpoint and the

last frame of the clip left to the cut/transition while the right one displays the inpoint and first frame of the clip to the right.

If in- and outpoints were already trimmed for your clips, you will see the determined in- and outpoints in this mode. The selected parts of the scrub bars will be shown in light grey while the deselected parts are shown in dark grey.

Above each overlay you can find further information about the clip. Beside the name of each clip as it is present in the bin, you can get information about the clips' in- and outpoint on the timeline or, if applicable, about the type of transition that is applied to the cutting point:

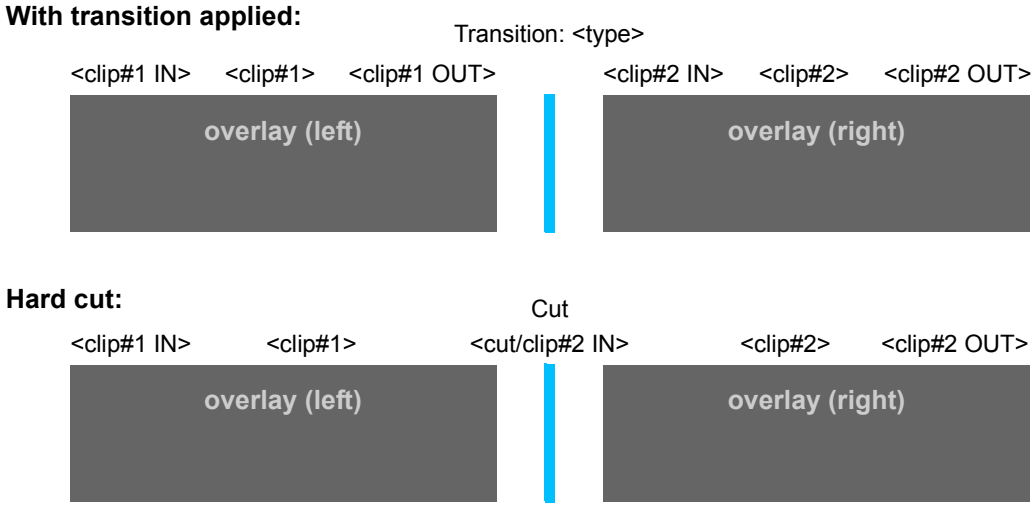


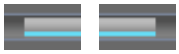
Figure 5-18: In- and outpoint information of a cutting point in trim mode

The in- and outpoint information are provided either in timecode or in frames depending on the selected notation for the Edit Tool (see section "Configuring the Timeline Scale" on page 6-9).

5.5.1 The Trim Controls

In addition to the in- and outpoint information and the overlays where you can see the end and start frame of the clips, the control area in the

trim mode provides the following elements to control a trimming frame accurately:

Items	Description
Blue bar	The blue bar between the two overlays represents the cut between the two clips. It can be selected with the mouse and when moving the mouse cursor to the left or right, you can trim the out- and inpoint of the two clips adjacent to the cutting point simultaneously. Thereby you will extend the length of one clip while shortening the length of the other at the same time. With this kind of trimming the total timeline length is maintained.
	The out- and inpoint handlers can be selected and moved with the mouse to set the out- or inpoint of the clips.
	The counters below the timelines of the clips display the length of the clips in timecode or frames notation calculated from the set in- and outpoint handlers.
	These are the other in- and outpoints of the clips. They cannot be selected and moved. To adjust them you have to jump to their respective cutting points.
	The **OUT** and **IN** buttons are toggle buttons. In their active state ( / ) the respective in- or outpoint is selected for a trimming. The **OUT** button selects the outpoint of the clip to the left side of the cutting point. The **IN** button selects the inpoint of the clip to its right. Then the respective in- or outpoint can be changed with the controls below them. The **OUT** and **IN** buttons will change their state automatically when one of the trimming items above is selected directly for a trimming, e.g. when you select the blue bar or one of the in- or outpoint handlers.

Items	Description
	The two entry fields below the **OUT** and **IN** button allow you to monitor and adjust the trimming. The left field indicates the changes to the outpoint of the clip to the left of the cut, the right field displays the changes to the inpoint of the clip to the right. To use the fields to adjust the trimming select the out- and/or inpoint with the buttons **OUT** and **IN**, then enter the trimming values (positive or negative) either in timecode or frames notation and press [Enter]. Further information about timecode/frame number entry fields can be found in section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17.
	With these buttons you can trim the out- or inpoint selected via the buttons **OUT** and **IN** one frame for- or backwards. The respective handler will move accordingly. If both buttons are activated, the out- and inpoint will be both adjusted simultaneously.
	These buttons allow you to trim the out- or inpoint selected via the buttons **OUT** and **IN** ten frames for- or backwards. The respective handler will move accordingly. If both buttons are activated, the out- and inpoint will be both adjusted simultaneously.

5.5.2 Setting In- and Outpoints of Clips

If clips are already present in the timeline of the Edit Tool, you can change their in- and outpoint with the trim mode even if a transition is already applied to the cutting point. To do this frame accurately you have various controls at hand either to monitor the trimming or to adjust it. With the trim mode activated and the timeline cursor positioned at the desired cutting point between two clips perform the following:



You can also change in- and outpoints of clips with their respective representations in the timeline directly (see section "Changing In- and Outpoints of Timeline Elements" on page 6-47).

- Select the in- or outpoint handlers in the scrub bars of the clips with the mouse and move them to the desired position for each clip.



As long as the insert mode of the Edit Tool is active, the subsequent clips and embedded operators will automatically adjust their positions on the timeline respectively. When the Edit Tool is set to the overwrite mode, gaps may occur in the timeline. More information on this can be found in section "The Insert/Overwrite Mode of the Timeline" on page 6-34.

You cannot change in- and outpoints beyond the limits of the original material on the storage.

However, if the duration of the clips is long, you can adjust the handlers only roughly. Then to set them more accurately you may use either the keyboard controls of the DVS software (see section "Keyboard Shortcuts" on page A-7) or the controls below the two scrub bars as described in the following.

- If not already set accordingly, select the appropriate out- or inpoint via the **OUT** and **IN** button of the trim controls: If you want to adjust the outpoint of the clip to the left of the cutting point, the **OUT** button has to be activated, if you want to set the inpoint of the clip to its right, the **IN** button has to be selected. If both buttons are activated, the out- and inpoint will be adjusted simultaneously.
- Next use the controls below the **OUT** and **IN** button to position them frame accurately.



Figure 5-19: Trim controls

The respective handler(s) will move accordingly. As well the counter(s) will in- or decrease for the selected clip(s). Your alterations are effective immediately in the timeline and you can now, for example, define a transition between the clips or perform a play-out.

To switch the control area back to the edit mode use the appropriate button of the control area ().

5.6 The Slave Mode Control Window

The DVS software provides in some of its software modules a slave mode. Usually it can be activated with the button **SLAVE**. Then the following window may be displayed on the screen allowing you to control the respective software module without relinquishing the slave mode:

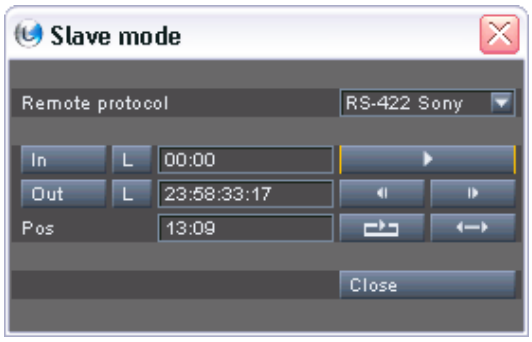


Figure 5-20: Slave mode control

In slave mode the DVS system will behave like a VTR by using preroll, postroll, etc. The specifications of these parameters can be found in section "Slave Mode / RS-422 Control" on page A-18. This section explains the items provided by the **'Slave mode'** window:

For more information about timecode/frame number fields and their format refer to section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17.



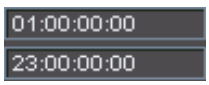
Select from the **Remote protocol** combo box the RS-422 protocol that should be used to control the DVS system (see also section "Slave Mode / RS-422 Control" on page A-18).



The buttons **IN** and **OUT** enable you to select an in-/outpoint directly from the current position of the timeline cursor. Move the timeline cursor via the **Pos** field (see below) or its controls (see below) to the position that you want to set. Then press the respective button and the entry field to its right will take on the selected position. With an activated in- or outpoint (**L** buttons, see below) these buttons allow you to jump to the in-/outpoint directly.



These buttons activate the in- and outpoint set in their corresponding entry fields to the right.



To position the in- and/or outpoint you can also enter a particular position in the entry fields to the right directly. For an activation of an in-/outpoint you may press [Enter] or use their activation buttons (see above).



On the one hand the **Pos** field indicates the current position of the timeline cursor, for example, during a play-out operation of the Edit Tool's timeline. On the other it can be used to move the timeline cursor by entering a particular position in its entry field (afterwards press [Enter]).



With this button you can play out the contents of the timeline in real time. When a play-out is initiated, it will be displayed in the video overlay of the control area as well as at the video and/or audio outputs of the DVS system. After activation the button changes its appearance to its active state and you have to press it again to stop the play-out.



With these buttons you can step one video frame for- or backwards in the timeline. The **Pos** field will indicate this accordingly.



With this button activated a play-out of the timeline will be performed endlessly in a loop: Once the timeline cursor reaches the outpoint of the timeline, the play-out will start from the inpoint again. To switch off the loop mode simply click this button again.



This button activates the forward-backward play mode of the timeline. In this mode an endless play-out of the timeline will be performed once a play-out is started: When the timeline cursor reaches the outpoint of the timeline, the play-out will be reversed and the timeline is played backwards (speed -1) until the inpoint is reached where the play-out will be performed forward again. To switch off the forward-backward play mode you have to click this button again.



This button deactivates the slave mode and closes the **'Slave mode'** control window.

The Timeline



For the editing process the Edit Tool provides a timeline with video and audio tracks where you can add the clips in the desired sequence as they should be played out in the end. You can then, for instance, define wipes, dissolves or cuts for the material.

This chapter explains how to work with the timeline in detail. It will be discussed how to add clips to the timeline and how to work with them afterwards. The latter will include among others descriptions on how to move in the timeline, how to perform cuts and how to set transitions. Additionally, because the timeline area is the most important part for your work with the Edit Tool, it can be configured freely which will also be addressed here. The chapter will be concluded with a description of how to finalize the timeline.

6.1 Adding Clips to the Timeline

To begin an editing work you have to drag the clips to the video and/or audio tracks of the timeline first. You can add clips of different formats to the timeline because the DVS software works format independent and is capable of handling even high-resolution film material.

There are two ways to add a clip to the timeline:

1. You can take a clip directly from the contents area of the bin, or
2. you can configure its in- and outpoint beforehand via the source-edit mode and then drag it from the control area to the timeline.

Both ways will be described in this section. Afterwards the length of the timeline will be indicated in the field directly below the timeline scale (length of the timeline's in- and outpoint, see also section "Setting an In- and Outpoint for the Timeline" on page 6-32):

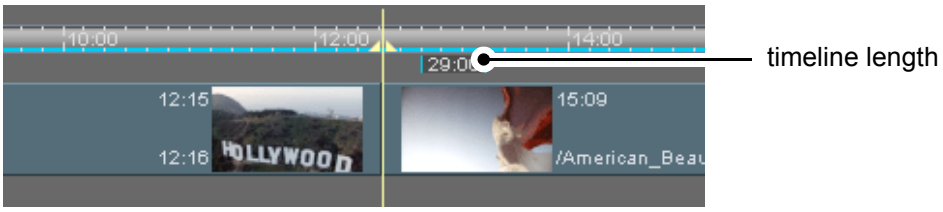


Figure 6-1: Timeline length indicator

During the adding of clips to the timeline, the clip will be visible in the video or audio track of the timeline and it will react to certain elements of the timeline (snapping mode) to allow for an automated positioning. Further information about the snapping mode can be found in section "Moving Clips within the Timeline" on page 6-38.

When adding or moving clips in the timeline, you have to heed the current insert/overwrite mode of the timeline. More information on this can be found in section "The Insert/Overwrite Mode of the Timeline" on page 6-34.

6.1.1 Taking a Clip Directly from the Bin

You can take a clip directly from the contents area of the bin and add it to the tracks of the timeline. For this perform the following:

- If required prepare the clip to be added to the timeline for editing purposes as described in section "Preparing Clips for Editing Purposes" on page 4-20 and section "Changing the Properties of Clips" on page 4-21.

- Then select the clip in the contents area of the bin and drag and drop it with the mouse into a video or audio track.

Video clips can only be dragged to the video track(s) of the Edit Tool and audio clips only to the audio tracks.

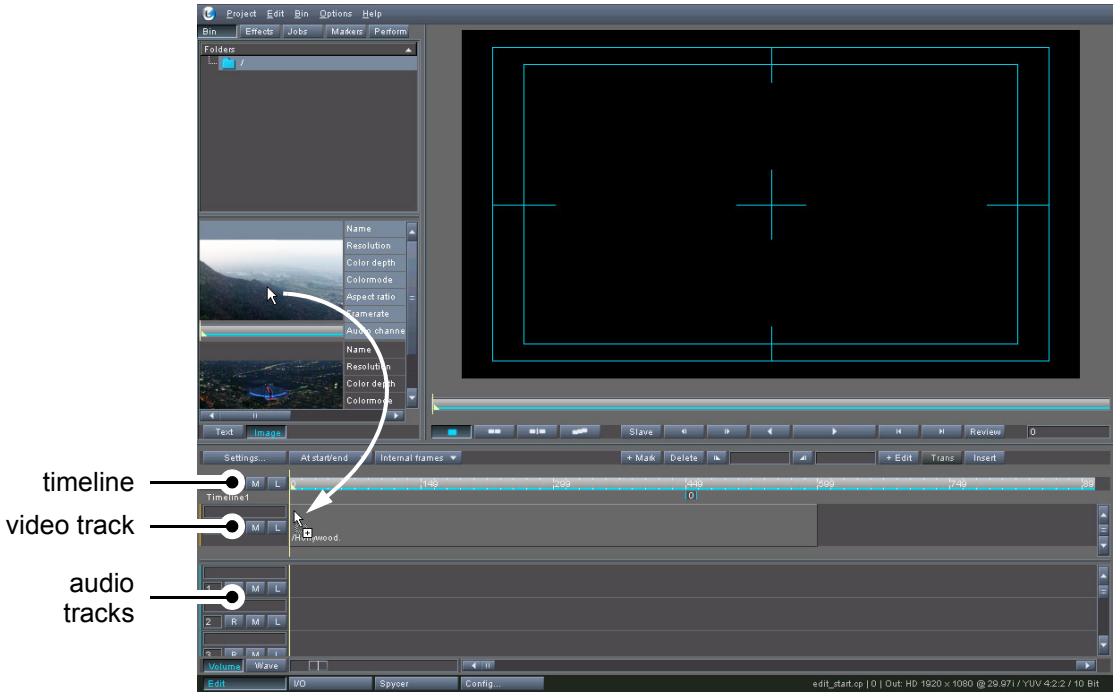


Figure 6-2: Drag and drop of video clip to timeline

Once the mouse button is released, a representation of the clip is added to the timeline.

When using clips from the bin, they are neither removed nor deleted there. They will remain in the bin for future use so that you can add the clip (or other parts of it) to the timeline again.

The clip will be placed at the position of the mouse pointer where the mouse button was released.

When adding a video clip and releasing it somewhere in the video track, a gap may appear in the timeline. It can be closed automatically with a double-click of the mouse on the timeline scale (see also section “Moving Clips within the Timeline” on page 6-38).

While the starting point of the clip (its position and inpoint) within the timeline is set during the drag-and-drop procedure by the position of the mouse pointer, its outpoint is defined by the length of the clip. You can change these attributes easily after the clip was added to the time-

line as described in section "Changing In- and Outpoints of Timeline Elements" on page 6-47.

If more than one clip is selected for the drag-and-drop procedure, the Edit Tool will either align the clips horizontally in one track of the timeline or put each clip into another track directly below the selected one. This drag-and-drop behavior can be configured with the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more information).

If you drag an audio clip to the timeline that contains more than one mono or stereo channel (multiple channels), the additional channels will be added to the other audio tracks below the selected one.

6.1.2 Taking a Clip from the Control Area

When a clip from the bin is dragged to the control area, the source-edit mode is activated where you can set the in- and outpoint of the clip frame accurately.

Further information about the source-edit mode and how to set in- and outpoint for a clip there can be found in section "The Source-Edit Mode" on page 5-14.

When the in- and outpoint are set as desired, perform the following:

- Select the bin clip in its video overlay and drag and drop it to a video or audio track of the timeline.

Video clips can only be dragged to the video track(s) of the Edit Tool and audio clips only to the audio tracks.

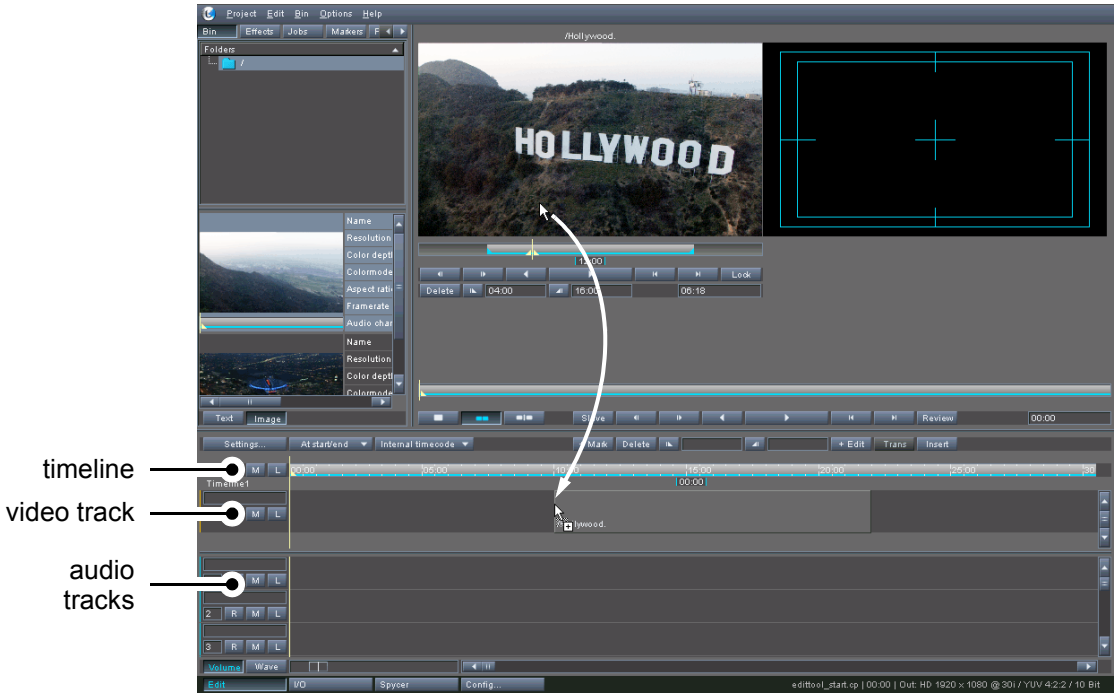


Figure 6-3: Drag and drop of video clip to timeline

Once the mouse button is released, a representation of the clip is added to the timeline.

The clip will be placed at the position of the mouse pointer where the mouse button was released.

When adding a video clip and releasing it somewhere in the video track, a gap may appear in the timeline. It can be closed automatically with a double-click of the mouse on the timeline scale (see also section “Moving Clips within the Timeline” on page 6-38).

While the starting point of the clip (its position and inpoint) within the timeline is set during the drag-and-drop procedure by the position of the mouse pointer, its outpoint is defined by the set outpoint made in the source-edit mode. These attributes can be changed easily after the clip was added to the timeline which is described in section “Changing In- and Outpoints of Timeline Elements” on page 6-47.

If you drag an audio clip to the timeline that contains more than one mono or stereo channel (multiple channels), the additional channels will be added to the other audio tracks below the selected one.

To switch the control area back to its edit mode use the appropriate button of the control area ( ).

6.2 Configuring the Timeline

Because the timeline is the most important part of the Edit Tool, it can be configured freely and thus adapted to your individual needs. For a more comfortable working you can change the layout of the timeline area in various ways. You can also adjust the timeline scale to the needs of your project, e.g. by defining a special offset. Furthermore, you have to define the necessary output format of the timeline, for example, to view your project on a monitor connected to the DVS system or to play out the timeline. All this will be described in the following sections.

Most configurations and settings will be stored together with your project in a project file.

6.2.1 Changing the Layout of the Timeline Area

Because in the timeline area most of the editing work is performed, you can change its layout freely to adapt it to your personal needs for a more comfortable working. The layout of the timeline area can be changed in several ways, for example, by adjusting the size of the video and audio tracks.

Changing the Area Size Manually

You can change the size of the timeline area manually. For this move the upper edge of the timeline area up or down with the mouse to enlarge or reduce the timeline area. The size of the tool and control area together with its video overlay will adjust itself automatically.

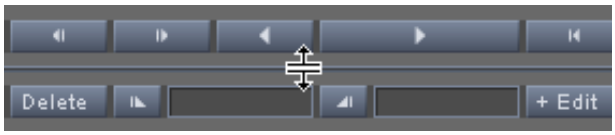


Figure 6-4: Adjusting the size of the timeline area

If you pull the edge completely down, the timeline area can be hidden. You can also pull the edge completely up to hide the tool and control area.

The same way you can adjust the size of the audio track area. Take the edge directly above the audio tracks and move it up or down. If you pull the edge completely down, the audio tracks will be hidden. If you pull it farthest up, you can hide the video track(s).

Video and Audio Track Properties

Via the **SETTINGS...** button you can alter the size and number of video and audio tracks. It is located at the top left side of the timeline area. After pressing this button the **'Timeline output settings'** window is displayed.



At the bottom of this window you can find in the **Options** area further optional settings. To the left you can find settings to alter the size and number of the video and audio tracks in the timeline:

The other items available in the **Options** area are explained in their respective sections (see section "Further Audio Configurations" on page 6-17, section "Loading and Applying a 3D LUT File" on page 6-18, section "Cropping the Timeline" on page 6-21, and section "Burn-in Information at the Output(s)" on page 6-25).

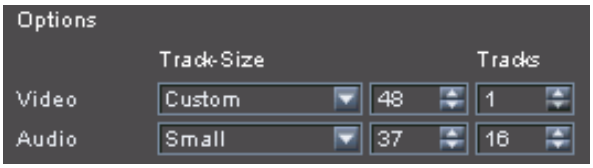


Figure 6-5: Track size options

With the fields for the track sizes you can adjust the height of the tracks for video and audio separately. Either change the sizes by selecting one of the preset sizes from the combo boxes to the left (`Small`, `Medium`, `Large`) or enter the pixel height manually in the adjoining entry fields.

Individual track sizes can also be configured for each track in the timeline area manually (see section "Changing Track Sizes Manually" on page 6-8).

Additionally, you can find here to the right entry fields where you can set the amount of audio and video tracks that will be visible in the timeline area.

Working with several video tracks vertically in the timeline is different from the usual approach of a horizontal editing in a timeline. Then the different tracks of the timeline form a stack. Further information about this and how to work with vertical editing can be found in section "Vertical Editing of Video Clips in the Timeline" on page 6-67.

Further information about the **'Timeline output settings'** window can be found in section "How to Configure the Video Output" on page 6-12.

Changing Track Sizes Manually

The track sizes can also be manually set in the timeline area. Setting the tracks to individual sizes may be useful in case you want to focus on important tracks or display an audio track with an audio waveform more clearly (see section "Waveform Display" on page 6-79).

The video and audio tracks can be adjusted to an individual height. For this you have to move the bottom line of a track (separation line) in the area right in front of the tracks with the mouse:

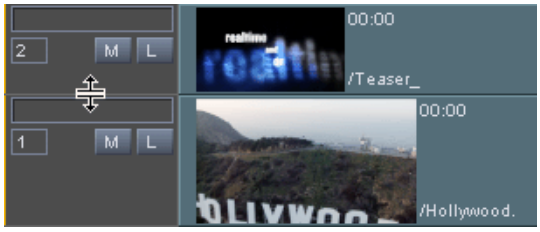


Figure 6-6: Setting track sizes manually

The thumbnails or audio clip features will be scaled accordingly.

6.2.2 Changing the Appearance of Video Clips

To the right of the **SETTINGS...** button you can find the thumbnails combo box. When you click on the arrow to the right of the combo box with the mouse, you will receive a drop-down list:

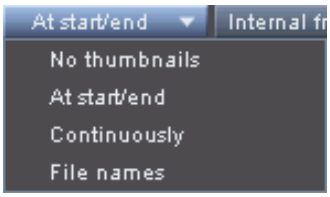


Figure 6-7: List of thumbnails combo box

From this list you can select the view of the video track(s), i.e. you can select the way the clips' representations are displayed in the video track(s). For example, the clips can be shown with continuous thumbnails in the video track(s):

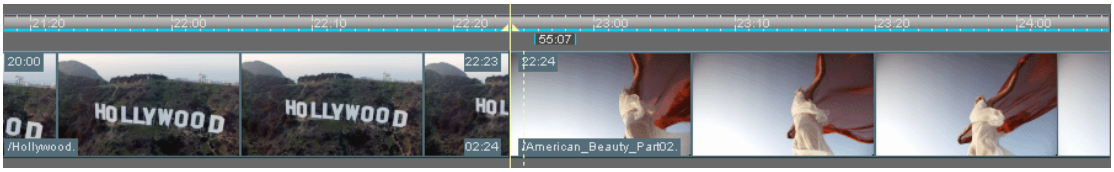


Figure 6-8: Continuous thumbnails

In detail the clips in the video track(s) can be set to the following appearances:

Selection	Meaning
`No thumbnails`	The clips' representations in the video track(s) of the timeline are shown without thumbnails.
`At start/end`	Thumbnails of the clips are displayed at the start and the end of the clips only (e.g. as shown in figure 6-55 on page 6-60).
`Continuously`	All clips in the video track(s) are filled with thumbnails continuously (as shown in the example figure above).
`File names`	Instead of seeing the thumbnails continuously, the clips are filled with their file names instead, i.e. you will see the original file names of the respective image files throughout the clip which may be especially helpful during frame-accurate editing.

6.2.3 Configuring the Timeline Scale

The timeline scale can be adapted to the needs of your project. You can either set a special offset or switch the notation of the scale.

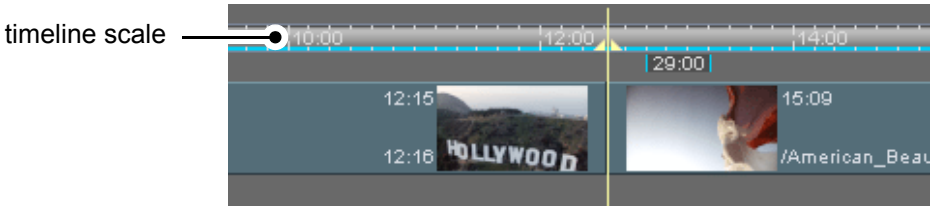


Figure 6-9: The timeline scale

To set a timeline offset, for example, to match the current project with other projects, you have to use the **TC - Offset** item of the output settings window (see section "How to Configure the Video Output" on page 6-12). The timeline of the Edit Tool will then provide this offset.

Additionally, the timeline scale as well as all position and length indicators in the Edit Tool can be switched from a display of the timecode notation to frame numbers and vice versa. Further information about this can be found in section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17.

6.2.4 Configuring the Tooltips of Clips

All clips added to the timeline of the Edit Tool, i.e. video as well as audio clips, provide various information via tooltips. These information will be displayed as soon as the mouse cursor is placed over a clip:



Figure 6-10: Tooltip of video clip

Then you can see, for example, the file name of the clip or its in- and outpoint on the timeline. The information displayed via the tooltips can be adjusted freely to your individual needs with the Configuration Tool of the DVS software (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more information).

Additionally, you can turn on or off the tooltips of the clips in the timeline. For this call up the context menu on either a video or audio clip and select the menu option ***Enable tooltip*** (see also section "The Context Menu of Video Clips" on page 6-61 or section "The Context Menu of Audio Clips" on page 6-75 for further information).

The tooltips can also be enabled or disabled via the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more information).

6.2.5 Changing the Display Type

To the right of the thumbnails combo box you can find the display type combo box where you can set the way position information are displayed by clips in the Edit Tool.

The position information of clips are shown, for example, in their text information after they were added to the timeline (top left and top right, see section "The Clip's Information" on page 6-60) or in the entry fields of a bin clip in the source-edit mode of the control area (see section "The Source-Edit Mode" on page 5-14).

When you select the arrow to the right of the combo box, a drop-down list will be available where you can set the display type:

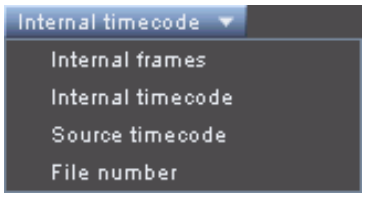


Figure 6-11: List of the display types

From this list select the display type that should be used in the software.

Selection	Meaning
`Internal frames`	The clips show positions according to an internal frame count. This setting also activates the frame notation for the Edit Tool (see section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17).
`Internal timecode`	The clips show positions according to an internal timecode count. This setting also activates the timecode notation for the Edit Tool (see section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17).
`Source TC`	The clips show positions according to the timecodes provided by their file headers and set either via the Configuration Tool or the clip's properties. If the clips do not provide a source timecode of their own, no timecodes will be displayed by the clips. However, they can be configured to show a virtual source timecode via their properties in the bin. Further information about source timecode can be found in section "Notes on Source Timecode and Keycode" on page 2-15. This setting also activates the timecode notation for the Edit Tool (see section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17).
`File number`	The clips show positions according to the numbers of their respective image files, e.g. the image *`Hollywood00231.dpx`* as the starting point of a clip will be shown with `231`. This setting also activates the frame notation for the Edit Tool (see section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17).

6.2.6 Configuring the Video and Audio Output

To output video and audio and to view your project's timeline with a monitor connected to the DVS system, you have to configure the output format of the timeline accordingly. Both, the video and audio output, can be configured freely.

How to Configure the Video Output

With the button **SETTINGS...** at the top left side of the timeline area you can determine the output format (video raster) of the project. Additionally you can find here various other settings concerned with the timeline or its output.



In the Edit Tool you can set different video format settings either for the SDI or the DVI and analog outputs. Once set, the respective format(s) will be automatically applied to the output ports of the DVS system. By default the DVI/analog output settings are linked to the video output format of the SDI and, if not configured otherwise, will be set to the same raster.

The selected SDI output raster is applied to the video overlay and it may have an effect on the images displayed there (e.g. they may get cropped). You can use the video overlay to see the effects immediately because it will always show the exact content of the outgoing signal.

After pressing the button **SETTINGS...** the following window will be displayed on the screen:

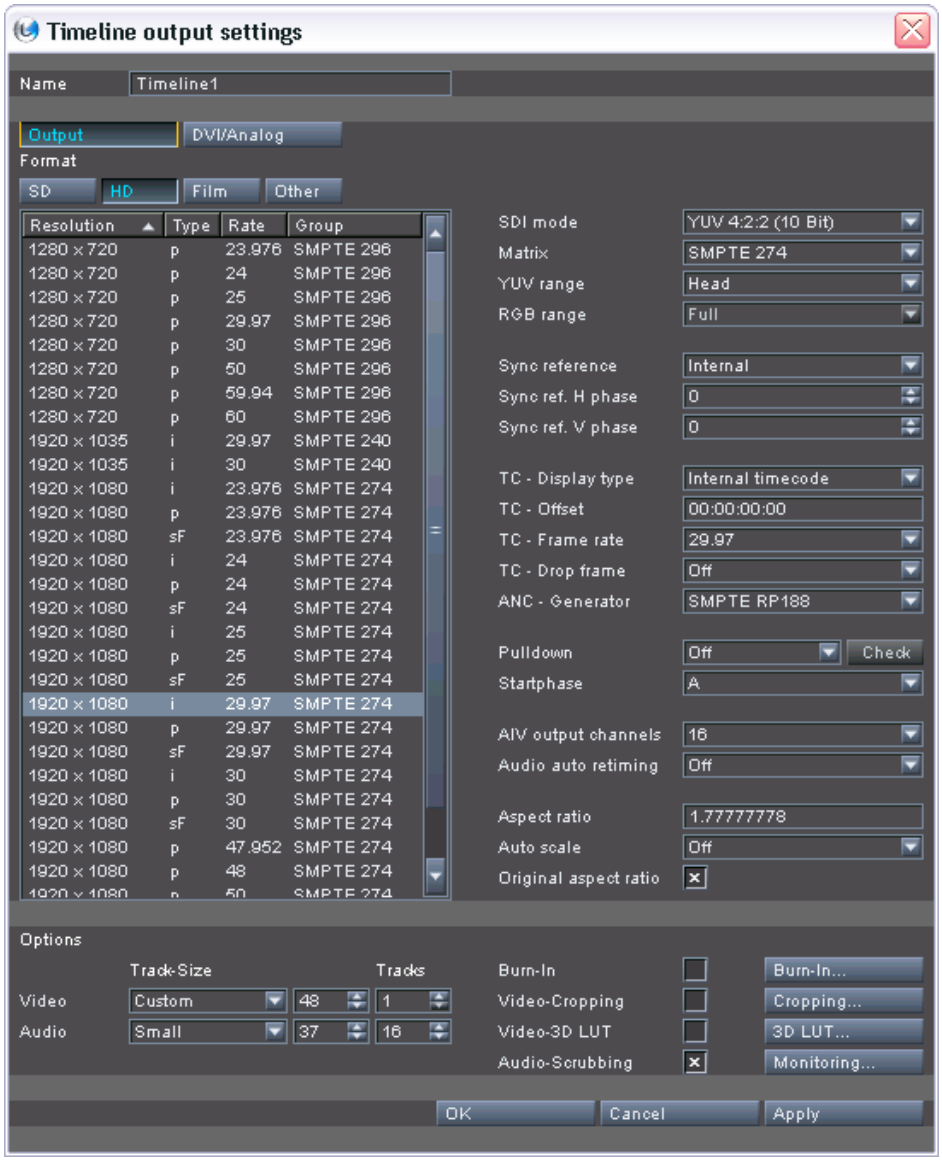


Figure 6-12: Window to set the output settings

As a standard after selecting the video format settings the SDI output configurations are displayed. Use the provided items to set the video format accordingly. In this window you can also set the software to an autoscaling of the material to be played out if its original resolution differs from the configured output raster. Additionally, you can determine here the amount of audio channels that will be embedded in the video signal (AIV). This is provided because some external devices have difficulties when handling embedded audio that provides more than four audio channels.

With the tabs at the very top you can set the output format for the different ports. The output video format can be set separately for the SDI and the DVI/analog outputs. The settings items of the tab **DVI/Analog** will be available once the check box **Lock to Output** is deactivated.

As soon as you confirm your settings with the **OK** button, they will be in effect. The in- and outputs of the system (except the SD outputs) will change their format respectively. Depending on the selected video format for SDI the video overlay of the Edit Tool may change its aspect ratio (16:9, 4:3, et al.). In the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide) you can configure the SD outputs as well as set an output raster that the DVS software should use as the default raster after starting a new project.

Rasters for film not included in the SDI standard (i.e. 2K with 20 Hz or more) are output via the analog and DVI outputs only.

In the **'Timeline output settings'** window you have further configuration possibilities at hand via the **Options** area at the bottom of the window. There you can configure the following:

- The video and audio track sizes as well as the number of tracks (see section "Changing the Layout of the Timeline Area" on page 6-6).
- The analog audio outputs to monitor audio during your editing work (see section "Further Audio Configurations" on page 6-17).
- Burn-in information that should be displayed at the output(s) (see section "Burn-in Information at the Output(s)" on page 6-25).
- A 3D LUT file to be used for the timeline (optionally available, see section "Loading and Applying a 3D LUT File" on page 6-18).
- A cropping for the whole timeline (see section "Cropping the Timeline" on page 6-21).

The rest of the available items in this window, i.e. the items of the areas **Name** and **Format**, are described in more detail in the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.

How to Configure the Audio Output

The timeline area contains several audio tracks where you can add audio clips in the desired sequence and set fade-ins and -outs. To output audio via the digital audio outputs of the DVS system you have to configure the audio output accordingly.

The number of audio tracks displayed in the Edit Tool can be set to your liking (see section "Video and Audio Track Properties" on page 6-7).

In the areas preceding the audio tracks you can find the audio routing button **R**:

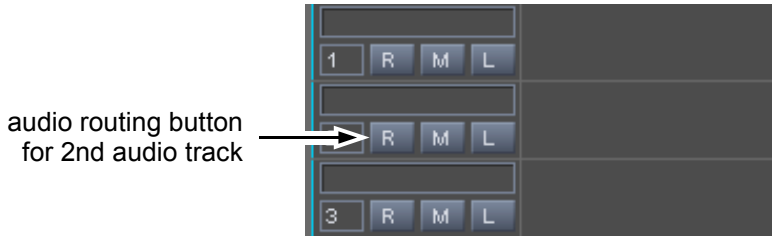


Figure 6-13: Button to configure the audio output settings

With these buttons you can set for each track separately the audio output. After pressing one of the **R** buttons the following window will be displayed:

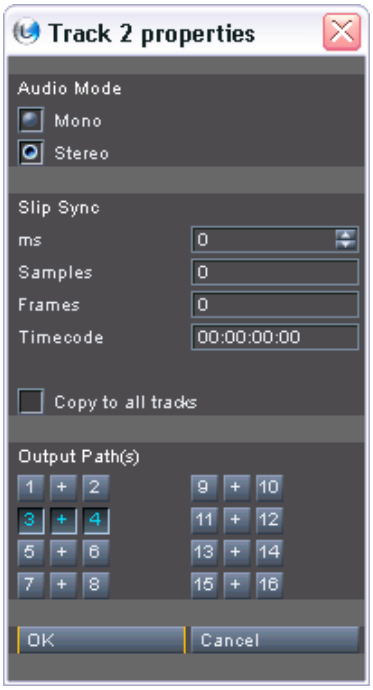


Figure 6-14: Window to configure the audio output settings

In the area **Audio Mode** select whether the audio mode of the track should be mono or stereo. The Edit Tool applies the selected audio mode directly to the respective audio track and it will be down- or up-mixed before it reaches any output.

While the smallest unit of a video clip is a single frame/field, the smallest unit of an audio clip is a sample. The DVS system provides up to 48,000 samples per second of audio (48 kHz) opposed to the respective video frequency setting (frames per second) for the video output. With the area **Slip Sync** you can bring your video and audio output into synchronization by adjusting the audio offset. For this the area provides different settings items where you can specify the positive or negative offset value either in milliseconds, samples, frames, or via a timecode. If you adjust one setting, the other ones will be set accord-

ingly. With the check box **Copy to all tracks** the adjusted offset can be transferred to all other available audio tracks easily: Simply enable the check box and confirm your setting with the **OK** button to copy the synchronization settings to all audio tracks.

In the area **Output Path(s)** you can see the different digital audio channels that the DVS system provides. With a click on the respective button select the digital audio channel(s) that should be used for the output. An activated **+** button between two channels configures the two channels to stereo.

With the settings of the area **Audio Mode** and the ones of the area **Output Path(s)** you can mix the audio signals of your project according to your needs:

– If the audio clip in the timeline is in mono, it does not matter whether the audio track is set to stereo or mono. The output on all selected channels will be the same, i.e. the mono audio clip as it is available in the timeline.

Audio Clip	Audio Track	Output
Mono	Mono	Mono of clip
Mono	Stereo	Mono of clip



If the audio clip is in mono, the settings for the track's audio mode and the channel's **+** button provide, of course, no function regardless of their setting.

– If the audio clip in the timeline is in stereo and the audio track is configured to mono, the clip will be downmixed by the Edit Tool. On all selected channels you will receive the same signal.

Audio Clip	Audio Track	Output	
		Channel A	Channel B
Stereo	Mono	Mono of stereo clip	Mono of stereo clip

– If the audio clip in the timeline is in stereo and the audio track is configured to stereo, the output will depend on the state of the **+** button, i.e. whether the channels are configured as stereo or mono channels: When the channels are set to mono, a mono signal

of the downmixed stereo clip will be provided. If the channels are set to stereo, a standard stereo signal will be output.

Audio Clip	Audio Track	Output		
		+ Button	Channel A	Channel B
Stereo	Stereo	Mono (button deactivated)	Mono of stereo clip	Mono of stereo clip
Stereo	Stereo	Stereo (button activated)	Channel 1 (left) of stereo clip	Channel 2 (right) of stereo clip

Once the settings for the respective track are set, confirm and activate them with the button **OK** of the audio track properties window.

Audio will be given out via AES/EBU and embedded in the video signal simultaneously.

Via the **SETTINGS...** button in the timeline area of the Edit Tool (see section “How to Configure the Video Output” on page 6-12) you can configure the analog audio outputs (see section “Further Audio Configurations” on page 6-17) and the maximum amount of audio channels that will be embedded in the video signal.

6.2.7 Further Audio Configurations

Via the **SETTINGS...** button you can configure the analog audio outputs to monitor audio during your work with the software. It is located at the top left side of the timeline area. After pressing this button the **’Timeline output settings’** window is displayed.



At the bottom of this window you can find the **Options** area where further optional settings are provided. To the right you can find the settings items for a further configuration of audio:

The other items available in the **Options** area are explained in their respective sections (see section “Changing the Layout of the Timeline Area” on page 6-6, section “Loading and Applying a 3D LUT File” on page 6-18, section “Cropping the Timeline” on page 6-21, and section “Burn-in Information at the Output(s)” on page 6-25).



Figure 6-15: Items for a further configuration of audio

In detail this area provides the following items:

Audio Scrubbing — If this check box is activated, the contents of the audio tracks will be given out during a scrubbing of the Edit Tool's timeline, for example, when making a fast shuttle operation with the mouse. Then the audio signal resembles and imitates a fast shuttle operation of a VTR.

MONITORING... — The button **MONITORING...** configures the analog audio outputs of the DVS system. A click on this button opens the following window:



Figure 6-16: Analog audio configuration

The settings **Output A** and **Output B** configure the first and second analog monitoring output of the DVS system respectively. Select from the combo boxes the audio channels that should be given out at the respective analog output.

Once everything is set as desired, the audio configuration is complete and you can monitor the audio output as configured via the analog and digital audio outputs of the DVS system.

6.2.8 Loading and Applying a 3D LUT File

With a three-dimensional look-up table (3D LUT) file you can, for example, simulate the typical look of a projected motion picture film on a monitor connected to the digital video interfaces of the DVS system. The Edit Tool supports 3D look-up tables from various suppliers, such as ARRI or Kodak. To apply a 3D LUT you have to load its file first and

create a profile for it. Afterwards the loaded 3D LUT file has to be enabled for the DVS software.

The 3D LUT support of the DVS software is an optional feature. Depending on the configuration of your DVS system it may not be available.

Via the **SETTINGS...** button you can access the items to load a 3D LUT file into the Edit Tool. It is located at the top left side of the timeline area. After pressing this button the **'Timeline output settings'** window is displayed.



At the bottom of this window you can find the **Options** area where further optional settings are provided. To the right you can find the settings items to load a 3D LUT file:

The other items available in the **Options** area are explained in their respective sections (see section "Changing the Layout of the Timeline Area" on page 6-6, section "Further Audio Configurations" on page 6-17, section "Cropping the Timeline" on page 6-21, and section "Burn-in Information at the Output(s)" on page 6-25).



Figure 6-17: Items to load a 3D LUT file

After clicking on the button **3D LUT...** a window opens to load a 3D LUT file and create a profile for it:

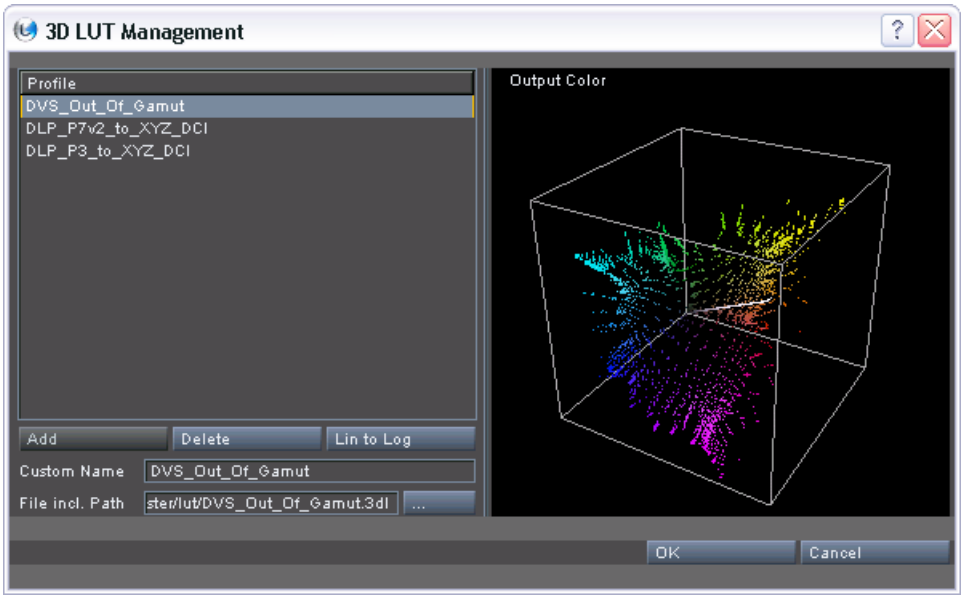


Figure 6-18: 3D LUT file management

To load and administer available 3D LUT files the window provides the following items:

Several sample LUT files are delivered with the DVS software. They can be found in the directory `lut` of the software's installation path (default: `C:\Program Files\DVS\Clipster`).

More detailed information about 3D LUT files can be found in section "3D LUT Files" on page A-14.

Profile — In the list box **Profile** you can see a list of the already specified 3D LUT file profiles. Each entry in this box represents one 3D LUT file. Select from this list box one entry, for instance, to change its settings, to delete it or to enable it.

ADD — Once a valid 3D LUT file is selected and a profile name is specified, you can add it to the list box above with the button **ADD**. Because one 3D LUT file can be applied to one profile only, with this button you can also change the name of an already created profile or assign another file to it.

DELETE — With the button **DELETE** you can delete an already specified 3D LUT file profile from the list box. Simply select an entry from the list box and press this button to delete it.

LIN TO LOG — Logarithmic 3D LUTs often expect logarithmic material in the timeline (color values for each image are stored logarithmically). With this button it is possible to virtually convert linear material in the timeline to a logarithmic color space before the 3D LUT is applied.

Custom Name — In the entry field **Custom Name** you can state the name of a 3D LUT profile. Either enter a new name or select an already created profile in the list box and change its name.

File incl. Path — In this entry field you have to enter the directory path and file name of the 3D LUT file. You may also click on the button to the right of the entry field (...) to select the file directly via the opening dialog window.

3D LUT Visualization — When a profile is selected from the list box, its 3D LUT file will be displayed in the preview area to the right in a color cube. Then you can view it in more detail by performing one of the following on the color cube:

– By pressing the left mouse button and moving the mouse you can rotate the color cube.
– By clicking with the scroll wheel or the right mouse button you can switch the output colors to the input colors and vice versa. The one currently displayed will be indicated at the top of the preview area.
– By turning the scroll wheel of the mouse you can morph the colors in the cube from output to input and vice versa. The degree of the morphing will be indicated at the top of the preview area.

Once at least one profile is available in the list box, you can enable it for the Edit Tool. For this the desired profile name has to be selected from the list box and your selection has to be confirmed with the **OK** button. The button **CANCEL** it will close the window for the 3D LUT management without confirming any of the alterations.

Nevertheless, the selected 3D LUT profile and file will be in effect for the timeline only if the check box **Video-3D LUT** is activated which is available in the **Options** area of the **'Timeline output settings'** window.



Figure 6-19: Activation of the 3D LUT profile

Then the selected profile and its 3D LUT file will be applied to the material in the timeline of the Edit Tool.

6.2.9 Cropping the Timeline



Via the **SETTINGS...** button you can crop the contents of the timeline, for example, if you need black bars in the video output. The button is located at the top left side of the timeline area and after pressing it the **'Timeline output settings'** window is displayed on the screen.

At the bottom of this window you can find further optional settings in the **Options** area. To the right you can find the settings to crop the video output:

The other items available in the **Options** area are explained in their respective sections (see section “Changing the Layout of the Timeline Area” on page 6-6, section “Further Audio Configurations” on page 6-17, section “Loading and Applying a 3D LUT File” on page 6-18, and section “Burn-in Information at the Output(s)” on page 6-25).

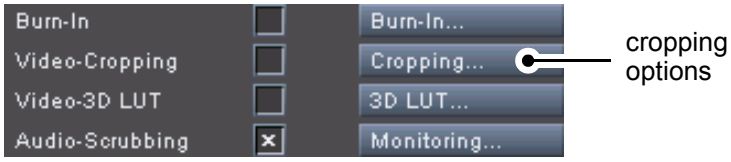


Figure 6-20: Items to crop the timeline

With these items you can adjust and crop the output image, for example, to add black bars to your video output. A click on the button **CROPPING...** opens the following settings window:

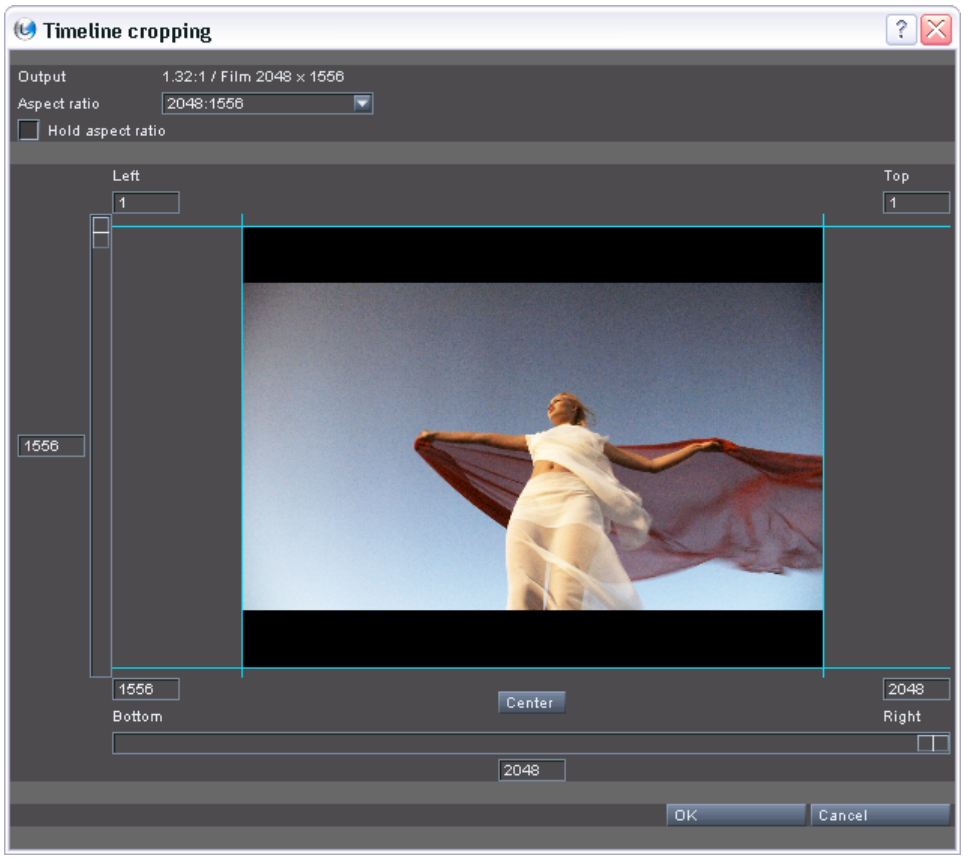


Figure 6-21: Window to crop the video output

During configuring, the cropping will appear in the video overlay and at the video output of the DVS system. However, this is temporary and for monitoring reasons only. To apply the settings to the timeline the cropping has to be activated with the check box **Video-Cropping** in the **Options** area of the **'Timeline output settings'** window (see below).

At the top of the **'Timeline cropping'** window you can find items to control the aspect ratio of the cropped image.

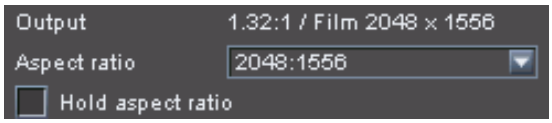


Figure 6-22: Aspect ratio controls

The **Output** information at the top provides you with details about the currently set video format and its aspect ratio. Directly below it you can find the **Aspect ratio** combo box where you can either select one of the predefined aspect ratios from the provided list or simply enter the desired ratio in the field of the combo box directly. You can enter the aspect ratio in any format you like either by typing in a floating point number or its original division formula. The cropping will be applied to the video output representation, the video overlay as well as to the video output directly as soon as a predefined aspect ratio is selected or a typed in value is confirmed by pressing the [Enter] key.

Notation:	Floating point or division (`x:y`)
Examples:	`1.77777778`
	`16:9`

With the **Hold aspect ratio** check box you can lock the aspect ratio selected with the combo box above. Then, when changes are applied manually to the cropping (e.g. via the entry fields or the sliders), the chosen aspect ratio will be maintained.

In the middle of the window you can find a representation of your current video output. With the items provided by and positioned around the image you can change the cropping manually:

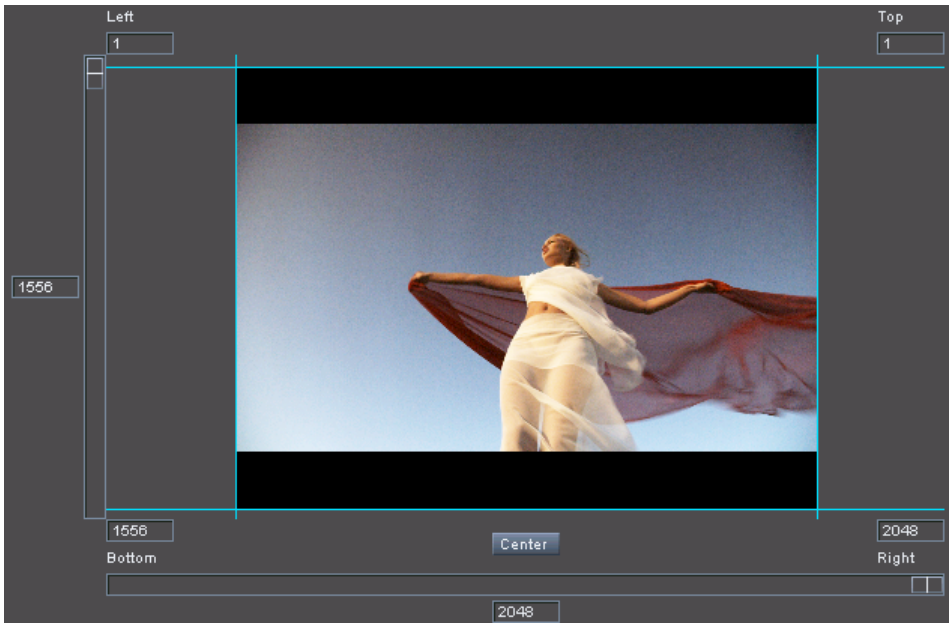


Figure 6-23: Manual controls of cropping

To change the cropping manually use, for example, the entry fields and type in the desired values (in pixels). The cropping will be applied to the representation as well as to your video output as soon as a value is confirmed by pressing the [Enter] key.

You may also use the sliders at the bottom and to the left to change the cropping. Furthermore, you can select the cropping borders as well as the cropped image to adjust the cropping manually. The sliders as well as the entry fields and, if applicable, the aspect ratio will be altered accordingly:

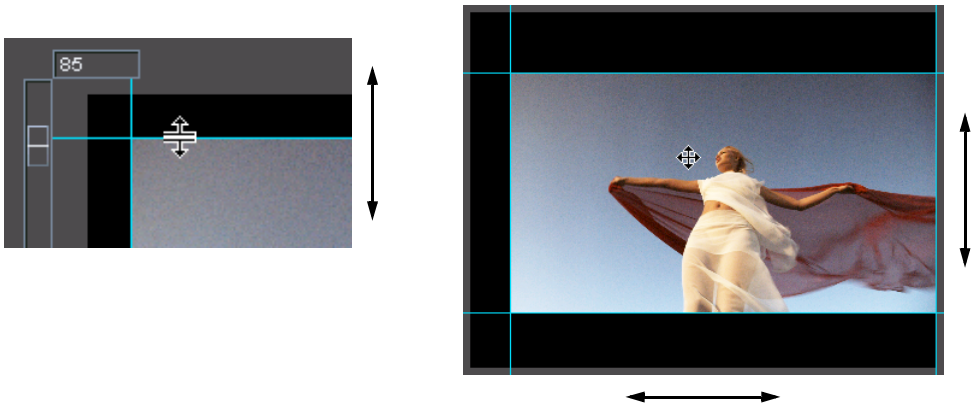


Figure 6-24: Adjusting the cropping manually with the mouse

The button **CENTER** is a toggle button. Once activated, the cropped image will be centered in the representation and locked there. With this, when changes are applied to the cropping, the cropped part will always stay in the middle of the image.

Once everything is set as desired, confirm your selection with the **OK** button at the bottom of the **'Timeline cropping'** window. The button **CANCEL** will close the window for the cropping settings without confirming any of the alterations.

However, the cropping will be in effect for the timeline only if the check box **Video-Cropping** in the **Options** area of the **'Timeline output settings'** window is activated.



Figure 6-25: Activation of the cropping of the timeline

Then the configured cropping will be applied to the whole timeline of the Edit Tool.

The color value of the black bars added to the timeline via cropping and played out via the DVS system depends on the setting for the color space range specified in the video output settings. Via the color space range settings you determine whether this value is given out in a restricted (e.g. with a value of 16, setting: `Head`) or in a full value range (with a value of 0, setting: `Full`). Further information about color space ranges and how to set them can be found in the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.

6.2.10 Burn-in Information at the Output(s)

CLIPSTER offers you the possibility to display static (e.g. comments) as well as variable information (e.g. timecode, frame or keycode information) at some SDI outputs. These information will then be shown in superimposed boxes (windows) that can be positioned freely in the output image.

For information about the output ports where the burn-in information will be displayed, please refer to the "CLIPSTER" hardware guide.

Via the **SETTINGS...** button you can access the items to configure the burn-in information. It is located at the top left side of the timeline area. After pressing this button the **'Timeline output settings'** window is displayed.



At the bottom of this window you can find the **Options** area where further optional settings are provided. To the right you can find the settings items for the burn-in feature:

The other items available in the **Options** area are explained in their respective sections (see section “Changing the Layout of the Timeline Area” on page 6-6, section “Further Audio Configurations” on page 6-17, section “Loading and Applying a 3D LUT File” on page 6-18, and section “Cropping the Timeline” on page 6-21).



Figure 6-26: Items for the burn-in feature

After clicking on the button **BURN-IN...** a window opens that allows you to configure the burn-in information:

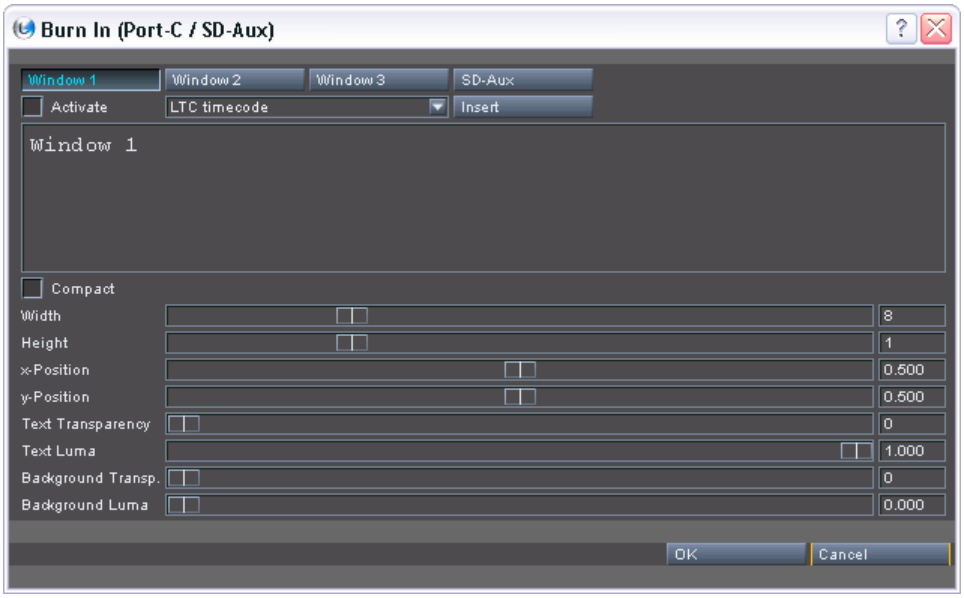


Figure 6-27: Configurations for burn-in information

With the buttons at the top of the window you can switch between the windows that can be configured for a display at the output. Additionally, there may be buttons available which allow you to configure burn-in information for special outputs.

Whenever a configuration setting cannot be applied to the selected output, it will be unavailable.

The following settings items are available for the windows:

Activate	With this check box you can activate or deactivate the window for the output signal.
combo box **INSERT**	From the combo box select variable information that should be displayed in the window. Then insert a place holder for this information in the entry field with the button **INSERT**. It will be inserted at the current position of the cursor.
entry field	In the entry field enter the information that should be displayed at the output. Static information can simply be typed in, while variable information have to be inserted with the items described above.
Compact	This check box increases the amount of characters that can be entered in one line of the window by using a font with slim characters.
Width **Height**	These sliders and their entry fields to the right alter the width and height of the window displayed at the output.
x-Position **y-Position**	These sliders and their entry fields to the right determine the position of the window at the output. The reference point is the top left corner of the window and it can be positioned in percent between 0 (0 %) and 1 (100 %) of the width/height of the output raster.  Windows cannot be positioned outside the output image nor on top of each other.
Text Transparency	Sets the transparency of the characters.
Text Luma	Sets the luminance of the characters continuously between 0 (black) and 1 (white).
Background Transp.	Sets the transparency of the background of the window.
Background Luma	Sets the luminance of the window's background continuously between 0 (black) and 1 (white).

Once your settings for the window are complete, make sure it is activated with the respective check box and confirm your settings with the **OK** button. The button **CANCEL** will close the window to configure the burn-in information without confirming any changes.

However, the configured burn-in information will be in effect only if the check box **Burn-In** is activated which is available in the **Options** area of the **'Timeline output settings'** window.



Figure 6-28: Activation of the burn-in feature

Then the configured window(s) will be applied to the digital video output(s) of the DVS system.

6.2.11 Naming Tracks

When working with a lot of timeline tracks, each can be given a name of its own to distinguish between them more easily. For this simply type in in the entry field right above the buttons a name. You can give track names to all tracks available in the timeline area:



Figure 6-29: Example of track names

Due to the fact that the area preceding each track will always be visible in the timeline area of the Edit Tool, it may help you to identify individual tracks more easily.

6.3 Controlling the Timeline

Most work is performed in the timeline of the Edit Tool directly. In the timeline you can arrange the sequence of video clips, cut the material or set transitions and other operators for the clips. Furthermore, you can play out the timeline, either the whole timeline or a defined range of the timeline.

This section explains in detail how to control the timeline. Among others it will be explained how to move within the timeline and how to set an in- and outpoint for the timeline to play out or finalize the selected range only.

6.3.1 Moving within the Timeline

The Edit Tool provides two representations of the timeline in its user interface: There is the timeline with timeline scale and audio and video tracks in the timeline area, and there is a scrub bar of the timeline in the control area of the Edit Tool. Both can be used to move within your project. Nevertheless, other functions and items to move inside the timeline are provided by the Edit Tool as well.

All ways to move in the timeline are explained in the following.

Moving via the Timeline Scale

With the timeline scale you can move within your project and position the timeline cursor.

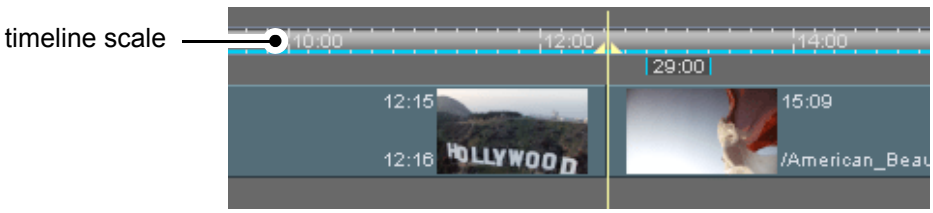


Figure 6-30: The timeline scale

To move within your project click on a point in the scale and the timeline cursor will be positioned there. Additionally, by selecting the cursor and moving it to the left or right you can scrub the visible part of the timeline.

This part of the timeline together with the video and audio tracks can be scaled from a full view of the timeline to a partial view that consists of a few frames only. Via the sliders below the audio tracks in the timeline area you can change the view of the timeline and thus move easily within your project:



Figure 6-31: Timeline sliders

With the left slider you can zoom in or out of the timeline (keyboard shortcuts [Up Arrow] and [Down Arrow]). If the slider is set to the left-most point, you are able to see the whole contents of the timeline. When it is set more to the right, you will zoom into the timeline.

When you have zoomed into the timeline, you can change the viewing position of the timeline with the right slider. You can go to the end of the timeline by pulling this slider to the right, and to the beginning of the timeline by pulling it to the left.

Via the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide) you can set the way the Edit Tool performs a zooming on the timeline. There you can set whether the zooming should occur on the position of the timeline cursor or on the current viewing position of the timeline.

The cursor of the timeline provides a special feature when zoomed far into the timeline: Then it provides a frame-end marker which indicates where this particular image ends in the timeline.

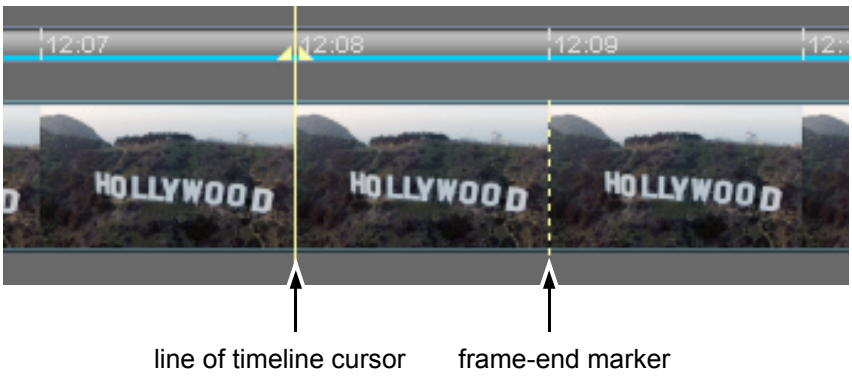


Figure 6-32: Timeline cursor when zoomed into the timeline

As you can see in the figure above the frame selected with the cursor is the 8th frame of the 12th second and it ends where the 9th frame starts. The frame-end marker is very useful when you want to perform frame accurate cuts or other edit works.

Moving via the Scrub Bar of the Control Area

In contrast to the timeline of the timeline area the scrub bar of the control area always shows the complete timeline of the loaded project. It can also be used to move within your project:



Figure 6-33: The scrub bar

There are several ways to move within your project with the scrub bar of the control area:

- Select the scrub bar cursor ( ) with the mouse and move it to the left or right to the desired position.
- Click anywhere below or above the scrub bar to position the scrub bar cursor there instantly.
- Click on a position on the scrub bar outside the visible part of the timeline to move the scrub bar cursor there instantly.
- You can also move the visible part of the timeline on the scrub bar to the left or right with the mouse to select another part of the timeline in the timeline area for viewing.

Further information about the scrub bar can be found in section “The Scrub Bar of the Control Area” on page 5-9.

Other Ways to Move within the Timeline

For a frame accurate moving or to play out and review the timeline you may use the controls of the control area of the Edit Tool. With them you can jump to cutting points and timeline markers or step one frame for- or backward. They are in detail described in section “Controls” on page 5-11.

Of course, via a play-out you can also move within the timeline. There are several ways to play out the timeline:

- You can play out the whole timeline,
- you can review a part of the timeline, and
- you can play out a part of the timeline.

The first two are also initiated via their respective controls of the Edit Tool (the play and **REVIEW** button). However, to play out a defined part of the timeline only, you have to set an in- and outpoint for the timeline. How to do this is described in section "Setting an In- and Outpoint for the Timeline" on page 6-32. Once they are set, you can initiate a play-out of the defined range with the play button of the controls (see section "Controls" on page 5-11).

In addition to the controls of the user interface, there are a lot of keyboard shortcuts available. These complement the controls (some of them even do not have a control element in the user interface) and you can use them for a faster working with the software. A list of all keyboard shortcuts can be found in section "Keyboard Shortcuts" on page A-7.

6.3.2 Setting an In- and Outpoint for the Timeline

With the button **DELETE** and the in- and outpoint items of the timeline area you can set an in- and outpoint for the timeline. A play-out and finalizing (if set accordingly) will then be performed in the defined range between in- and outpoint only.

The way the timeline is played out can be configured with the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more information). The way a finalizing is performed can be configured during the setup of the finalizing process (see section "Finalizing the Timeline" on page 6-80).



The **DELETE** button is a toggle button. If it is activated (

), you can delete the in- or outpoint by clicking the in- or outpoint button. Regardless of the position of the timeline cursor the in-/outpoint will be deleted.

If the **DELETE** button is deactivated, a click on the in- or outpoint button will set the inpoint or outpoint respectively at the current position of the timeline cursor.



To position the in- and outpoint frame accurately you may use the in- and outpoint entry fields. Simply type in in the entry field to the right of the in- or outpoint button the position of the in-/outpoint that should be set for the timeline of the Edit Tool. Then press [Enter] to confirm it. The in- or outpoint will be set accordingly. Further information about timecode and frame number entry fields can be found in section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17.

The inpoint button sets or deletes the inpoint of the timeline depending on the state of the **DELETE** button. When setting, the inpoint will be set at the position of the timeline cursor.

The outpoint button sets or deletes the outpoint of the timeline depending on the state of the **DELETE** button. When setting, the outpoint will be set at the position of the timeline cursor.

With a set in- and outpoint of the timeline the length of the currently selected range will be indicated in the field directly below the timeline scale:

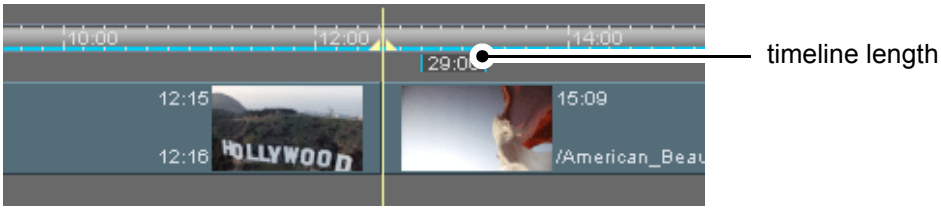


Figure 6-34: Timeline length indicator

Setting an In-/Outpoint

To set an in-/outpoint perform the following:

- Move the timeline cursor via its controls or manually (see section "Moving within the Timeline" on page 6-29) to the position where the in-/outpoint should be set.
- Press the in- or outpoint button ( ).

An in-/outpoint can only be defined once. If you set it anew, the previous one will be replaced.

To set an in- or outpoint you may also use the entry fields to the right of the buttons.

The in-/outpoint will be set at this position. The still selected part of the timeline will be displayed as usual whereas the deselected part is shown in a dimmed fashion in the video and audio tracks. Furthermore, in the timeline scale the selected part of the timeline will be marked with a blue line and the length of the timeline currently selected by the in- and outpoint will be displayed by the length indicator right below the timeline scale:

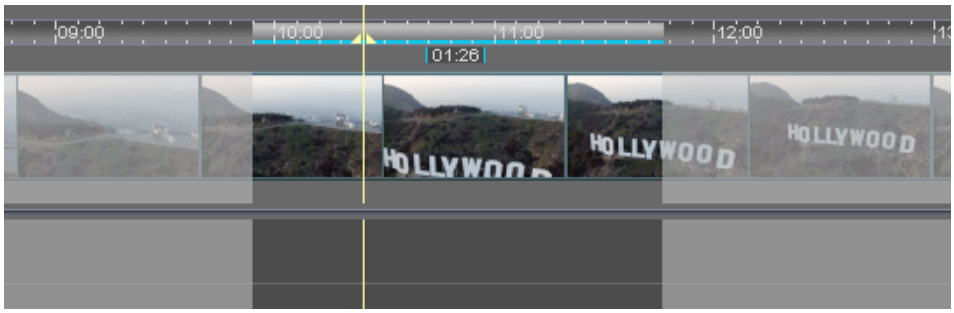


Figure 6-35: Timeline with set in- and outpoint

With a set in- and outpoint a play-out of the timeline will then be performed between in- and outpoint only if set accordingly via the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide).

Deleting an In-/Outpoint

To delete an in-/outpoint perform the following:

- Press the button **DELETE** to activate the deletion mode for the in- and outpoint.
- Click the in-/outpoint button ( ).

The in-/outpoint will be deleted. If both are deleted, the whole timeline will be available again for a play-out.

6.3.3 The Insert/Overwrite Mode of the Timeline

The **INSERT** button toggles between the insert and overwrite mode of the Edit Tool.

Insert Mode

In the insert mode, a moved or added clip is inserted between the video material already present in the timeline. The video material behind the insertion point is moved backward from its position



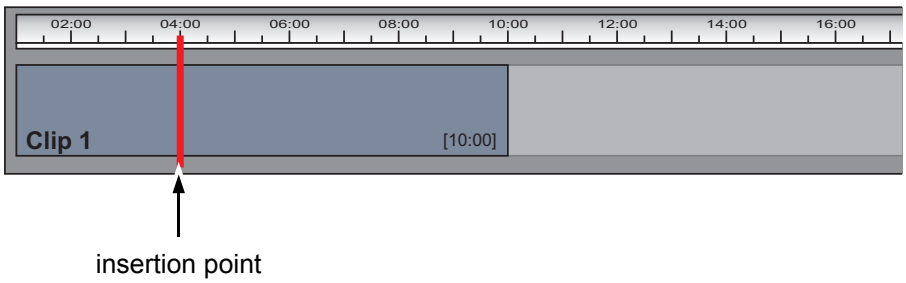
on the timeline. In the insert mode no video material will be overwritten and intact (undivided) clips will be divided at the insertion point.

To set a transition in the insert mode there must be enough head and tail available, otherwise the **TRANS** button will not be available. For more information about transitions see section "Setting Transitions" on page 6-44.

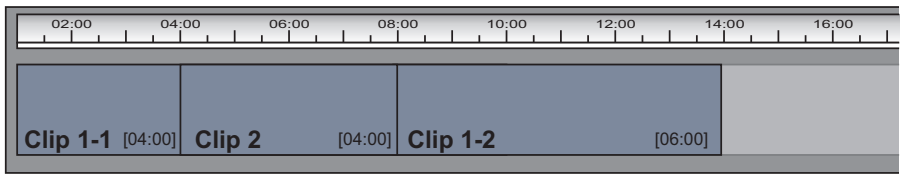
When working with attached clips in the timeline, the overwrite mode is activated automatically. Then you cannot switch to the insert mode anymore. Further information about this and the attachment of clips can be found in section "Attaching Audio Clips to Video Clips" on page 6-55.

Example:

With the insert mode activated add a clip from the bin to the timeline or move a clip to the middle of an intact clip:



The result will be that clip no. 1 gets divided at the insertion point: The added clip no. 2 will be placed here while the rest of clip no. 1 moves to the end of clip no. 2:



The gist of the insert mode is that the contents of the timeline will be preserved at all times and that no clips will be deleted. Furthermore, during your editing work the clips will always stay in connection with previous or following clips so that no gaps will occur in the timeline.

Overwrite Mode

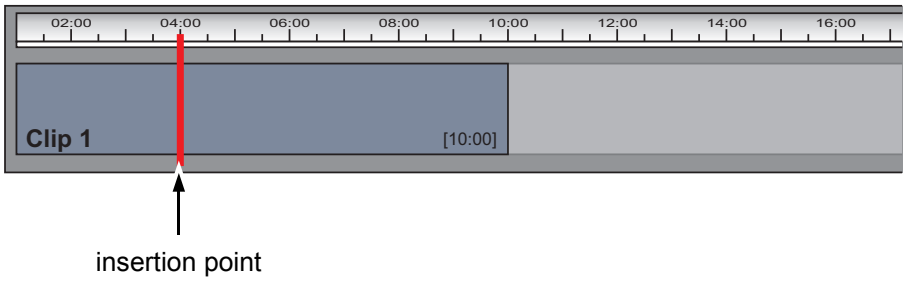
In the overwrite mode a moved or added clip replaces the video material behind the insertion point.



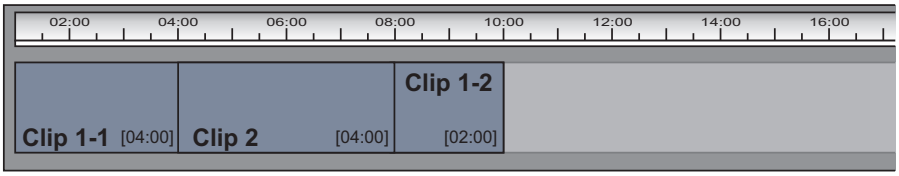
In the overwrite mode you can set a transition between two neighboring clips at all times. If needed, the Edit Tool will create the necessary head and tail automatically. This means that parts of the clips may be moved to enable the transition which, in turn, may cause gaps in the timeline. For more information about transitions see section "Setting Transitions" on page 6-44.

Example:

With the overwrite mode activated add a clip from the bin to the timeline or move a clip to the middle of an intact clip:



The result will be that clip no. 1 gets divided at the insertion point: The added clip no. 2 will be placed here while the rest of clip no. 1 is overwritten:



When moving or adding clips in the timeline with the overwrite mode activated, gaps may occur in the timeline (no content to output in this part of the timeline). Further information about gaps and how to close them can be found in section "Moving Clips within the Timeline" on page 6-38.

6.3.4 Muting and Locking Tracks

The video and audio tracks of the Edit Tool can be muted and/or locked independently, i.e. they can be enabled or disabled for a play-out as well as for an editing work. If a track is muted, its content will not be played out; if it is locked, no editing work, such as a cutting of clips, can be performed in this track.

To lock or mute a track you have to use the buttons available in the areas right in front of the tracks. The button **M** mutes the track (bar it from an output), while the button **L** locks it (bar it from an editing work):



Figure 6-36: Buttons to lock and mute tracks

With the **M** and **L** buttons to the left side of the timeline scale you can mute and lock all video and audio tracks with one click (master mute/lock). Afterwards you may use the mute and lock buttons of individual tracks to enable them for the respective work again. This may be especially useful when working with a lot of tracks.

When locking tracks and thus preserving them from changes, the locked tracks will appear dimmed in the timeline area.

6.4 Working with the Timeline in General

After adding clips to the timeline (see section “Adding Clips to the Timeline” on page 6-2), you can begin your editing work by, for example, altering the sequence of clips, cutting clips or defining transitions.

To view your work on an additionally connected monitor, you have to configure the output format of the timeline accordingly (see section “How to Configure the Video Output” on page 6-12).

Performing editing work on clips in the timeline of the Edit Tool is very easy because most editing functions are immediately at hand where they are needed most. For example, the transition properties can be accessed directly from its visible part in a video track.

You can use the video overlay of the Edit Tool to monitor and check the progress of your work. Most of the time the editing work and its output effect can be seen in the video overlay instantly. For example, clips of different sizes in the video track(s) of the timeline may be cropped, stretched or compressed, or scaled according to your settings for the respective clips and your output settings. All these effects can be viewed instantaneously via the video overlay of the control area.

The DVS software uses only representations of the original material on the storage for the clips in the bin and the timeline. All editing tasks are performed virtually and at all times your original material will never be altered.

This section describes how to work with the timeline of the Edit Tool in general.

6.4.1 Moving Clips within the Timeline

To arrange the clips in the desired sequence on the timeline as they should be played out in the end, you may have to move clips within the timeline which is very easy with the Edit Tool. Simply select a clip and drag it with the mouse to the desired position on the timeline.

Although the following is shown with video clips, the same applies to audio clips as well.

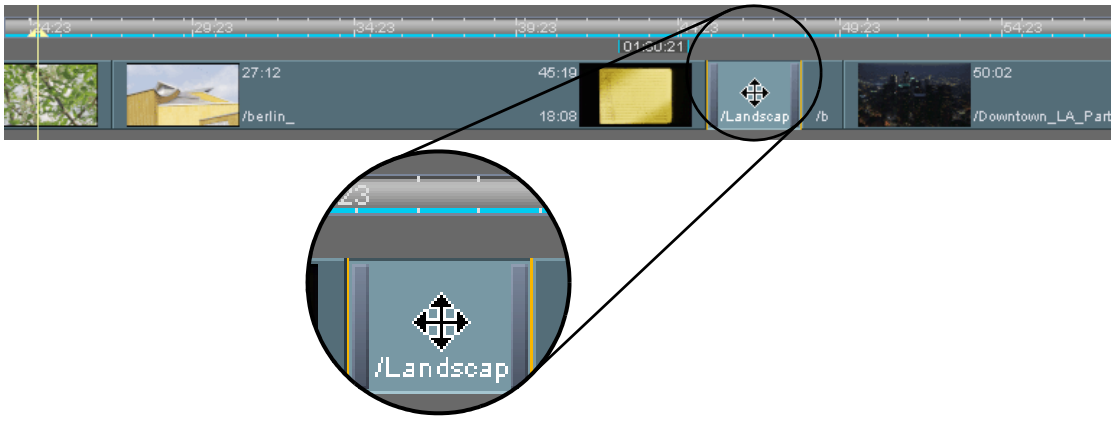


Figure 6-37: Moving a clip

With the insert mode activated, if a clip is moved to a cutting point, the clip will be inserted there while the rest of the material moves backwards in the timeline. If it is dropped in the middle of another clip, this clip will be divided and its rest as well as the rest of the track's contents will be moved to the end of the inserted clip.

This behavior depends on the selected mode of the timeline. With the overwrite mode activated, the moved clip will overwrite the contents of the track from the point of the insertion on. See section "The Insert/Overwrite Mode of the Timeline" on page 6-34 for more details.

When the moved clip comes close to certain elements of the timeline, it will automatically snap and position itself to these elements. This is called the snapping mode of the Edit Tool. It makes an easy positioning of elements possible. The moved clip will react to the following elements:

- Starting point of timeline
- Start and end points of timeline elements (e.g. clips and transitions)
- The position of the timeline cursor
- Set in- and outpoint of the timeline

You can disable the snapping mode and activate a fine tuning mode by pressing the [Shift] key.

In the overwrite mode when moving clips or performing other work, gaps may occur in the timeline. A gap means that a clip is no longer in connection with previous or following clips in the timeline, and when played out, there will be nothing to output in this part of the timeline. A gap is indicated by the Edit Tool via a red line in the timeline scale:

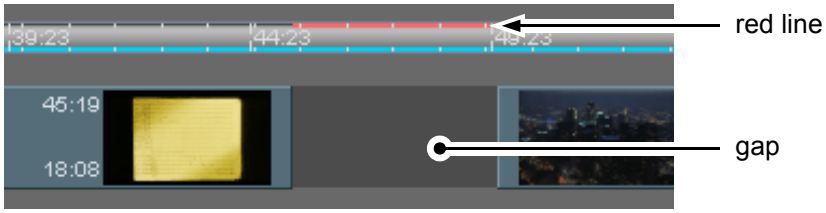


Figure 6-38: A gap in the timeline

Then you either have to move the other clips respectively or fill the gap by adding another clip (see section “Adding Clips of a Certain Length to the Timeline” on page 6-41).

Additionally, you have the possibility at hand to close the gap automatically. When positioning the mouse cursor over a gap (red line) on the timeline scale it will change its appearance to a hand. Then you can close the gap with a double-click of the mouse.

The starting point of a gap as well as its end are recognized by the Edit Tool as cutting points. Thus, you can move frame accurately to gaps easily via the control buttons that jump to cutting points (see section “Controls” on page 5-11).

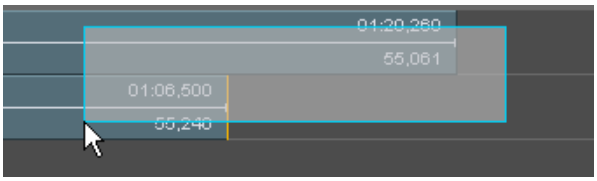
6.4.2 Selecting Clips

Clips can be selected or deselected in the timeline easily. For this perform one of the following procedures or their combination:

Although the table below describes how to select clips only, most procedures can be used to deselect clips as well.

Some of the following procedures are restricted to their type of track, i.e. restricted to either video or audio tracks.

Individual clips	Individual clips can be selected with a click of the mouse on the respective clip.
Several clips	Several clips can be selected disjointedly when clicking them while holding down the [Ctrl] key at the same time.

Range of clips	A range of adjoining clips can be selected by clicking one clip (the starting clip) and afterwards holding down the [Shift] key while clicking the clip that marks the end of the range.
	You can also select a range of clips by drawing a rectangle with the mouse over the clips that you want to select. The starting point of the rectangle has to be on an empty part of the timeline track.  *Figure 6-39: Drawing a selection rectangle*
All clips	All clips in the timeline area can be selected in one step by using the menu option ***Select all*** of a timeline track's context menu.

6.4.3 Cutting, Copying or Pasting Clips

Bin clips and timeline elements can be cut or copied to the clipboard of the operating system and afterwards pasted again at the location of your choice. Further information about this can be found in section "Cutting, Copying or Pasting Clips" on page 4-18.

6.4.4 Adding Clips of a Certain Length to the Timeline

If you want to fill a gap in the timeline or fill a particular part of the timeline with other video or audio material, you can add a clip to the timeline with the help of the timeline's in- and outpoint (3-point and 4-point editing). This will then fill the selected, particular part of the timeline.

To add a clip of a certain length to a particular part of the timeline perform the following:

- Move the timeline cursor to the position on the timeline where the clip to be added should start (see also section "Moving within the Timeline" on page 6-29).
- Click the inpoint button of the timeline area ( ).

This will set the inpoint of the timeline to the current position of the timeline cursor.

- Now move the timeline cursor to the position on the timeline where the clip to be added should end.
- Click the outpoint button of the timeline area ().

After this you have set the in- and outpoint of the timeline to the position and length of the clip that it should provide after the adding procedure. For more information about the setting of the in- and outpoint of the timeline see section "Setting an In- and Outpoint for the Timeline" on page 6-32.

- Next prepare the clip to be added to the timeline as indicated in section "Adding Clips to the Timeline" on page 6-2, for example, by determining its in- and outpoint.



When adding a clip via the source-edit mode of the control area, you do not have to define an outpoint for the clip necessarily. The clip will be cut to its correct length automatically due to the set outpoint in the timeline.

For the next step you have to observe the insert/overwrite mode: In the insert mode the contents of the timeline as it is will be preserved and moved backwards in the timeline while in the overwrite mode it will be overwritten (see also section "The Insert/Overwrite Mode of the Timeline" on page 6-34):

- Add the clip to the timeline as described in section "Adding Clips to the Timeline" on page 6-2 and drag it to the set inpoint of the timeline.

With the snapping mode active the clip will adjust itself automatically at the inpoint of the timeline when the mouse cursor is in close proximity to it. After releasing the mouse button the clip will be added to the timeline at the exact position. Furthermore, if its length exceeds the length of the marked part of the timeline via in- and outpoint, it will be trimmed to the exact length determined by the outpoint of the timeline automatically.



The length of a timeline element, i.e. its outpoint, can also be adjusted frame accurately with its timeline element properties (see section "General Items of the Properties Area" on page 7-3).

6.4.5 Deleting Timeline Elements in a Specified Range

You can delete all timeline elements in a specified range of the timeline easily. To determine the range and part of the timeline where the deletion should occur you have to use the timeline's in- and outpoint. Afterwards all timeline elements between the in- and outpoint of the timeline can be deleted.

- Move the timeline cursor to the position on the timeline where the range should begin (see also section “Moving within the Timeline” on page 6-29).
- Click the inpoint button of the timeline area ( ).

This will set the inpoint of the timeline to the current position of the timeline cursor.

- Now move the timeline cursor to the position on the timeline where the range should end.
- Click the outpoint button of the timeline area ( ).

After this you have set the in- and outpoint of the timeline to determine the timeline part where all elements should be deleted from. For more information about the setting of the in- and outpoint of the timeline see section “Setting an In- and Outpoint for the Timeline” on page 6-32. Now you are able to delete the timeline elements:

- Call up the context menu of the timeline scale and select the menu option ***Delete from in to out***:

The menu option ***Delete from in to out*** will be available as soon as an in- and outpoint of the timeline are set.

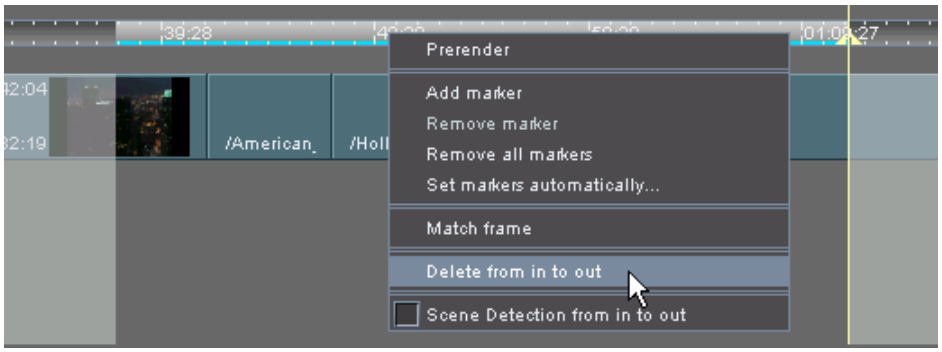


Figure 6-40: Deleting timeline elements from a timeline range

This will delete all timeline elements between the in- and outpoint of the timeline. If appropriate, the elements will be cut at the position of the in-/outpoint. Whether a gap occurs in this part of the timeline or the rest of the timeline is moved to the left to stay in direct connection with all previous timeline elements depends on the insert/overwrite mode of the timeline area (see also section “The Insert/Overwrite Mode of the Timeline” on page 6-34). When a track is locked (see section “Muting and Locking Tracks” on page 6-36), its timeline elements are not deleted.

6.4.6 Performing a Cut

Once at least one clip is present in the video or audio tracks of the timeline, you can cut the clip at a desired position. For this perform the following:

- Move the timeline cursor to the desired position in the timeline as described in section "Moving within the Timeline" on page 6-29.



When zoomed far into the timeline, the timeline cursor provides a frame-end marker that indicates where the selected frame ends in the timeline (see also section "Moving via the Timeline Scale" on page 6-29). This may help you during the positioning of the timeline cursor.

- Then press the button **+ EDIT**.

This will cut the clip and set a cutting/edit point at the selected position. Then you can, for example, delete one of these clips (select the clip and press the [Del] key on your keyboard), move it to another position (see section "Moving Clips within the Timeline" on page 6-38) or alter its properties differently (see chapter "Timeline Element Properties" on page 7-1). When a track is locked (see section "Muting and Locking Tracks" on page 6-36), its timeline element is not cut.



The length of a timeline element, i.e. its outpoint, can also be adjusted frame accurately with its timeline element properties (see section "General Items of the Properties Area" on page 7-3).

6.4.7 Setting Transitions

When at least two clips are present in a video track of the timeline you can set a transition between these two clips. After the setting of a transition you can change its properties or, if applicable, prerender the transition (see section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46). This section describes in the following the necessary procedures to apply transitions to cutting points on the timeline.

To apply a transition to a cutting point perform the following:

- Move the timeline cursor to the cutting point between the two clips with the respective controls (e.g.  , see also section "Moving within the Timeline" on page 6-29 and section "Controls" on page 5-11). If you activate the trim mode, the Edit Tool will automatically jump to the nearest cutting point (see section "The Trim Mode" on page 5-24).

This will make the button **TRANS** available in the user interface.

To set a transition there must be enough head and/or tail available of at least one clip to make a blending possible, otherwise the button **TRANS** will be unavailable. You can create the necessary head and tail manually by adjusting the in- and outpoint of clips (see section "Changing In- and Outpoints of Timeline Elements" on page 6-47).

If you are in the overwrite mode of the timeline, the Edit Tool will create the head and tail for the transition automatically. This means that parts of the clips will be moved for the transition. Due to the moving of the clips the creation of a transition in the overwrite mode may cause gaps in the timeline. More information about the overwrite mode can be found in section "Overwrite Mode" on page 6-35.

- Select the button **TRANS**.

A transition appears between the two clips (by default set to a 'Crossfade' wipe):

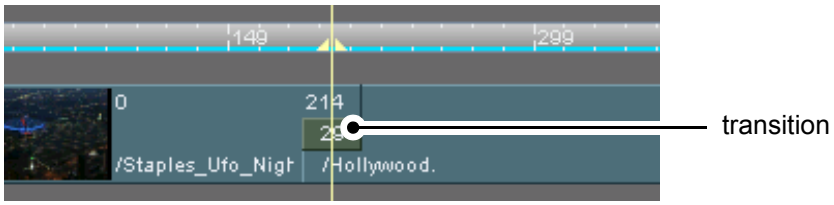


Figure 6-41: Transition between clips

The exact position of the transition depends on the available head and tail. If head and tail are sufficiently available for both clips, the transition will be positioned exactly in the middle of the timeline cursor.

The transition is now added to the timeline and you can proceed, for instance, by calling up its properties and altering them to adjust the transition to your needs. How to do this and the individual items available to change a transition are described in chapter "Timeline Element Properties" on page 7-1.

You can delete a transition the same way you delete a clip from the timeline. Simply select its visual representation in the timeline and press the key [Del] on your keyboard or select from its context menu the menu option ***Delete***.

Depending on the resolution of the material and the type of operators used in the timeline, it may be necessary to prerender the transition (see section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46).

6.4.8 Prerendering of Timeline Elements

When adding timeline elements, such as clips or operators, to the timeline, they are immediately tested for their real-time capability which depends on various factors, such as frame size, play-out frequency, location of the clip on the storage, etc. Those elements that exceed the real-time capability of the DVS system will be subject to a prerendering. Fact is, the greater the resolution of the material in the timeline and/or the video raster set for an output the more likely the chance that a prerendering is required. Then the system will not be able to handle the respective clip or operator in real time.

A prerendering may be indicated for all types of timeline elements, i.e. clips as well as operators (e.g. transitions). If any exceed the real-time capability of the DVS system, they will be marked for a prerendering. Further information about the real-time capability of clips can be found in section "Real-time Capability of Clips" on page 4-13.

A prerendering of timeline elements means that the Edit Tool calculates the elements before a play-out takes place and stores the calculated extra files (rendered images) in a temporary location on the storage. These are then used for a play-out instead of the original material in the timeline.

It is best to handle and administer the temporary data project specific, meaning for each project in a different temporary storage location. Further information about this can be found in section "Notes on Project Management" on page 2-14.

A part of the timeline that has to be prerendered before a play-out will be displayed with a yellow line in the timeline scale:

Depending on the optional features and the hardware equipment available, your DVS system may still be able to handle elements that are marked to be prerendered in real time. However, if non-real-time capable material is played out, frames will be dropped (see section "The Performance Monitor" on page 4-36). With operators that are not real-time capable, the system will simply not apply them. In both cases the material has to be prerendered prior to a play-out.

Whether the DVS software marks a timeline element to be prerendered, can to some degree be determined with a setting in the Configuration Tool. More information about this can be found in the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.

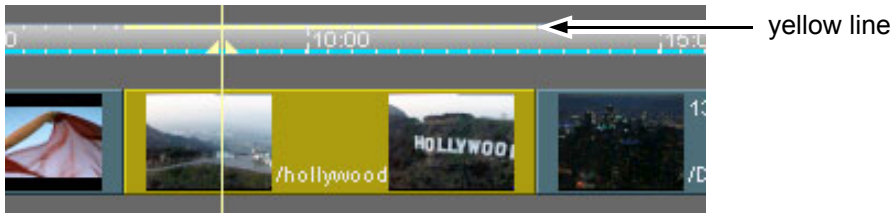


Figure 6-42: Timeline element marked for prerendering

Additionally, video clips that are subject to a prerendering will be marked in the timeline with colors:

yellow	The clip has to be prerendered (see figure above).
purple	The clip is currently prerendered. Its progress can be seen in the job list.
blue	The clip is already prerendered.

With a double-click of the mouse on the timeline scale below the yellow line you can start the prerendering process. Alternatively, you can use the menu option ***Prerender*** on the context menu of the timeline element. The progress of the rendering can be seen in the job list of the tab **Jobs** (see section "Jobs" on page 4-33).

You can delete prerendered data, for example, if it is no longer required, with the menu option ***Delete prerendering*** on the context menu of a video clip.

For more information about the prerendering process in general see section "Working in Real Time" on page 2-11.



After a prerendering save your project file. If an already saved project file is not saved after a prerendering process again, the prerendered files will not be recognized by the Edit Tool when the project file is loaded once more: They will not be used for a play-out and have to be deleted manually (as described in section "Cleaning Temporary Data Manually" on page A-21).



Also related to the prerendering of files is the ***Prerender all*** menu option on the menu ***Project*** (see section "Prerender all" on page 9-15).

6.4.9 Changing In- and Outpoints of Timeline Elements

Usually, before a clip is added to the timeline you adjust its in- and outpoint via the source-edit mode of the Edit Tool (see section "The Source-Edit Mode" on page 5-14). However, after clips or other timeline elements are added to the timeline you still have the possibility at hand to change their in- and outpoints.

There are two ways to change the in- and outpoints of timeline elements already added to the timeline:

1. You can change the in- and outpoint of adjacent clips to a cutting point via the trim mode of the Edit Tool, or
2. you can change the in- and outpoints manually in the timeline track directly.

Both procedures are detailed in this section.

While the trim mode is used for video material only, the changing of in- and outpoints in the timeline tracks can be used for all timeline elements, i.e. video clips, audio clips and embedded operators (e.g transitions).

For a frame accurate trimming of the in- and outpoints you may also use the appropriate keyboard shortcuts after the selection of the in-/outpoint handler (see also section "Keyboard Shortcuts" on page A-7). They can be used in the trim mode of the control area as well as in the timeline of the Edit Tool.

How to Change In-/Outpoints with the Trim Mode

With the trim mode of the Edit Tool you can change the in- and outpoint of adjacent video clips to a cutting point. You can activate the trim mode with its button from the controls of the Edit Tool ( , see section "Controls" on page 5-11).

When the trim mode is activated, the Edit Tool will automatically jump to the nearest cutting point in the video track(s) and the timeline cursor will be positioned accordingly. Furthermore, the control area then displays two video overlays. The left one shows the last frame of the clip left to the cut while the right one displays the inpoint and first frame of the clip to the right. You can then use the trim mode to change the in- and outpoint easily.

- Select the in-/outpoint handler in the scrub bar below each video overlay with the mouse and move it to the desired position for the respective clip.

  For a frame accurate trimming you may also use the controls below the two overlays (see section "The Trim Controls" on page 5-25).

  You cannot change the in-/outpoint beyond the limits of the original material on the storage.

Your alterations will be effective immediately in the timeline. After changing the settings of the handlers you can, for example, define a transition between the clips or perform a play-out.

More information about the trim mode and how to adjust an in- and outpoint in this mode can be found in section “The Trim Mode” on page 5-24.

The length of a timeline element, i.e. its outpoint, can also be adjusted frame accurately with its timeline element properties (see section “General Items of the Properties Area” on page 7-3).

How to Change In-/Outpoints in the Timeline

You can change in- and outpoints of timeline elements, such as a video clip, already added to the timeline. For this perform the following:

- Select from the clip’s representation its in- or outpoint handler and move it to the right or to the left to extend or reduce the clip’s length in the timeline.

You cannot change in- and outpoints beyond the limits of the original material on the storage.

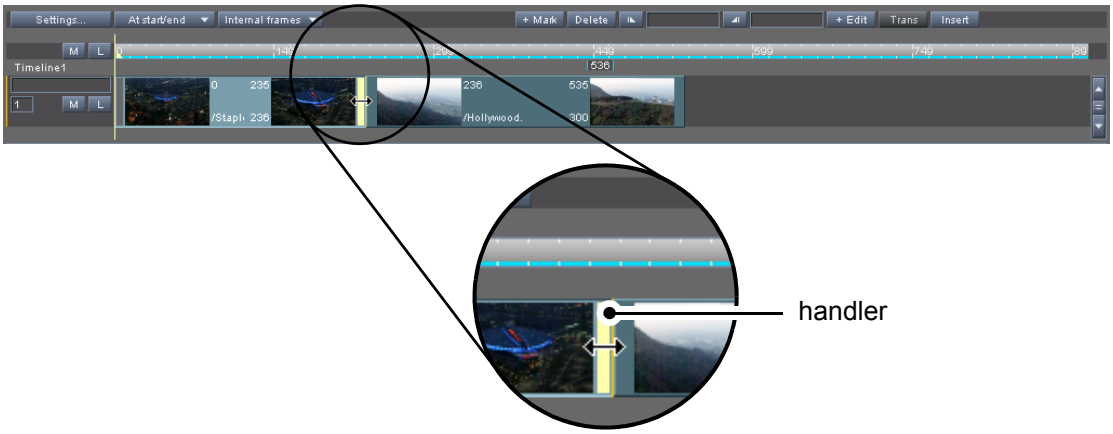


Figure 6-43: Changing of in- or outpoint

This will change the in- or outpoint of the clip accordingly.

This procedure can be used for all timeline elements, i.e. video clips, audio clips and embedded operators (e.g. transitions). To adjust their length in the timeline simply select their in-/outpoint handler and move it to the right or left of the timeline. The following figure shows, for example, how to change the length of a transition:

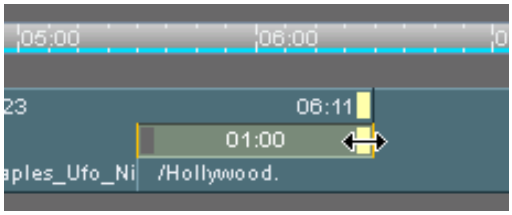


Figure 6-44: Changing the length of a transition

The length of a timeline element, i.e. its outpoint, can also be adjusted frame accurately with its timeline element properties (see section "General Items of the Properties Area" on page 7-3).

As long as the insert mode of the Edit Tool is active, the subsequent clips and embedded operators will automatically adjust their positions on the timeline respectively. When the Edit Tool is set to the overwrite mode, gaps may occur in the timeline. More information on this can be found in section "The Insert/Overwrite Mode of the Timeline" on page 6-34.

The in- or outpoint handler will react to certain elements of the timeline (snapping mode) to allow for an automated positioning. You can deactivate the snapping mode and activate a fine tuning mode by pressing the [Shift] key. Further information about the snapping mode can be found in section "Moving Clips within the Timeline" on page 6-38.

During the positioning of the in- or outpoint handler of clips you can see a representation of the length of the clip in its timeline track. The blue line right above the clip shows its original length:

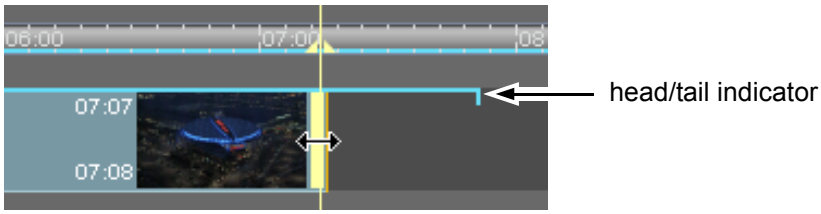


Figure 6-45: Display of original length of clip

With this you can easily determine whether and how much head or tail is available to, for example, create a transition.

6.4.10 Advanced Trimming

The advanced trimming features of the Edit Tool work the same way as the changing of in- and outpoints of elements already added to the timeline (see section "How to Change In-/Outpoints in the Timeline"

on page 6-49). They are available when you select two or more in- or outpoint handlers of timeline elements present in the timeline.

This procedure can be used for all timeline elements, i.e. video clips, audio clips and embedded operators (e.g. transitions).

For further, more general information about trimming see section "Changing In- and Outpoints of Timeline Elements" on page 6-47.

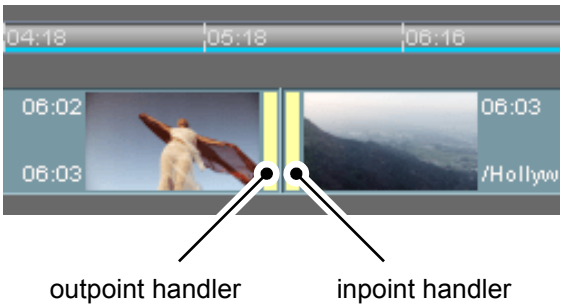


Figure 6-46: In- and outpoint handlers selected

To select more than one handler perform the following:

- Select one of the desired handlers with a click of the mouse.
- Hold down the [Ctrl] key while clicking on another handler with the mouse.
- Perform this step for as many additional handlers as you want.

After that you can click on one of the handlers and drag it to another position. The rest of the selected handlers will act accordingly.

To trim several in- or outpoint handlers there must be enough head and tail available for all selected timeline elements, otherwise a trimming will not be possible.

With the selection of more than one handler of timeline elements you have some advanced possibilities for trimming at hand:

– If you select the outpoint handler of one clip and the inpoint handler of the neighboring clip to the right (as can be seen in figure 6-46 on page 6-51), you can extend the length of one clip while shortening the length of the other at the same time. Thus the timeline length will be maintained.



Figure 6-47: Selected in- and outpoint handlers of neighboring clips

– If you select either two outpoint handlers or two inpoint handlers, you can adjust the length of the two clips simultaneously.

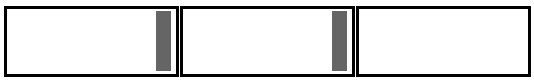


Figure 6-48: Two selected outpoint handlers

The following two trimming techniques are called 'slip and slide trimming'. These are two sophisticated trimming techniques which can be used for a frame accurate moving of in- and outpoints of clips while maintaining the length and duration of the timeline:

– Slide trimming: When you select one out- and one inpoint handler and thereby enclose another clip, you can change the out- and inpoint of the two clips while the enclosed clip is fully maintained, in its length as well as in its contents. This way you can alter the position of the enclosed clip while the timeline length remains constant.

slide trimming:



Figure 6-49: Enclosing a clip by selecting in-/outpoint handlers of neighboring clips

– Slip trimming: When you select the in- and outpoint handlers of one clip alone, you can change its in- and outpoint simultaneously. This will change the contents of the clip only. The length of the clip, its position and the length of the timeline is preserved.

slip trimming:



Figure 6-50: Changing the contents of a clip

6.4.11 Marking Positions in the Timeline

To mark certain positions in the timeline, e.g. to remind you to cut the clip at this position or other reasons, you can place timeline markers in the timeline of the Edit Tool.

timeline marker

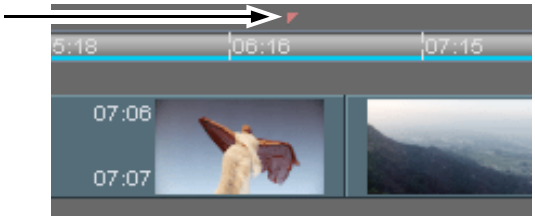


Figure 6-51: Timeline marker in timeline

Once one or more markers are placed in the timeline you can easily jump to them with the respective controls ( ) of the control area (see section “Controls” on page 5-11).

The appearance of timeline markers can be configured to your liking with the Configuration Tool (see “CLIPSTER Configurations” user guide).

A list of all markers positioned in the timeline is available via the tab **Markers** of the tool area (see section “The Marker Table” on page 4-34).

This section explains how to set and use markers.

Marker Types

The following types of markers are available for the timeline:

`Timeline Marker`	The default marker type for the timeline.
`DC Reel Marker`	Only available together with the optional DCI Mastering feature. This type of marker is used to indicate the starting points of reels during a DCI Mastering. It can only be set via an automatic positioning or by changing the type of markers on the marker table (see section “The Marker Table” on page 4-34). Further information about the DCI Mastering can be found in a separate document available via the online help of the software (see section “Manuals” on page 9-27).

Markers of the type `Timeline Marker` can also be used to show where drops occurred during a real-time operation. If this happens they can be easily placed via the performance monitor of the DVS software. Afterwards they will be indicating the position of the drops that occurred (see section “The Performance Monitor” on page 4-36).

How to Set Timeline Markers Manually

Markers of the type `Timeline Marker` can be manually placed in the timeline of the Edit Tool. For this perform the following:

- Move the timeline cursor to the position where the marker should be set.
- After this select the button **+ MARK** available in the user interface of the Edit Tool.

  Alternatively, you can also use the menu option ***Add Marker*** on the context menu of the timeline scale.

This will add a marker to the timeline of the Edit Tool at the current position of the timeline cursor.

How to Set Markers Automatically

Markers can also be positioned automatically. For this perform the following:

- Select from the context menu of the timeline scale the menu option ***Set markers automatically...***.

This will open the following window:

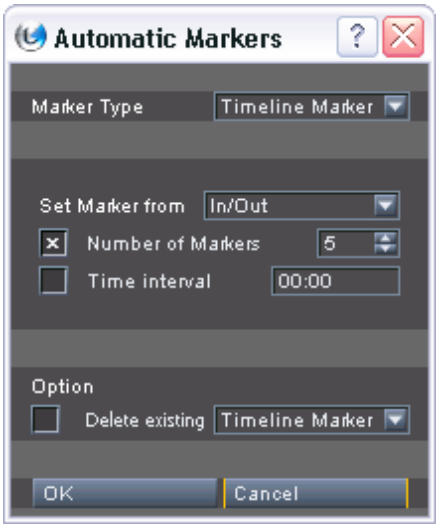


Figure 6-52: Dialog to add markers to the timeline automatically

- Configure the settings to automatically position markers according to your requirements.
- Afterwards generate the markers by clicking the **OK** button.

This will create the markers of the selected type in the timeline of the Edit Tool.

How to Remove Markers from the Timeline

To remove a single marker and delete it from the timeline perform the following:

- Jump with the timeline cursor to the respective timeline marker that you want to remove or place the timeline cursor manually on its position.
- Then call up the context menu and select the menu option ***Remove marker***.

This will remove the timeline marker from the timeline.

You also have the possibility at hand to remove all timeline markers in one step from the timeline. For this select the menu option ***Remove all markers*** from the context menu.

6.4.12 Attaching Audio Clips to Video Clips

Sometimes during your editing work you may want to group audio and video clips, for instance, if they are already perfectly aligned and in synchronization. For this the timeline provides the possibility to attach an audio to a video clip.

When attaching more than two timeline elements, you can attach one video clip to several audio clips only. It is not possible to attach several video clips to one or more audio clips. Furthermore, it is not possible to attach clips of one type only, e.g. audio clips only.

How to Attach Clips

To attach audio clips to a video clip perform the following:

- Select a video clip and one or more audio clips in the timeline area with the mouse while holding down the [Ctrl] key.
- Afterwards release the [Ctrl] key and call up on one of the selected clips or on an empty part of the timeline the context menu.
- On the context menu select the menu option ***Attach***.

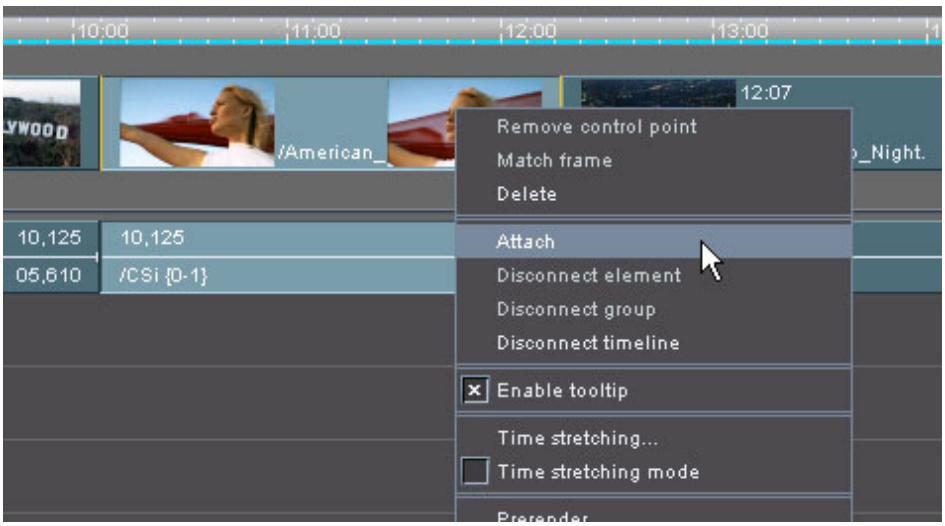


Figure 6-53: Attaching audio and video clips

Once this is done, the audio clip(s) will be attached to the selected video clip. Now, if either one of these clips is selected in the timeline, the other, attached clip(s) will be selected as well and they can then, for ex-

ample, be moved easily together while their alignment and relative position to each other is maintained.

However, because attached clips can only be used in the overwrite mode of the Edit Tool, once clips are attached in the timeline, the software switches on the overwrite mode automatically.



When working with attached clips in the timeline, you cannot switch to the insert mode anymore. The button to switch between the two different modes appears dimmed and is no longer available. Further information about the insert and overwrite mode can be found in section "The Insert/Overwrite Mode of the Timeline" on page 6-34.

To activate the insert mode all timeline elements have to be disconnected.

How to Disconnect Attached Clips

To sever an attachment of clips or to switch back to the insert mode of the Edit Tool you have to disconnect the attached clips:

- Select the attached clips or a specific clip of the attachment and call up its context menu.
- Then use either one of the following menu options:

Disconnect element	Disconnects and severs only the selected clip from the attachment. If the attachment comprises several clips, i.e. one video clip and several audio clips, the rest of the attachment will be maintained.
Disconnect group	Disconnects and severs the attachment of all elements in the group where the context menu was invoked. Regardless of the number of timeline elements in the attachment all will be disconnected.
Disconnect timeline	Disconnects and severs the attachments of all attached timeline elements in the timeline in one step.

After that the attached clip(s) will be severed and disconnected. In case the timeline does not contain other attachments, the button for the insert mode will be available and ready for a selection again.

6.4.13 Time Stretching or Time Compression of Clips

Video and audio clips added to the timeline can be time stretched or time compressed in real time with common interpolations (frame/field repetition or skipping of frames/fields). Time stretching or time com-

pression allows you to speed up or slow down the play-out of a clip, for instance, for slow/fast motion purposes or to match your project's pace. For this the respective timeline element can be automatically resized in the timeline, left in its original size (set via the clip's in- and outpoint) or adjusted to the desired length manually in the timeline.

When changing the timing of audio clips, no pitch control is provided. Thus it should be used for slight timing changes only.

For frequency changes of the timeline, e.g. when playing out or finalizing with a different video raster, an automatic retiming of audio can be configured (see figure in section "How to Configure the Video Output" on page 6-12 and section "Configuring Audio" on page 6-86).

You can configure the time stretching or time compression via the menu option ***Time stretching...*** on the context menu of a clip (see section "The Context Menu of Video Clips" on page 6-61 and section "The Context Menu of Audio Clips" on page 6-75). It will open the following window:

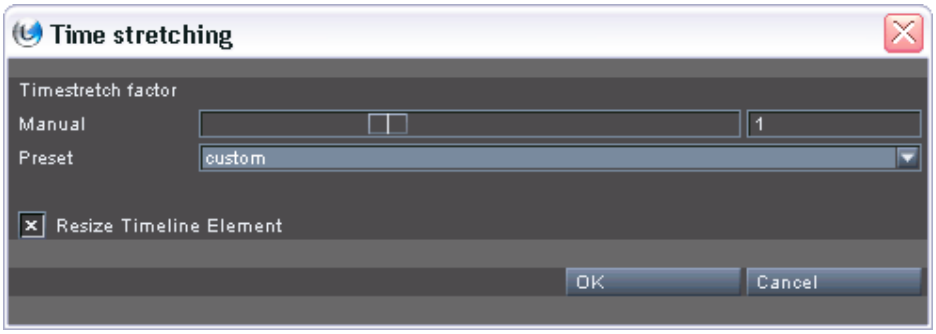


Figure 6-54: Time stretching or time compression configuration

To configure the time stretching or time compression use the items offered under **Manual**. When adjusting the slider, the factor value in the entry field to the right changes accordingly. Alternatively, you can enter a factor directly in the entry field to the right of the slider:

Factor	Slider Movement	Meaning
< 1	left	Values less than one (1) mean that the clip gets time stretched, i.e. its play-out will be slower (slow motion).
> 1	right	Values greater than one (1) indicate a time compression of the video clip, i.e. its speed will be increased (fast motion).

The combo box **Preset** allows you to select common timing changes from its drop-down list. Once one of the predetermined settings is selected, the **Manual** items will be adjusted accordingly.

The **Resize Timeline Element** check box resizes the clip automatically in the timeline accordingly once the settings for stretching/compression are confirmed. When time stretched, the clip will be lengthened in the timeline (outpoint of the clip moves to the right); when time compressed, the clip will be shortened (outpoint moves to the left). If the check box is deactivated, the length of the timeline element in the timeline will be preserved, meaning when time stretched, the outpoint of the clip will be trimmed back; and when time compressed, the possible alteration depends on the available tail of this clip (without tail a time compression will not be possible).

The configured time stretching or time compression will be in effect for the clip in the timeline as soon as it is confirmed with the **OK** button. The button **CANCEL** closes the window without altering the settings.

Time stretching or time compression can also be performed directly in the timeline. This may be helpful when adjusting clips to a specific length in the timeline, for example, to fit inbetween two other clips. For this the ***Time stretching mode*** menu option on the context menu of a clip has to be activated (check box in front of menu option activated). Then all alterations to the clip's in- or outpoint in the timeline (see section "Changing In- and Outpoints of Timeline Elements" on page 6-47) will be a time stretching or time compression and the values in the time stretching or time compression window will be altered automatically. With this the clip and its in- and outpoint can be easily aligned to other elements in the timeline via the snapping mode of the Edit Tool to ensure it provides the correct length in the timeline (in- and outpoint remain constant while the speed is changed).



Clips can be set back to a speed of one (1) easily by setting the speed factor back to one (1). However, depending on the time stretching factor(s) used rounding errors may occur, meaning for frame accurate length you may have to trim the outpoint of the clip.

6.4.14 Relinking Clips

Clips of either video or audio can be relinked in the timeline, i.e. they can be referenced to other source material manually from the timeline directly. To do this perform the following:

- Select the clip whose source material should be changed in the timeline.
- Then select from the context menu of this clip the menu option ***Relink clip...*** (see section "The Context Menu of Video Clips" on

page 6-61 and section “The Context Menu of Audio Clips” on page 6-75).

This will open the standard dialog window of the DVS software for the selection of a file.

- Select the new source in this dialog window.

Once confirmed with the button **OPEN**, the clip selected as the new source will be referenced to the clip’s representation in the timeline and a new bin clip will be added to the root folder of the bin. Afterwards, in case of a video clip, you will see the new video material in the video overlay once the timeline cursor is positioned on this clip. Any heads and tails configured for the clip will be available with the new source material as well.



When linking to new material the source in- and outpoint of the original clip in the timeline are used, i.e. its frame numbers. To receive images in the timeline the new material must provide the same frame numbers for in- and outpoint as the original material.

6.5 Working with Video Clips

The Edit Tool works with representations of clips in the timeline only. This means that as long as you perform your work on the timeline, the original material on the storage is maintained and never altered.

The appearance of the clips in the video track(s) of the timeline can be altered in several ways: You can change the height of the track(s) and the display of the thumbnails. You can also display an unlimited number of video tracks for a vertical editing in the timeline. For more information about all this please refer to section "Changing the Layout of the Timeline Area" on page 6-6.

This section describes several features of video clips added to the video track(s) of the timeline of the Edit Tool.

6.5.1 The Clip's Information

The video clips in the video track(s) of the timeline provide several information via their text display.

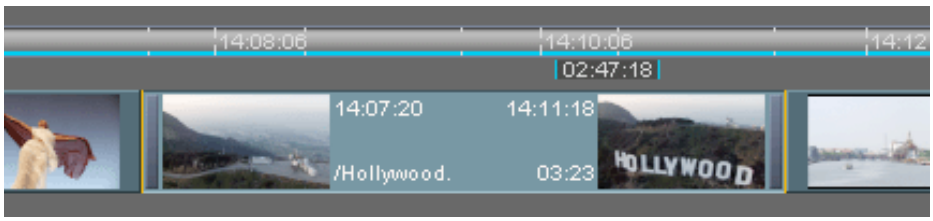


Figure 6-55: Representation of video clip

The following information are provided:

top left — Usually, the exact inpoint of the clip on the timeline.

This value and its notation depend on the display setting for the timeline (timecode/frame notation, see section "Configuring the Timeline Scale" on page 6-9) and the display type setting of the timeline (see section "Changing the Display Type" on page 6-10).

top right — Usually, the exact outpoint of the last frame of the clip on the timeline.



This value and its notation depend on the display setting for the timeline (timecode/frame notation, see section "Configuring the Timeline Scale" on page 6-9) and the display type setting of the timeline (see section "Changing the Display Type" on page 6-10).

bottom left — Name of the clip as it is available in the bin together with its folder path.

bottom right — Length/duration of the clip.



You can receive additional information about the clips via their tooltips which can be customized to your individual needs (see section "Configuring the Tooltips of Clips" on page 6-10 for further information).

6.5.2 The Context Menu of Video Clips

The context menu of video clips (usually invoked with a right-click of the mouse) provides the following menu options and functions that can be used with video clips:

Match frame	If you want to know the exact position of an individual frame in the source material of the video clip or transfer this image (or the complete image sequence) to another application for further processing, you can select the menu option ***Match frame***. Further information about this feature can be found in section "Matching an Individual Video Frame" on page 6-64.
Delete	This menu option deletes the respective clip where the context menu was invoked from the timeline. Alternatively, you can select the clip and press the [Del] key on your keyboard.
Attach ***Disconnect element*** ***Disconnect group*** ***Disconnect timeline***	These menu options enable you to work with attached clips: Sometimes during your editing work you may want to group audio and video clips, for example, if they are already perfectly aligned and in synchronization. For this the timeline provides the possibility to attach audio to video clips. Further information about how to work with attached clips and how to use these menu options can be found in section "Attaching Audio Clips to Video Clips" on page 6-55.

Enable tooltip	Clips added to the timeline provide various information via tooltips. With this menu option you can activate or deactivate the display of the tooltips when the mouse cursor is placed over a clip in the timeline area. If it is activated, the menu option will show a cross in front. Additional information about tooltips can be found in section "Configuring the Tooltips of Clips" on page 6-10.
Time stretching… ***Time stretching mode***	Video and audio clips added to the timeline can be time stretched or time compressed to speed up or slow down the play-out of a clip, for example, for slow or fast motion purposes. Further information about these menu options can be found in section "Time Stretching or Time Compression of Clips" on page 6-56.
Prerender	If a timeline element needs to be prerendered, you can start the prerendering process with this menu option. Further information about this can be found in section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46.
Delete prerendering	When a timeline element is already prerendered you can delete its prerendered files with this menu option (see also section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46).
Add scene marker ***Delete scene marker*** ***Split at scene markers***	These menu options allow you to add and edit scene markers after an automatic scene detection. Further information about them can be found in section "Scene Detection" on page 6-69.
Conforming	This menu option will be available for clips of an EDL after the EDL has been created in the timeline. It is explained in section "Working with EDLs from the Timeline" on page 8-22.
Export to Application	When a clip is present in a video track of the timeline area, you can process its source material with a third party application of your choice either by using the original data directly (destructive export) or by previously copying the material beforehand. Afterwards it will be provided again in the DVS software for further usage. More information about this can be found in section "Processing the Source Material of a Timeline Element" on page 6-66.

Select all	With this menu option all clips in the timeline area can be selected in one step. Further information about how to select clips in the timeline can be found in section "Selecting Clips" on page 6-40.
Cut ***Copy*** ***Paste***	Using these menu options timeline elements can be cut or copied to the clipboard of the operating system and afterwards pasted again at the location of your choice. Further information about this can be found in section "Cutting, Copying or Pasting Clips" on page 4-18.
Relink clip	Once a clip is available in the timeline, it can be relinked, i.e. referenced to other source material manually from the timeline directly. For further information about this see section "Relinking Clips" on page 6-58.
Bin-Clip properties	With this menu option you can open from a clip in the timeline the properties of its source clip in the bin (see section "Changing the Properties of Clips" on page 4-21).
Show Alpha Channel only	This menu option displays the alpha channel (key) of a video clip in the video overlay as well as at the outputs of the DVS system. For further information see section "Displaying the Alpha Channel" on page 6-72.
Show properties	With this menu option you can call up the properties of the timeline element where the context menu was invoked. They will be shown instead of the visible audio tracks right below the timeline area. Via the properties you can, for example, adjust zooming and panning or set color/gamma corrections for the respective clip. This is in detail described in chapter "Timeline Element Properties" on page 7-1.

6.5.3 Consistencies of Clips

During the loading of a project file or the import of a bin (see section "Open…" on page 9-4 and section "Import Bin…" on page 9-18), video clips are checked for inconsistencies: It is tested whether the first and the last frame of each video clip is available on the storage. However, frames missing inbetween the first and the last frame are not verified automatically.



If the first and/or last frame of a clip is missing, you will be informed about this the same way as described in section "Check Bin" on page 9-19.

If a clip is played out where frames are missing, the missing frames will be substituted by the DVS software automatically with a standard image:



Figure 6-56: Substitute image for a missing frame

Then it is best to check your bin and thus your timeline for inconsistencies more thoroughly with the menu option ***Check Bin*** on the ***Bin*** menu (see section "Check Bin" on page 9-19). This menu option will provide you with a list of the clips where frames are missing. After that either the whole clip or the missing frames should be replaced or recorded anew.

6.5.4 Matching an Individual Video Frame

The matching of an individual video frame is especially useful in case you want to know the exact position of this frame in the source material of the clip or if you want to transfer this image (or the connected image sequence) to another application for further processing. Once the timeline cursor is placed on a specific image of a video clip in the timeline, you can select the menu option ***Match frame*** from the context menu of the timeline scale.

The ***Match frame*** menu option can also be found on the context menu of a video clip.

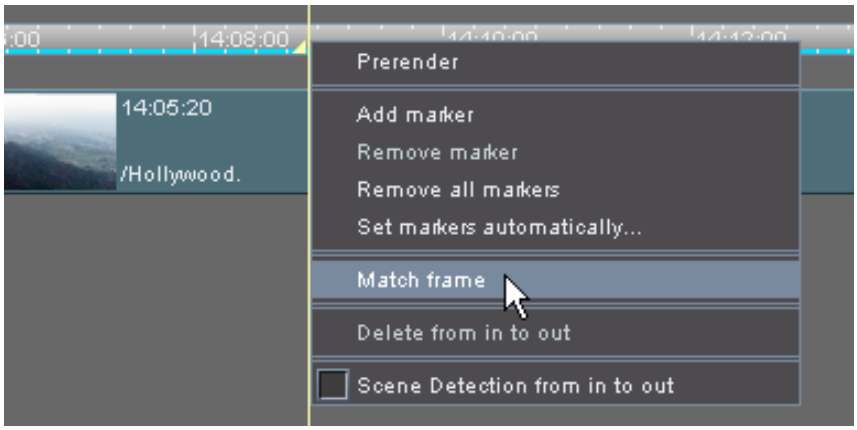


Figure 6-57: Matching an individual video frame

After this the control area of the Edit Tool switches to its source-edit mode and the particular frame together with its clip will be made available in the video overlay to the left of this mode:



Figure 6-58: The matched frame

Then you can easily recognize the exact frame position in its source material via the position field to the right because the scrub bar cursor will be placed accordingly. Additionally, the respective clip used in the timeline will be marked and visible in the bin to facilitate the identification of the source material.

Further information about the source-edit mode can be found in section “The Source-Edit Mode” on page 5-14.

Afterwards you have the possibility at hand to transfer the selected image (or the complete image sequence) to another application for fur-

ther processing (see section “Processing the Source Material of a Video Clip” on page 5-21).

To switch the control area back to its edit mode use the appropriate button of the control area ( ).

6.5.5 Processing the Source Material of a Timeline Element

The Edit Tool provides two ways to export either the original source material or a copied version of it to a third party application of your choice: You can export video data visible in the source-edit mode of the Edit Tool, or you can export video data that is available in the timeline to another application. This way you can process the source material of a video clip further and afterwards use it again in the DVS software without any difficulty. This section describes how to process source material when a video clip was already added to the timeline of the Edit Tool.

The export of source material that is visible in the source-edit mode of the Edit Tool is described in section “Processing the Source Material of a Video Clip” on page 5-21.

When a clip is present in a video track of the timeline area, you can process its source material either by using the original data directly (destructive export) or by previously copying the material beforehand. To do this you have to use the menu option ***Export to Application*** on the context menu of a video clip in the timeline of the Edit Tool. It opens a submenu where you can select other applications than the DVS software to process your video data (see also section “The Context Menu of Video Clips” on page 6-61).

To have an application available in this submenu you have to define and set it first. This can be done with the Configuration Tool (group **External**, see “CLIPSTER Configurations” user guide). Please note that you have to set the appropriate program parameters, if applicable, in the **Options** entry field as well.

Please note that the **Destructive export** option is valid for all specified external applications. If activated, the source data will always be processed directly. When saving the data in such a case with an external application, the source material will be overwritten.



Figure 6-59: Accessing an external application

This menu option will export the source material of the clip according to your settings made for this application in the Configuration Tool.

When a sequence processing is enabled, each frame between a set in- and outpoint of the timeline will be sent to the external application. However, this applies to a single clip only: If the in- and outpoint are set outside of the clip where the menu option ***Export to Application*** was called, only the image sequence of the clip where the menu option was called will be sent.

If a non-destructive export is selected for the external applications, the source material of the clip will be copied to the same path and location where the original material is stored with an incrementing number added to the directory name of the clip (*<name of clip's directory><incrementing number>*). After this the copied source material will be opened in the external application where you can process it. In the meantime the clip's representation in the timeline of the Edit Tool will be changed to the location of the copied material, i.e. a new bin clip will be added to the bin of the Edit Tool and the representation of the clip in the video track of the timeline will be changed to this new bin clip and location. As soon as you have processed the material with the other application and saved it, you can use it immediately in the software without having overwritten the original source (its bin clip is still present in the bin).

When a destructive export is selected for the external applications, no changes will be applied to the clip's representations in the Edit Tool. The source material is sent directly to the external application where it can be processed. Once the changes are saved, the material can be immediately accessed with the DVS software. However, due to the destructive export, your original source material on the storage will be lost.

6.5.6 Vertical Editing of Video Clips in the Timeline

With the Edit Tool and the timeline area configured to several video tracks you can perform a vertical editing in the timeline.

To perform a vertical editing the timeline area has to be configured to contain more than just one video track. This can be done with the video track size options of the **'Timeline output settings'** window (see section "Video and Audio Track Properties" on page 6-7).

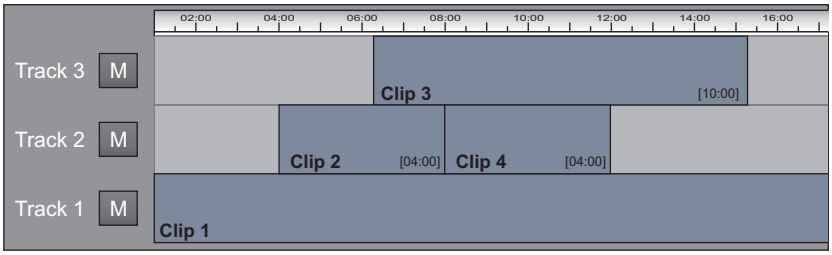
The approach to work with several video tracks vertically in the timeline is different from the usual one of a horizontal editing in a timeline. Then the various tracks of the timeline form a stack: By placing different or differently edited timeline elements in other video tracks at the same position in the timeline you can change the contents for a play-out at that position easily.

With vertical editing you still work with the video track(s) as usual, i.e. horizontally. But, for instance, in case you want to realize a temporary cutaway or to evaluate the visual outcome of different shots at a particular position in the timeline, simply place the respective timeline elements in another track in the timeline. The higher the track number the more priority is given to the respective track during a play-out.

Then, with the help of enabling and disabling the respective tracks (button **M**, see section "Muting and Locking Tracks" on page 6-36) you can easily determine the best possible solution for your work.

Example 1:

In the example below the timeline is configured to three video tracks. All three tracks are enabled (not muted), i.e. all tracks will be played out.



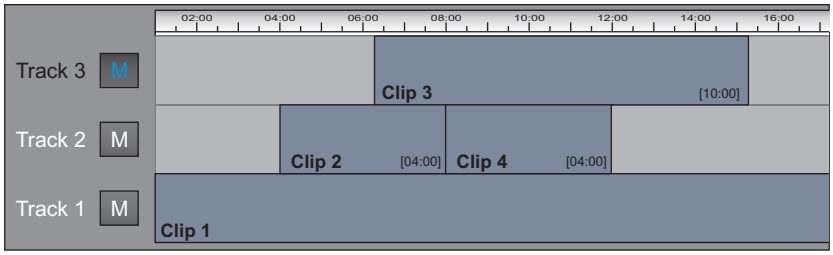
When a play-out is initiated, the result will be that clip #3 overlays all others below it, i.e. the ones with a lower priority.

Play-out result:



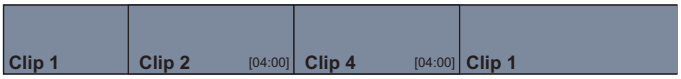
Example 2:

In the second example the third track is now disabled (muted).



When a play-out is initiated, this will lead to an output where clip #3 is not given out at all while the clips #2 and #4 overlay the clip #1 present in the first video track (the one with the lowest priority).

Play-out result:



The display of the video tracks can be reversed via the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more information). However, this does not affect the play-out priority, i.e. the priority of the video track with the highest number over all others when enabled.

The DVS software is able to autoconform offline composed projects into different video tracks (e.g. via its I/O Tool or the conforming tool; see "CLIPSTER I/O Tool" user guide and chapter "The Conforming Tool" on page 8-1). Thus, with the help of the vertical editing feature you can compare different versions of conformed projects easily in the timeline.

6.5.7 Scene Detection

Video clips that were recorded from tape machines or telecines are often available in a single image sequence only. With the Edit Tool you can make a scene detection that automatically analyzes the video clip(s) for cuts. Afterwards the detected cuts/scenes are marked visibly in the timeline where they can be edited further and, if required, actually cut.

This section explains how to use the scene detection of the Edit Tool.

Starting a Scene Detection

To start a scene detection perform the following:

A scene detection can be performed in a single video track only, i.e. all others must be locked and muted (see section "Muting and Locking Tracks" on page 6-36).

- If not already available add the video clip that should be analyzed for scenes to the timeline (see section "Adding Clips to the Timeline" on page 6-2).
- If desired use the in- and outpoint of the timeline to limit the scene detection to a part of the clip/timeline only (see section "Setting an In- and Outpoint for the Timeline" on page 6-32).
- Additionally, just for the analyze process you may change the output video format to a video raster with a higher frame rate (e.g. to 720p /60) to get a higher scene detection speed (see section "How to Configure the Video Output" on page 6-12).

Once everything is set, you can start the scene detection at any time:

- Select from the context menu of the timeline scale the menu option ***Scene Detection from in to out***:

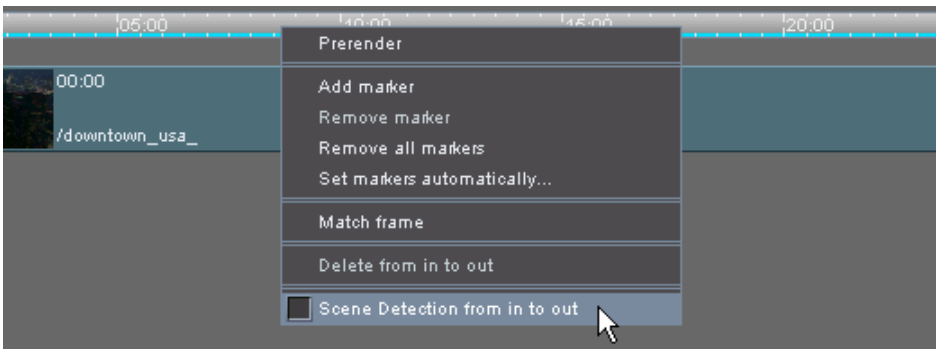


Figure 6-60: Starting a scene detection

This will activate the scene detection: The Edit Tool starts to play out the timeline (or the selected part of it) and in the control area the video scope ***Scene Detection*** is activated.

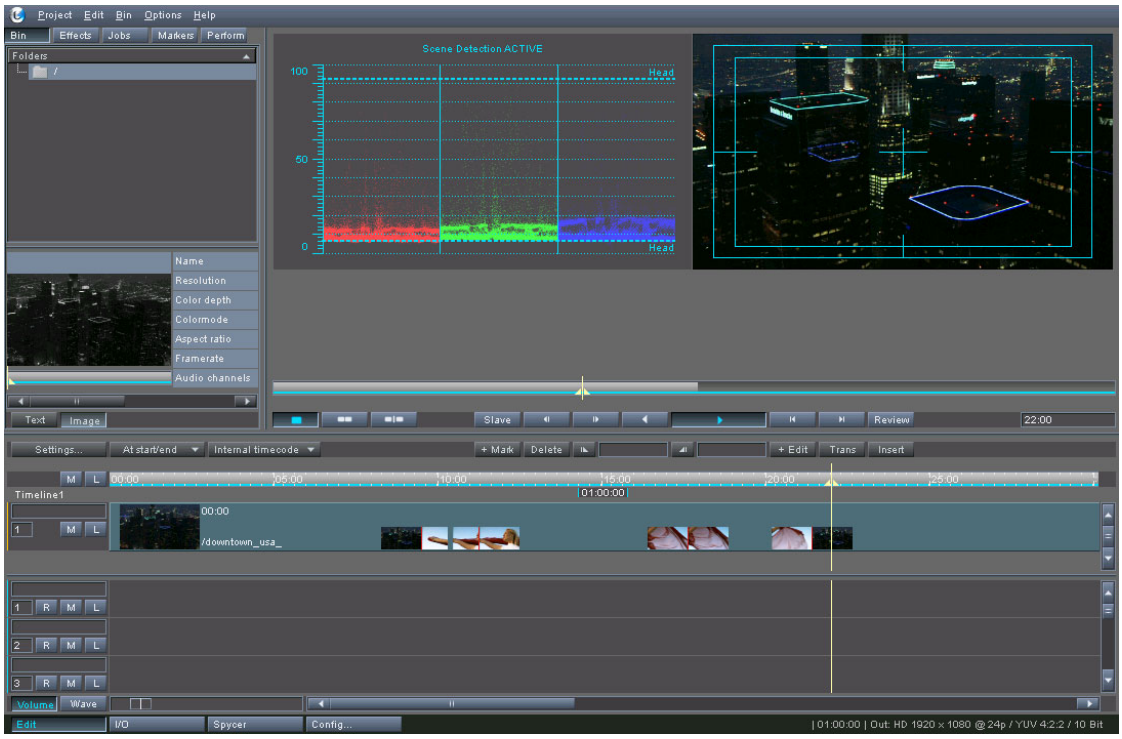


Figure 6-61: Activated scene detection

The video scope ***Scene Detection*** is an RGB parade that can be used to evaluate the scene detection (see section "The Video Scopes" on page 5-3). Furthermore, its graph will flash in white every time a scene is detected.

During the scene detection a luminance mean value is calculated over a number of frames of the played out clip. This is compared to a mean value of the single frame that is currently played out. If both values differ to some degree, a scene marker will be added at the respective position to the video clip.



Figure 6-62: Scene marker on clip

The result of a scene detection can be influenced with settings in the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide).

The scene detection will be running until the play-out stops at the end of the set timeline stretch or until it is terminated manually (e.g. with the controls).

Editing the Scene Markers

The scene detection detects cuts reliably when the changes of scenery are distinct. However, if the content of the images varies much, cuts may be detected wrongly. For example, with its standard settings the scene detection will sometimes mark a camera panning as another scene because the image content between two frames differs considerably. Then you have the possibility at hand to edit the detected scenes.

After analyzing a clip you can jump to scene markers by selecting the clip in the timeline and using the respective controls (or key [A]/[S] on your keyboard). Then by stepping single frames forward and backward you can determine whether the scene marker is properly placed. If not, it can be taken with the mouse and moved to another position freely:



Figure 6-63: Moving scene markers

Once the scene marker is positioned correctly, you can, for example, apply a hard cut to the clip (see section “Performing a Cut” on page 6-44).

Additionally, when calling the context menu on the video clip the following menu options are provided to edit the scene markers:

Add scene marker	Adds a scene marker manually. It will be added at the current position of the timeline cursor.
Delete scene marker	Deletes the scene marker currently selected by the timeline cursor. This menu option will be available as soon as the timeline cursor is positioned on a scene marker.
Split at scene markers	Cuts the clip at the position(s) of the scene marker(s). In case the scene detection was performed on several clips in the timeline, it has to be applied to each clip separately.

6.5.8 Displaying the Alpha Channel

For blue-screen operations or compositing the alpha channel (key) of a video clip is important. With the DVS software you can display the alpha channel of individual clips in the video overlay as well as at the outputs of the DVS system.

To display the alpha channel of a video clip you have to activate the menu option ***Show Alpha Channel only*** on the context menu of a video clip in the timeline of the Edit Tool (see also section "The Context Menu of Video Clips" on page 6-61). Then the video overlay and the DVS system's video outputs will show you the alpha channel mask of the video clip where the menu option was activated. The parts of the images displayed in white are selected, black areas are not selected (i.e. keyed out).



In case a clip provides no alpha channel, the displayed images will be completely white, showing that nothing is keyed out.

6.6 Working with Audio Clips

With audio clips it is the same as with video clips: The DVS software works with representations of the clips in the timeline only. Throughout your work in the Edit Tool the original material on the storage is maintained and never altered.

By default the timeline area will show 16 audio tracks where you can add audio clips in the desired sequence, set fade-ins and -outs and control the volume of each clip.

The number of audio tracks displayed in the Edit Tool can be set freely (see section “Video and Audio Track Properties” on page 6-7).

To get a proper output you have to configure the audio hardware output accordingly (see section “How to Configure the Audio Output” on page 6-14).

The DVS software supports audio files with multiple mono or stereo channels. If you drag such a clip from the bin to the timeline, the additional channels will be added to the other audio tracks below the selected one.

This section describes several features of audio clips added to the audio tracks of the timeline.

6.6.1 The Clip's Information

Audio clips in the audio tracks of the timeline provide several information via their text display.

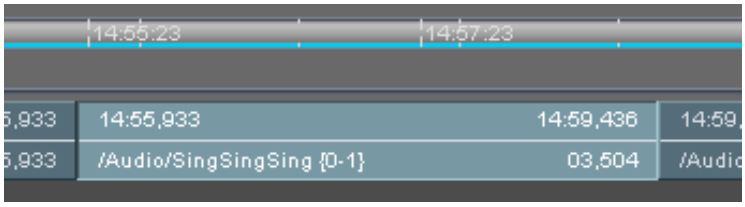


Figure 6-64: Representation of audio clip

The following information are provided:

top left	Exact inpoint of clip on the timeline; with the timeline set to the timecode notation, the seconds and frames will be shown as seconds in a decimal number, i.e. with milliseconds; when the frame notation is activated, the inpoint will be displayed in milliseconds only

top right	Exact outpoint of the clip on the timeline (minus one sample); with the timeline set to the timecode notation, the seconds and frames will be shown as seconds in a decimal number, i.e. with milliseconds; when the frame notation is activated, the outpoint will be displayed in milliseconds only
bottom left	Name of the clip as it is available in the bin together with its folder path; in curly brackets the audio channels (streams) of the clip indicating its audio mode, e.g. `0-1` meaning a stereo stream of channel 0 and 1, or `0-0` meaning a mono stream of channel 0
bottom right	Length/duration of the clip

The audio mode of the clip can be changed in its clip properties (bin). For this the clip must not be present in the timeline of the Edit Tool.

With the display type set to `File number`, the in- and outpoint information of the clips will provide the in- and outpoint with regard to the single audio file only (in milliseconds), i.e. untrimmed each audio clip in the timeline will begin with zero and end with its total duration (see also section "Changing the Display Type" on page 6-10).

You can receive additional information about the clips via their tooltips which can be customized to your needs (see section "Configuring the Tooltips of Clips" on page 6-10 for further information).

6.6.2 The Context Menu of Audio Clips

The context menu of audio clips (usually invoked with a right-click of the mouse) provides the following menu options and functions that can be used with audio clips:

Remove control point	With this menu option you can delete a volume control point that was set on the volume control line (see section "Volume Control" on page 6-77).
Delete	This menu option deletes the respective clip where the context menu was invoked from the timeline. Alternatively, you can select the clip and press the [Del] key on your keyboard.

Attach ***Disconnect element*** ***Disconnect group*** ***Disconnect timeline***	These menu options enable you to work with attached clips: Sometimes during your editing work you may want to group audio and video clips, for example, if they are already perfectly aligned and in synchronization. For this the timeline provides the possibility to attach audio to video clips. Further information about how to work with attached clips and how to use these menu options can be found in section "Attaching Audio Clips to Video Clips" on page 6-55.
Enable tooltip	Clips added to the timeline provide various information via tooltips. With this menu option you can activate or deactivate the display of the tooltips when the mouse cursor is placed over a clip in the timeline area. If it is activated, the menu option will show a cross in front. Additional information about tooltips can be found in section "Configuring the Tooltips of Clips" on page 6-10.
Time stretching... ***Time stretching mode***	Video and audio clips added to the timeline can be time stretched or time compressed to speed up or slow down the play-out of a clip, for example, for slow or fast motion purposes. Further information about these menu options can be found in section "Time Stretching or Time Compression of Clips" on page 6-56.
Conforming	This menu option will be available for clips of an EDL after the EDL has been created in the timeline. It is explained in section "Working with EDLs from the Timeline" on page 8-22.
Select all	With this menu option all clips in the timeline area can be selected in one step. Further information about how to select clips in the timeline can be found in section "Selecting Clips" on page 6-40.
Cut ***Copy*** ***Paste***	Using these menu options timeline elements can be cut or copied to the clipboard of the operating system and afterwards pasted again at the location of your choice. Further information about this can be found in section "Cutting, Copying or Pasting Clips" on page 4-18.

Relink clip	Once a clip is available in the timeline, it can be relinked, i.e. referenced to other source material manually from the timeline directly. For further information about this see section “Relinking Clips” on page 6-58.
Bin-Clip properties	With this menu option you can open from a clip in the timeline the properties of its source clip in the bin (see section “Changing the Properties of Clips” on page 4-21).

6.6.3 Volume Control

The button **VOLUME** is important for audio clips. You can find it at the bottom of the timeline area to the left of the sliders to change the timeline’s view. This button displays or hides the volume control lines of audio clips.



With the volume control lines you can change the volume for each clip separately. If the button **VOLUME** is in its active state, the volume control lines are visible.

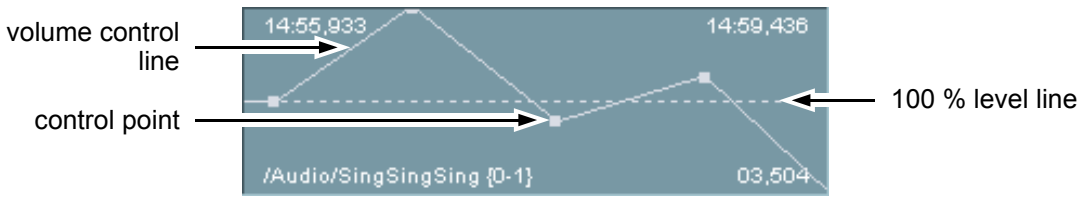


Figure 6-65: Volume control of audio

After dragging an audio clip to one of the audio tracks from the bin, the whole volume control line is set to 100 % (as shown in figure 6-64 on page 6-74). In this state there may be two volume control points available, one at the beginning of the clip and one at its end.

Whether the start and end control points are available depends on whether the clip is trimmed (in- and/or outpoint adjusted).

To tune the audio volume up or down you have to either use the already available volume control points or create new ones. To create a new volume control point perform the following:

- Move the mouse cursor horizontally on the volume control line to the location where the control point should be added. As soon as you can add a control point, the mouse cursor changes to a cross.
- Then click with the mouse.

This will create a control point which can be moved in every direction on the audio clip.

The control points react to certain elements in the video and audio tracks of the timeline (snapping mode) to allow for an automated positioning. You can deactivate the snapping mode and activate a fine tuning mode by pressing the [Shift] key. Further information about the snapping mode can be found in section "Moving Clips within the Timeline" on page 6-38.

To delete a control point select from its context menu the menu option ***Remove control point*** (see also section "The Context Menu of Audio Clips" on page 6-75).

When you move the control point up or down, you can turn up or down the volume of the respective clip.

If you want to create audio peaks or fade-in or -out audio, you have to create more than one control point and set them accordingly. There is no limit in the total number of control points and new ones can be created as described above.

As an example, the following figure shows an audio project with control points set to create fades:

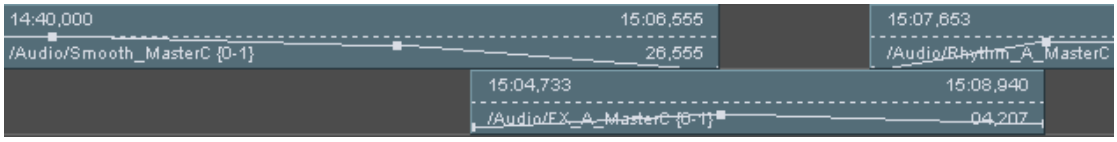


Figure 6-66: Fades achieved with the CLIPSTER Edit Tool

To control the setting of a control point the Edit Tool shows you its current volume level in decibel via a tooltip. Simply move the mouse cursor over a control point to view its setting:



Figure 6-67: Decibel setting of control point

The decibel scale of the Edit Tool is as follows:

Decibel Indicator	Loudness (in %)
-12 dB	25 %
-6 dB	50 %
0.0 dB	100 %

Decibel Indicator	Loudness (in %)
6 dB	200 %
12 dB	400 %

While a totally decreased control point means that audio is muted, a fully increased one does not necessarily mean that audio is set to 200 %. You can move a control point beyond the limits of the audio clip which will increase the volume over 200 %. This will be indicated by a shifted 100 % level line: it is then located in the lower half of the audio clip.

6.6.4 Waveform Display

With the button **WAVE** you can switch on or off the waveform display of the audio clips in the timeline. You can find it at the bottom of the timeline area to the left of the sliders that change the timeline's view, directly to the right of the button **VOLUME**.



A waveform is a graphical representation of an audio signal and the **WAVE** button displays or hides the wave forms of the audio clips:

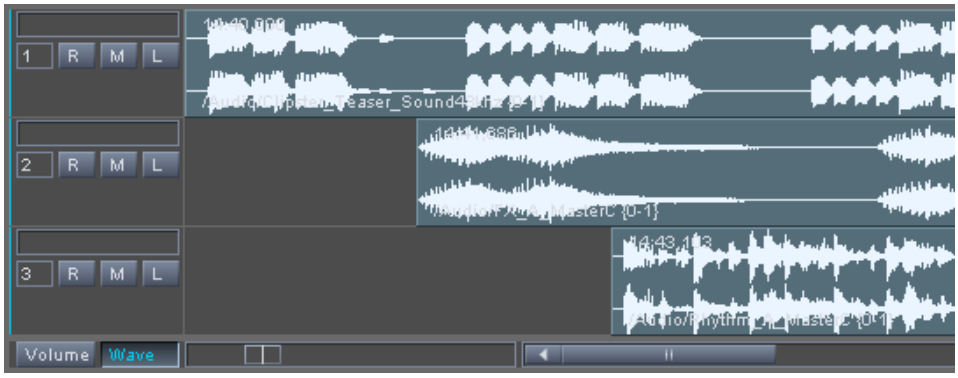


Figure 6-68: Audio waveforms

For each channel available in the respective audio clip one waveform will be displayed, i.e. a mono clip provides one waveform only whereas a stereo clip shows two waveforms, one for each channel.

The appearance of the waveforms can be configured to your liking with the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide).

6.7 Finalizing the Timeline

Once a project is finished, you can generate from a project's timeline a new clip in a configurable format and raster without affecting the original material (original data and project file are preserved). This process is called 'finalizing' and it can be made with the menu option ***Finalize...*** on the ***Project*** menu (see section "Finalize…" on page 9-14). Via this option you can select the video and/or audio format freely. Additionally, you may limit the rendering of the timeline with a defined in- and outpoint of the timeline or render video and audio separately.

After the selection of the menu option ***Finalize...*** the window **'Finalizing'** will be displayed on the screen:

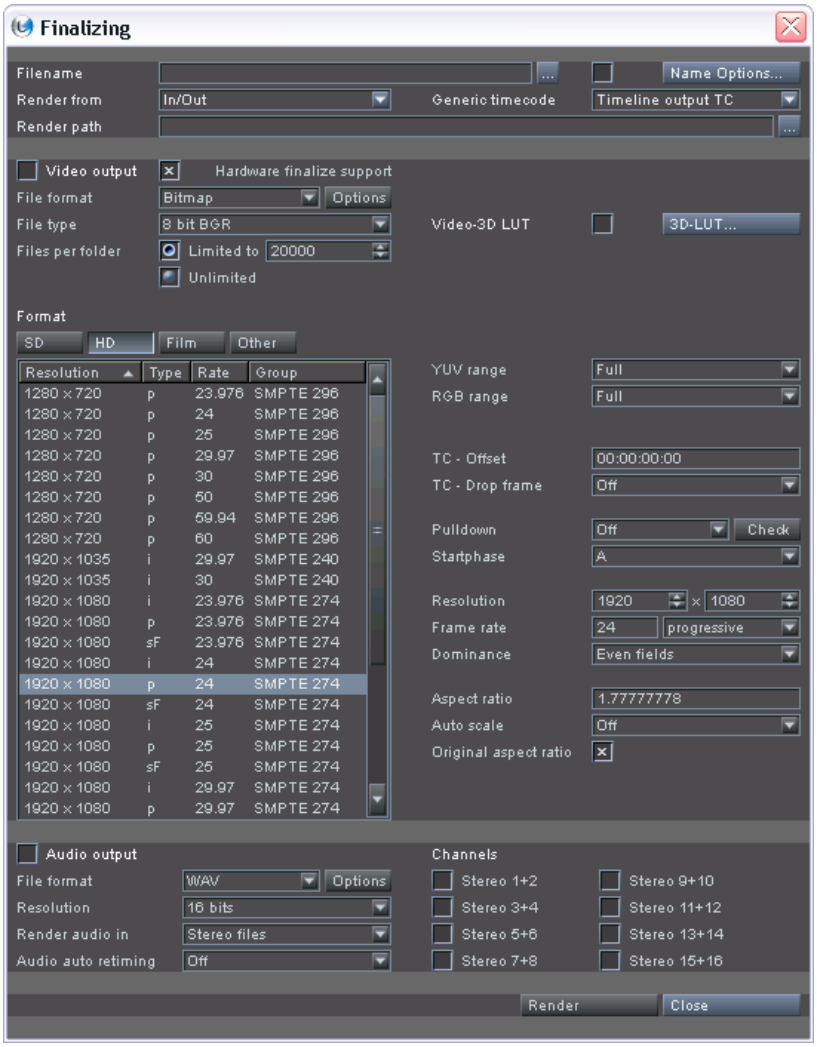


Figure 6-69: Window to finalize a project

In this window the finalizing of the timeline has to be configured. Its settings and the finalizing process in general will be described in this section.

6.7.1 General Settings

When performing a finalizing you have to specify some general settings, such as the storage information and some timeline settings, first. They can be made with the settings items at the top of the window to configure a finalizing:

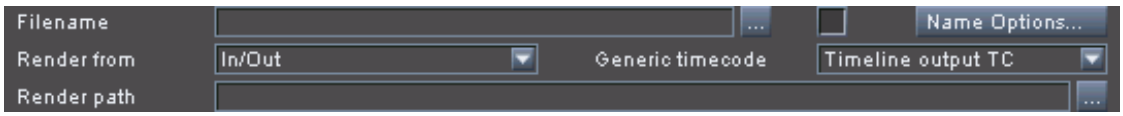


Figure 6-70: The general settings

In the entry field **Filename** enter the name of the clip to be generated. You may also click on the button to the right of this entry field (...) to select an already existing file.

Notation: Standard file names of the Windows operating system, i.e. do not use the following characters:
`% / \ : * ? " < > |`

Furthermore, leave out the file extension.

Example: `Clip`

However, instead of the entry field to set the file name you may also use the **Name Options** items to the right. With them you can endow the file name with variable information. Further information about this can be found in section “Name Options” on page 6-90.

With the combo box **Render from** you can select whether the whole timeline (`All`) or the timeline stretch between the set in- and outpoint only (`In/Out`) should be rendered. If `In/Out` is selected but no in- and outpoint is defined in the timeline, the whole timeline will be rendered.

With the combo box **Generic timecode** you select the timecode type that should be written as the source timecode into the files (if supported by the file format). During finalizing the selected timecode will then be written as the source timecode to the location in the files' headers especially reserved for that kind of metadata. Afterwards the finalized clip will contain the selected source timecode and it can then be used by applications that support source timecode. The following settings are available:

`Timeline output TC`	The internal timecode of the Edit Tool's timeline is written to the correct location in the file headers, i.e. afterwards the internal timecode of the timeline is provided by the files as their source timecode.

`Source TC`	The source timecode provided by the clips already present in the timeline is written to the files' headers as their source timecode, i.e. if the clips already provided source timecode, it will be preserved. Clips without source timecode information may receive a virtual source timecode (see section "Notes on Source Timecode and Keycode" on page 2-15).

The DVS software supports source timecode in several file formats (see section "Notes on Source Timecode and Keycode" on page 2-15). To use the combo box **Generic timecode** the **File format** combo box has to be set to one of these file formats.

In the entry field **Render path** you have to state the storage path where to store the new clip. You may also click on the button to the right of this entry field (...) to select an already existing directory or create a new directory via the provided buttons of the opening dialog window. If the entered path does not exist, it will be created.

Notation:	`drive_letter:\directory\subdirectory` Instead of the backslash (`\`) you may also use a slash (`/`).
Example:	`V:\tempest\act05\scene01`

Regarding file name and path it would be sufficient for a rendering to enter a path in the field **Render path** and to state a file name. All other information necessary, such as the numbering of frames, will be added by the DVS software automatically. For further information about this see section "The Finalized Output (Files per Folder)" on page 6-88.

The numbering of files/frames can be configured in more detail with the name options described in section "Name Options" on page 6-90.

6.7.2 Configuring Video

With the settings items in the middle of the finalizing window you can specify the video format for the rendering of the new clip. To make these available, the check box **Video output** has to be activated.

With the finalizing function of the Edit Tool you are able to generate video and audio files together or separately via the check boxes. When calling the finalizing window for the first time, the items for video and audio are disabled. Via the check box **Video output** at the top of this area you can enable the items for video and thus decide that you want to generate a video clip. The same can be done with the check box **Au-**

dio output (see section "Configuring Audio" on page 6-86). By turning on either one of these only the activated output will be created.

If a container format is selected as the file format (e.g. `Windows Media`), you cannot generate audio and video separately. Both will automatically be included in the created file.

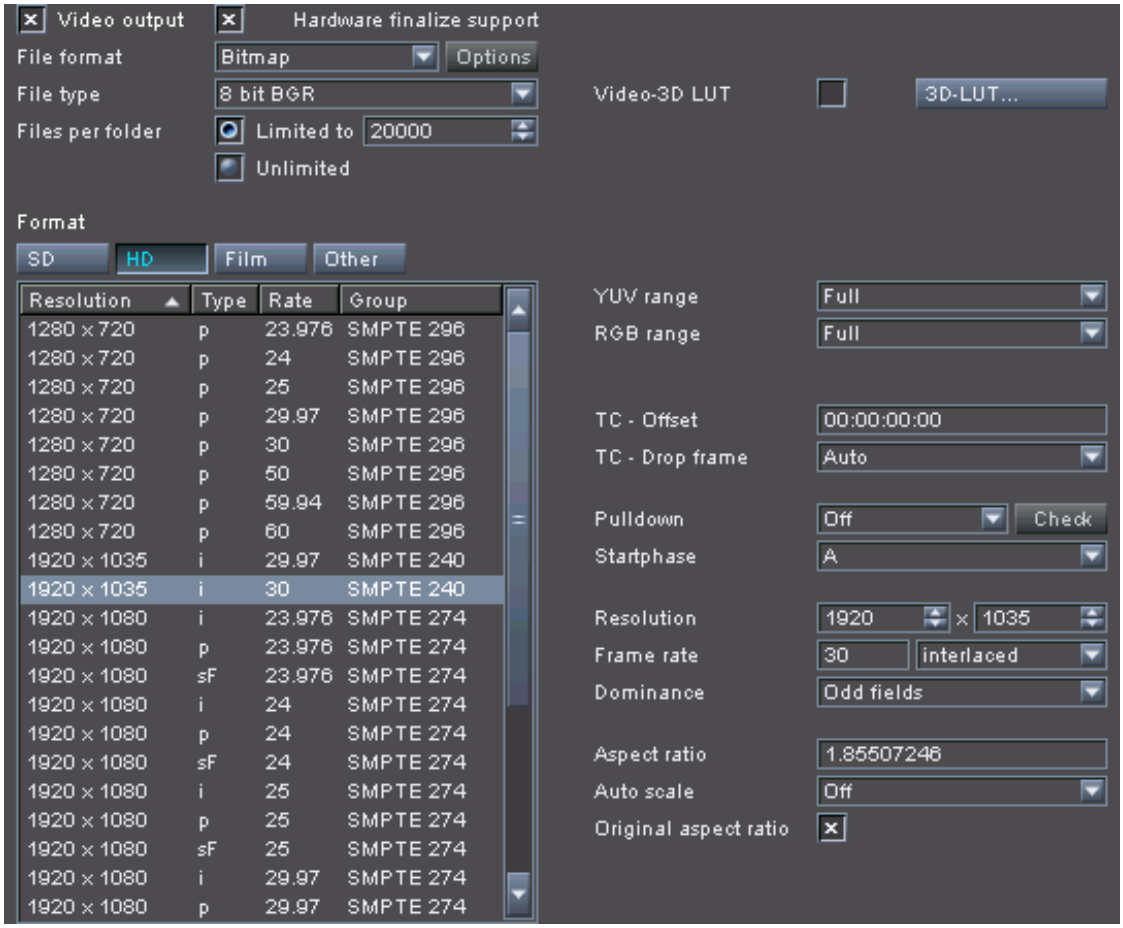


Figure 6-71: Configuring video

To the right of the check box **Video output** you can find the **Hardware finalize support** check box. With it you activate or deactivate the support of the DVS PCI video board during finalizing. When activated and if possible, the video files will be rendered in hardware in a render speed faster than real time (depends on the applied operators and video formats involved). All real-time effects are supported. When deactivated, the finalizing will be made in software.

With the **File format** combo box select the file format for your clip to be generated. For a list of the supported file formats see section "Supported File Formats" on page A-9. To the right of the **File format** combo box you can find the button **OPTIONS** which provides, depending on the selected format, further configurations for the files to be generated.

Furthermore, some file formats offer additional saving types, such as bit depth and/or byte order settings. If provided by the format, select from the **File type** combo box the desired additional saving type. A list of saving types can be found in the "CLIPSTER I/O Tool" user guide.

The items **Files per folder** allow you to limit the number of files that will be stored in one directory. Further information about this can be found in section "The Finalized Output (Files per Folder)" on page 6-88.

The **Video-3D LUT** items are optionally available. They are identical to the 3D LUT settings available for the timeline. A 3D LUT will not be applied automatically to the rendered files, even if one is set for the output of the timeline. In case you want to apply a 3D LUT (most probably the same you have set for the timeline), you have to select it here and activate it with the respective check box. For further information about how to do this refer to section "Loading and Applying a 3D LUT File" on page 6-18.



There may be other items similar to the **Video-3D LUT** settings items available. These belong to the optionally available DCI Mastering feature of CLIPSTER. Further information about them can be found in a separate document available via the online help of the software (see section "Manuals" on page 9-27).



On the left side of the area to configure video you can find some buttons and a list box to select one of the various video formats that the DVS system provides. Choose one of the video format type buttons to display in the list box below the video formats sorted under this type. Then select from the list box the desired format that the project's timeline should be rendered to. The selected format will also be shown on the right side of the video configuration area in the editable resolution fields and, if appropriate, the pulldown/drop frame items will be made available.

If you have selected a YUV format as the file format, the **YUV range** setting has to be applied. It specifies whether the color space range of the finalized clip will be in a restricted (`Head`) or in a full value range (`Full`). The same applies to the **RGB range** setting: If you have selected an RGB file format, this setting will be evaluated. It specifies whether the color space range of the finalized clip will be in a restricted (`Head`) or in a full value range (`Full`). Further information about color space ranges and color space conversions can be found in the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.

In the field **TC - Offset** select a timecode/frame offset for the rendered clip. It will be evaluated if for the clip to be generated a file format is selected that stores source timecode information in its header (e.g. *`*.dpx`*). Then the clip will provide this timecode offset in its source timecode.

If appropriate and available select whether drop-frame timecode should be applied to the source timecode written to the files with the **TC - Drop frame** combo box. It will be evaluated if for the clip to be generated a file format is selected that stores source timecode information in its header (e.g. **.dpx*). Further information about drop-frame timecode can be found in the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.

If appropriate and available, select the necessary pulldown method from the **Pulldown** and **Startphase** combo boxes. The pulldown feature may be necessary when working with film-originated material and offers a film-to-NTSC conversion: It renders, for example, video data that is in 24 progressive frames/sec. (film) as 30 interlaced frames/sec. (NTSC).



To use this feature the video track(s) of the timeline should contain 24p material only. With the **CHECK** button to the right you can ascertain that all material in the timeline is in this format. Prior to using pulldown it is recommended to check the timeline with this button.

Further information about the pulldown settings and pulldown in general can be found in the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.



With the fields regarding the resolution of the rendering you set the actual output resolution of the clip to be rendered and generated. As the fields indicate, you can alter the resolution to any format you like and the new clip will be present in this resolution. Use the **Resolution** fields to change the height and width of the clip.

The **Frame rate** entry field will be evaluated if a file format is selected that stores source timecode information in its header (e.g. **.dpx*). Then the specified timecode will provide the entered frame rate as the source timecode's frame rate.

Use the combo box for the field mode to select whether your material to be generated should be interlaced, progressive or segmented frames.

From the combo box **Dominance** select the dominance of your interlaced material. The `Odd fields` value starts with the second video field of the interlaced image while the value `Even fields` begins with the first video field.

Via the entry field **Aspect ratio** you can change the aspect ratio of your image content and thus compress or stretch the image. The aspect ratio value should be entered as the value of the x-axis divided by the y-axis.

Aspect ratio: `x/y`

The **Auto scale** and **Original aspect ratio** items enable you to scale and resize your original video material. Both settings are concerned

with the video format of the clips in the timeline, and their output for the clip to be rendered must be seen in relation to the selected video format of the new clip:

– With the combo box **Auto scale** set to `Fit` and the **Original aspect ratio** combo box activated, the clips of the timeline will be scaled to their maximum allowable width or height so that no information gets lost. If the aspect ratio is different, you will receive black bars in the finalized images.
– With this combo box set to `Crop` and the **Original aspect ratio** combo box activated, the images will be scaled to their maximum allowable width or height so that you receive a full image at the output. If the aspect ration is different, parts of the images may be cropped.
– With the **Auto scale** setting set to `Off`, the material will maintain its original size.
– With the combo box **Auto scale** set to `Fit` or `Crop` and the **Original aspect ratio** check box deactivated, the aspect ratio (the relation of width (x) and height (y) of the video format) will not be preserved. The resulting images will be stretched or compressed if the aspect ratio is different and you will always receive a full image at the output.

More details about autoscaling in combination with aspect ratio can be found in the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.

6.7.3 Configuring Audio

The settings items at the bottom of the finalizing window allow you to configure a finalizing of audio. To make them available the check box **Audio output** has to be activated.

With the finalizing function of the Edit Tool you are able to generate video and audio together or separately if desired: Simply select the appropriate output check box (see also section "Configuring Video" on page 6-82).

If a container format is selected as the file format (e.g. `Windows Media`), you cannot generate audio and video separately. Both will automatically be included in the created file.

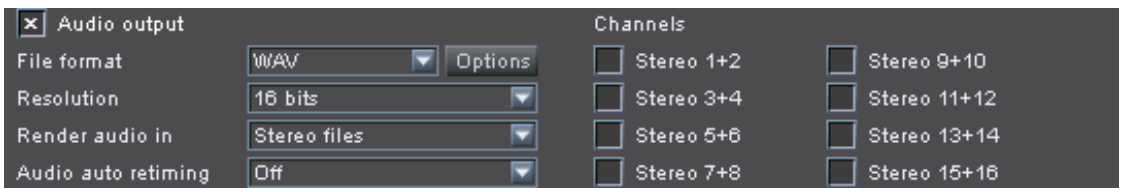


Figure 6-72: Configuring audio

With the **File format** combo box select the file format of your audio file(s) to be generated. For a list of the supported file formats see section "Supported File Formats" on page A-9. To the right of the **File format** combo box you can find the button **OPTIONS** which provides, depending on the selected format, further configurations for the files to be generated.

From the **Resolution** combo box select the bit depth of the audio files. The DVS software supports all common resolutions (bit depths).

Use the **Render audio in** combo box to determine the output format of your files, i.e. whether they should be rendered to individual stereo files or a single file containing multiple channels.

Audio that is available in the timeline can be re-timed (i.e. time stretched or time compressed) between different frame rates (e.g. 23.976 Hz, 24 Hz and 25 Hz). For this select from the **Audio auto retiming** combo box the appropriate option. When activated a retiming will be performed automatically during finalizing depending on the selected video format. However, please note that this feature provides no pitch control and should therefore be used for slight timing changes only.

With the check boxes of the area **Channels** you have to select audio channels for the output. The stereo channel check boxes of this area are directly related to the audio channel output settings of the timeline (see section "How to Configure the Audio Output" on page 6-14): They will render whatever audio track is set to the respective output channels:

Example:		
The audio track 1 and 2 of the Edit Tool contain each an audio clip with different contents (audio files 1 and 2). Both tracks are configured to an output of channel 1 and 2. In the **'Finalizing'** window select the channels 1 and 2 for an audio file generation. This will result in an audio file that contains the mixed contents of the audio files 1 and 2.		
Audio track of Edit Tool	1	2
Contents	audio file 1	audio file 2
Output settings of tracks	channels 1 + 2	channels 1 + 2
Output settings in **'Finalizing'** window	channels 1 + 2	
Results in file containing …	… the mixed contents of audio files 1 and 2	

6.7.4 Finalizing

The buttons at the bottom right-hand side of the window **'Finalizing'** allow you to control this window:



Use the button **RENDER** to start the finalizing process. It will be available as soon as the necessary information are set, such as output type, storage information and format.

Then the **'Finalizing'** window will be closed and the tool area of the DVS software will switch to the job list automatically (see section "Jobs" on page 4-33). Additionally, the state of the rendering process will be indicated by a progress bar. As soon as it reaches 100 %, the process will be finished and the window with the progress bar will be closed. You can then access the generated clip(s) on your storage.



With the button **CLOSE** you can close the **'Finalizing'** window without starting a rendering process. You will then return to the main window of the DVS software. However, already made settings in the **'Finalizing'** window will be stored.

6.7.5 The Finalized Output (Files per Folder)

The result (output) of a finalizing depends to some extent on the setting of the **Files per folder** items. They allow you to configure the number of files that will be stored in one directory.



Figure 6-73: The files per folder items

By default the files per folder items are set to 20,000 frames because this is an appropriate value for the file system of the operating system. Values below 1,000 files cannot be set. By activating the **Unlimited** setting no further subdirectories will be created and the rendered files will all be stored in the first generated subdirectory as described below.

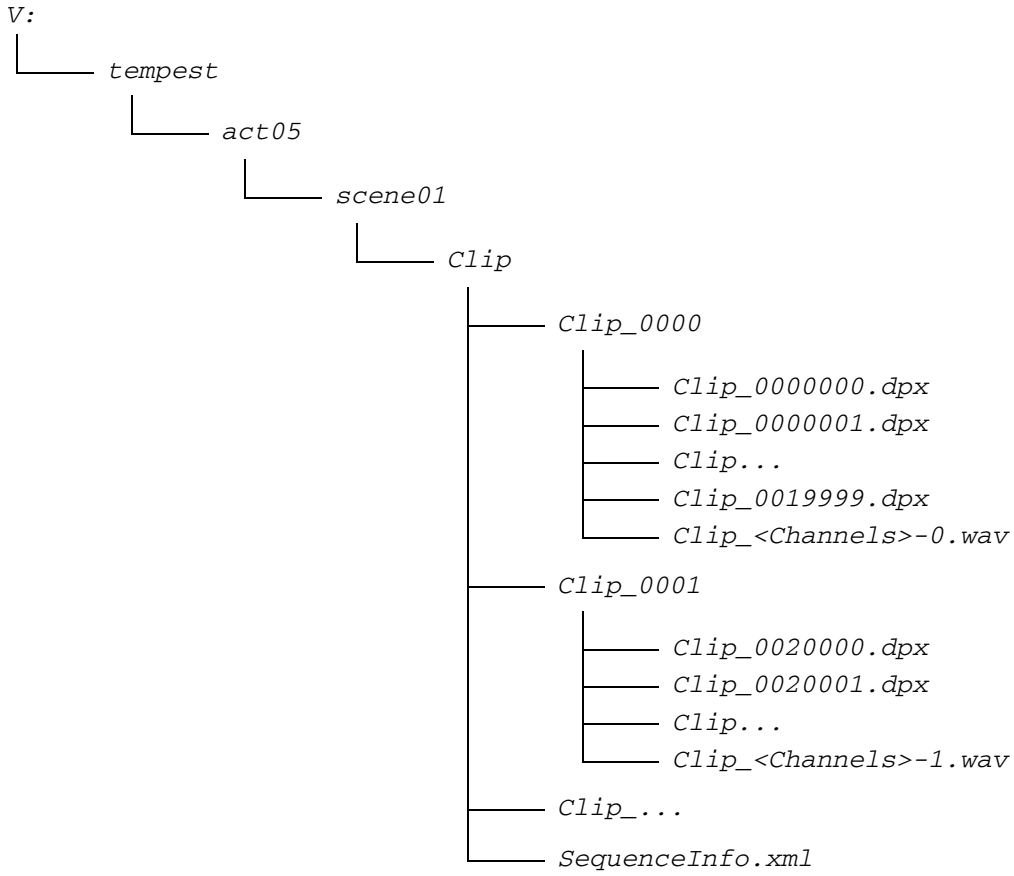


Windows may cause problems if more than 20,000 files are stored in one directory.

Use the **Unlimited** setting only when you are sure that your rendering causes less than 20,000 frames.

With the files per folder items set to 20,000 our examples given in section "Configuring Video" on page 6-82 and section "Configuring Au-

dio" on page 6-86 would lead to the following output on the storage when as the video output format the *.dpx file format were selected and for audio the *.wav file format:



In the path V:\tempest\act05\scene01 a directory will be created carrying the name Clip. Beneath it a subdirectory will be created with the name Clip_0000. In this subdirectory the first 20,000 frames of the finalizing will be stored.

The file name of the first frame of your rendered timeline will be Clip_0000000.dpx. The number in the file name will increase by one with every other generated frame. If the 20,000th frame is reached, the Edit Tool will again create a subdirectory (Clip_0001) in the selected path and start the generation of another 20,000 frames, and so on until the project is rendered completely according to your settings. The numbering of files/frames can be configured with the name options items (see section "Name Options" on page 6-90).

The matching audio files will be stored in these subdirectories as well, meaning the audio files will be appropriately cut to match the length of video stored in this folder. The place holder <Channels> in the file names of the audio files above indicates the selected audio channels of the area **Channels** when individual stereo files are created. Then for each enabled check box one file will be created. When a file with mul-

tiple channels is generated, the <Channels> place holder will be left out.

When video (still image sequence) or audio clips are finalized or recorded, an additional file with the name *SequenceInfo.xml* is created in the main directory of the clip. It is used by the DVS software to enable a recognition of multi-clips with different **Files per folder** settings, for example, during a drag-and-drop procedure to the bin.



For further information about multi-clips see section "Details about Clips" on page 4-10.

If a container format is selected as the file format, the file will be stored in the main directory, i.e. under *Clip*.

6.7.6 Name Options

In the DVS software you can receive during a finalizing variable information in file names with the name options items.



Figure 6-74: The name options items

The name options items allow you to write certain details of your files to be created to the file names automatically. With them you can provide the file names with information such as the following:

- Project name
- Video format
- Resolution
- Frame rate
- Color space
- Bit depth
- Aspect ratio
- File format
- File type
- Sampling rate
- Date
- …

Additionally, with the name options you can detail other name related options such as the numbering of the individual frame files.

To enable the name options in the finalize dialog you have to perform the following:

- Click on the **NAME OPTIONS...** button.

This will open the following window:

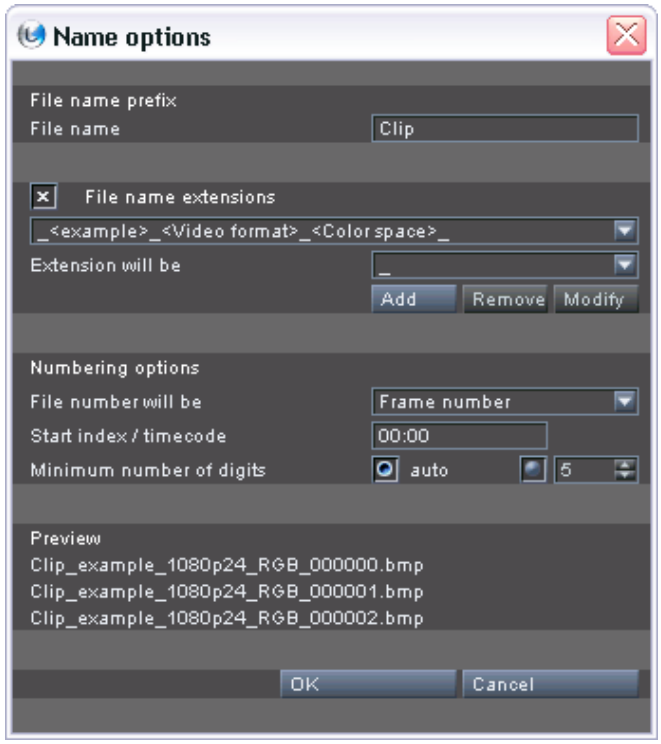


Figure 6-75: Options to configure a variable file naming

To set the name options perform the following:

- If not already available enter a file name prefix in the entry field **File name**.
- By activating or deactivating the **File name extensions** check box you can add variable and/or static components to the file names:

combo box	The upper combo box is used to assemble the file name extensions. By positioning the cursor or marking variables/separators via a double-click of the mouse in this field, the extensions can be assembled or edited using the items described below. Additionally, the drop-down list of this combo box provides some predefined extensions. The last ten assembled and confirmed name extensions can be found here as well. They will be available for the duration of the project and saved together with the project file.

Extension will be	Select from this combo box the variable or separator that should be transferred to the upper combo box. The variables will be replaced during the operation with the respective data if available. In case none is available 'Unknown' will be output. The variable `Customized` can be used to add a user-defined string to the extensions: With `Customized` selected the string can be entered in this combo box and then transferred to the upper one with the button **ADD**.
ADD	Use this button to transfer the selected extension to the upper combo box. It will be inserted at the current cursor position.
REMOVE	By double-clicking (marking) variables or separators in the upper combo box they can be deleted with this button. To delete extensions even without marking, you may also use the respective keys on your keyboard, i.e. [Backspace] and [Del].
MODIFY	This button will be available when a user-defined string (variable `Customized`) is double-clicked (marked) in the upper combo box. Then you can edit the text of this string in the field **Extension will be**. When finished, the marked extension in the upper combo box can be replaced with be edited text by clicking the **MODIFY** button.  The other variables can be modified by double-clicking them in the upper combo box and selecting another one from the combo box **Extension will be**.

- Use the **Numbering options** to configure a file numbering for the image files to be created:

File number will be	Select from this combo box what should be used to create the file numbers. You can select between a consecutive numbering of frames or the timeline timecode of the Edit Tool's timeline. When using the latter the Edit Tool's timeline timecode will be recalculated in frames with the frame rate set for the finalizing. This value is then used for the numbering.
Start index/timecode	When `Frame number` is selected in the combo box above, you can enter in this field the starting point for the numbering, i.e. with it you can offset the frame number in the file names of the image files. It can be entered either in frames or timecode notation depending on the selected notation for the Edit Tool (see section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17).
Minimum number of digits	With these radio buttons you can determine the minimum amount of digits that the numbering should provide. Either you let the DVS software decide how many digits the file numbering should provide (**auto**) or you set it manually with the entry field to the right. However, smaller values than the minimum number of digits required for the currently set finalizing cannot be set.

A preview of the file name can be seen below the items to set a numbering. For example, when as a file name prefix `scene` is entered and as the file extension `_<Date>_<Video format>_<Color space>_` is specified with a 5-digit numbering, you may receive an output like the following:

```
scene_20090101_1080p24_RGB_00000.dpx
scene_20090101_1080p24_RGB_00001.dpx
scene_20090101_1080p24_RGB_00002.dpx
scene_20090101_1080p24_RGB_00003.dpx
...
```

- Once the file names are set as desired click the **OK** button.

This will close the window to configure the name options and you will be returned to the finalize dialog.

- In the finalize dialog make sure that the check box in front of the **NAME OPTIONS...** button is activated, otherwise they will not be applied.

With this the configured file naming will be detailed in the finalize dialog accordingly (entry field **File name**). As long as the variable naming is activated via its check box, the field **File name** will be unavailable. The set name options will be applied to the generated files as soon as the rendering is initialized.

Timeline Element Properties



Timeline element properties are provided for video clips as well as transitions. They can be used to determine the appearance of the respective element in the timeline further. While with the properties of a transition you can, for example, set the type of wipe used for the transition, with the ones for a video clip you can add effects operators to the clip.

The effects operators of video clips provide you with additional editing features for your video processing tasks. Depending on the overall configuration of the DVS system and the optional features installed, there may be numerous operators available that enhance the editing functionality of your system.

This chapter describes the timeline element properties in detail. First, it will be explained how to access the properties, followed by an explanation of the items that are available in the properties area for all timeline elements. After that it is described how to close the area of the timeline element properties to return to the view of the audio tracks again. The chapter will be concluded with a description of the timeline element properties for each timeline element in detail. Following the section dealing with the properties of video clips you can find, each in a section of its own, the explanation of all available effects operators.

7.1 Accessing the Timeline Element Properties

The properties of timeline elements can be accessed easily in the Edit Tool. They will be shown instead of the visible audio tracks right below the timeline area in an area of their own. To make this area visible perform the following:

- Call up the context menu of a timeline element present in the video track of the timeline area.
- Then select the menu option ***Show properties***.

Alternatively, you can double-click the timeline element in the timeline to call up the properties.

The properties area will be displayed right below the timeline area instead of the audio tracks. It will show you immediately the properties of the selected element where the context menu was invoked:

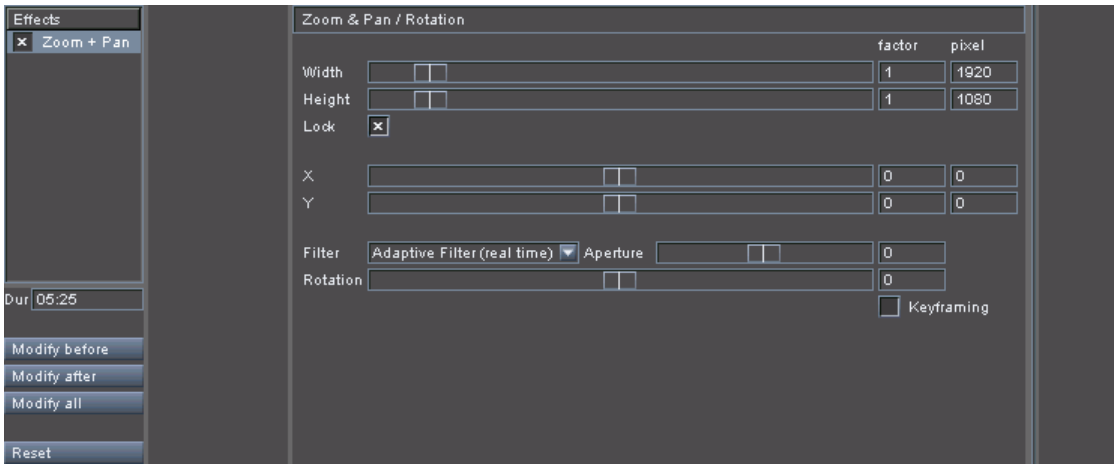


Figure 7-1: Video clip properties

With the timeline element properties area visible in the user interface, you can display the properties of every timeline element as soon as it is selected in the video track. Thus fast editing operations can be performed easily in the Edit Tool without laboriously calling the properties of each element again.

To view changes to an effect with the overlay of the control area immediately make sure that the timeline cursor is positioned on the clip where the effect was added.

7.2 General Items of the Properties Area

This section explains the items that are available in the properties area for all timeline elements.

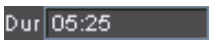
Depending on the type of element selected from the timeline not all items may be available. If they are dimmed, they cannot be used in conjunction with this timeline element.

Once the timeline element properties are visible beneath the timeline, you can find to the left side the following elements:



Figure 7-2: General items of the properties area

If available and not dimmed, they can be used together with this timeline element. In detail they perform the following:



With the **Dur** field you can change the length of the selected timeline element frame accurately. Simply type in the desired length (duration) of the timeline element and confirm your entry with the [Enter] key. After this the outpoint of the selected element in the timeline will be altered and it will take on the adjusted length. Whether the material succeeding the timeline element in the timeline will be preserved and moved accordingly depends on the state of the insert/overwrite mode of the Edit Tool (see section "The Insert/Overwrite Mode of the Timeline" on page 6-34). Further information about timecode/frame number entry fields can be found in section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17.



This button applies the settings of the currently selected timeline element or, with video clips, of the currently selected and displayed effects operator to all elements of the same type that precede it in this track of the timeline.



The button **MODIFY AFTER** applies the settings of the currently selected timeline element or, with video clips, of the currently selected and displayed effects operator to all elements of the same type that succeed it in this track of the timeline.



The button **MODIFY ALL** applies the settings of the currently selected timeline element or, with video clips, of the currently selected and displayed effects operator to all elements of the same type in this track of the timeline.



With the **RESET** button you can restore the default settings of the currently selected timeline element or, with video clips, of the currently selected and displayed effects operator with a single click.



Effect settings for video clips can also be applied to individual clips by using preset effects (see section “Creating Preset Effects” on page 4-26 and section “Using Preset Effects” on page 4-28).

7.3 Changing Values of Sliders and Entry Fields

Almost all operators provide sliders as well as entry fields to adjust their effects. You can adjust their values and settings in several ways:

1. Select a slider with the mouse and move it to the left or right (up or down) to the desired settings.
2. Use the [Up Arrow]/[Down Arrow] keys after the selection of one of the settings by clicking in its entry field to step the value up or down.
3. Use the scroll wheel of your mouse after positioning the mouse cursor over a slider to step up or down the value.
4. Enter in an entry field the desired setting and then press [Enter] on your keyboard.
5. Place the mouse cursor over an entry field and use the scroll wheel of your mouse to step up or down the value.

In most of the above mentioned cases you can in- or decrease the stepping value that will be used for the adjustments by pressing the [Ctrl] key to increase or the [Shift] key to decrease the stepping value. Furthermore, with a double-click of the mouse on a slider field you can on most sliders reset its setting to its default value.

7.4 Closing the Timeline Element Properties

The timeline element properties can be closed the same way they are called. After this the view of the audio tracks will be restored. To close the timeline properties area perform the following:

- With the timeline elements properties area visible below the timeline area call up the context menu of a timeline element present in the video track of the timeline area.
- Then select the menu option ***Show properties***.



Alternatively, you can double-click a timeline element in the timeline directly to close the properties.

This will close the properties area and afterwards the audio tracks will be visible again in the user interface of the Edit Tool.

7.5 Properties of a Transition

As soon as a transition is selected in the timeline, its properties are displayed in the timeline element properties area right below the timeline area.

If the properties area is not visible in the Edit Tool, you have to display it first (see section “Accessing the Timeline Element Properties” on page 7-2).

By default a transition is set to the wipe `Crossfade`. This can be changed via the properties of a transition easily:

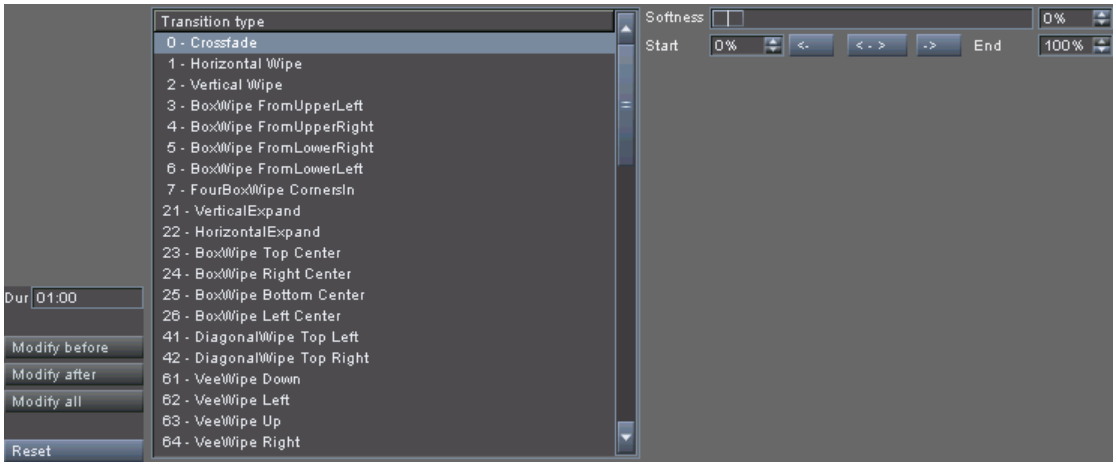


Figure 7-3: Transition properties

In the properties of the transition you can select another wipe for the transition than the default one from the **Transition type** list box. The following lists the transitions that are currently implemented. The numbers indicate the SMPTE number which are provided in the **Transition type** list box as well:

The graphics show the effects of the respective wipe and, if not reversed, the transition occurs towards the (increasing) white area.

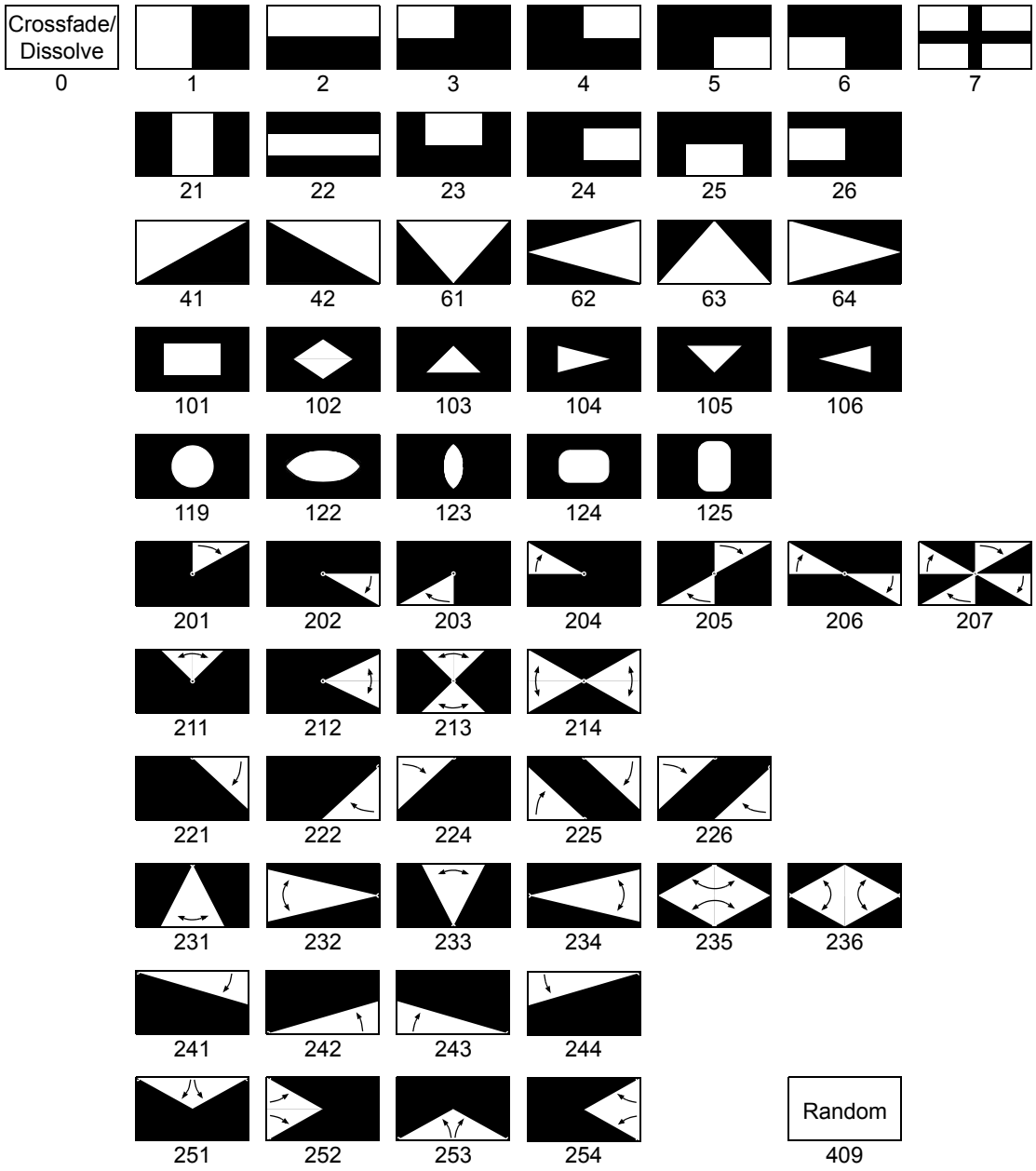


Figure 7-4: SMPTE wipes of the DVS software

After selecting one of the available wipes you have further possibilities at hand to adjust the transition:

Item	Description
Softness	Use the **Softness** slider and the percentage value to its right to adjust the softness (feathering) of the wipe. Then the edges of the emerging image appear softer so that they blend into the receding image with less contrast. With the slider you can set the softness to values between 0 and 100 %. However, with the percentage value to the right of the slider you can select values even greater than 100 %: Use the controls to the right of the entry field to step the value up or down until it is set as desired.
Start	The **Start** entry field indicates in percent the starting point of the transition. If adjusted, the operator will begin the transition at a later point of its phases to blend into the receding image. If this value is greater than the value set in the **End** entry field, the transition effect will be reversed, i.e. a change will appear towards the (increasing) black area (see graphics in figure 7-4 on page 7-8).
<-	This button transfers the value set in the **End** entry field to the **Start** entry field (from right to left).
< - >	This button exchanges the values between the **End** and **Start** entry fields. The value of the **End** entry field will be transferred to the **Start** entry field and vice versa.
->	With this button you can transfer the value set in the **Start** entry field to the **End** entry field (from left to right).
End	The **End** entry field indicates in percent the ending point of the transition. If adjusted, the operator will conclude the transition at an earlier point of its phases to blend into the receding image. If this value is less than the value set in the **Start** entry field, the transition effect will be reversed, i.e. a change will appear towards the (increasing) black area (see graphics in figure 7-4 on page 7-8).

As soon as an item of the transition properties is altered its effect is immediately applied to the selected transition between two clips. Once the transition properties are set, you can, for example, review the transition and evaluate its effect easily with the button **REVIEW** of the controls (see section “Controls” on page 5-11).

7.6 Properties of a Video Clip

Every video clip added to the timeline provides timeline element properties which offer you additional editing features for your work. These editing features can be accessed in the form of effects operators.

Depending on its optional features, DVS provides for the Edit Tool various operators that enhance the editing functionality of the DVS software. The following operators are available:

Effects Operator	Availability	Description
1st Color Correction	default	This operator provides various controls to perform a primary color/gamma correction to the clips in the timeline. Furthermore, you can assign a static look-up table (LUT) to the clips and thus perform a color and/or gamma correction with a single file.
2nd Color Correction	optional	If you have purchased this feature, a vector-based secondary color correction will be available in the DVS software. It allows you to color correct your clip with several definable color vectors.
6-Vector Color Correction	default	This operator provides six predefined colors which can be used for a selective color correction.
Flip/Flop	default	The flip/flop operator enables you to mirror the video image vertically and/or horizontally.
Zoom + Pan	default	This operator allows, for example, to set zooming and/or panning for the video clip in the timeline. It is by default available for all clips in the timeline.
DeInterlace	default	The DeInterlace operator uses either line based algorithms or motion estimation to deinterlace your interlaced material. With it you can render a clip from an interlaced image format to a progressive one.

In addition to these, the Edit Tool supports the OpenFX plug-in interface enabling you to extend its effects feature set with plug-ins developed by third parties. Once installed, they can be accessed in the effects

pane the same way as the effects operators provided by DVS (see section “Effects” on page 4-25).

Usually, effects operators are applied to single clips on the timeline only but their settings can be transferred to other clips of the timeline easily (see section “General Items of the Properties Area” on page 7-3).

This section explains in detail the possibilities when dealing with the properties of a video clip.

The operators offered by DVS will be described in detail in the sections following this one.

7.6.1 Adding Effects

As soon as a video clip is selected in the timeline, its properties are displayed in the timeline element properties area right below the timeline area. Then the clip is ready to receive an effects operator.

If the properties area is not visible in the Edit Tool, you have to display it first (see section “Accessing the Timeline Element Properties” on page 7-2).

To the left of the timeline element properties area you can find the **Effects** list of the selected clip. It contains a list of all effects operators that are currently applied to the clip:



Figure 7-5: Effects list of a video clip

The effects operator 'Zoom + Pan' is by default available for all video clips in the timeline and thus is already available in the effects list of the timeline element properties. However, the same effect with different settings as well as additional effects can be applied to the clip.

To add an effect to a clip in the timeline perform the following:

- If appropriate, activate the tab **Effects** in the tool area of the Edit Tool (see section “Effects” on page 4-25 for further information about this tab).

- Select from one of the folders the respective effects operator that you want to apply and drag and drop it to the **Effects** list of the timeline element properties:

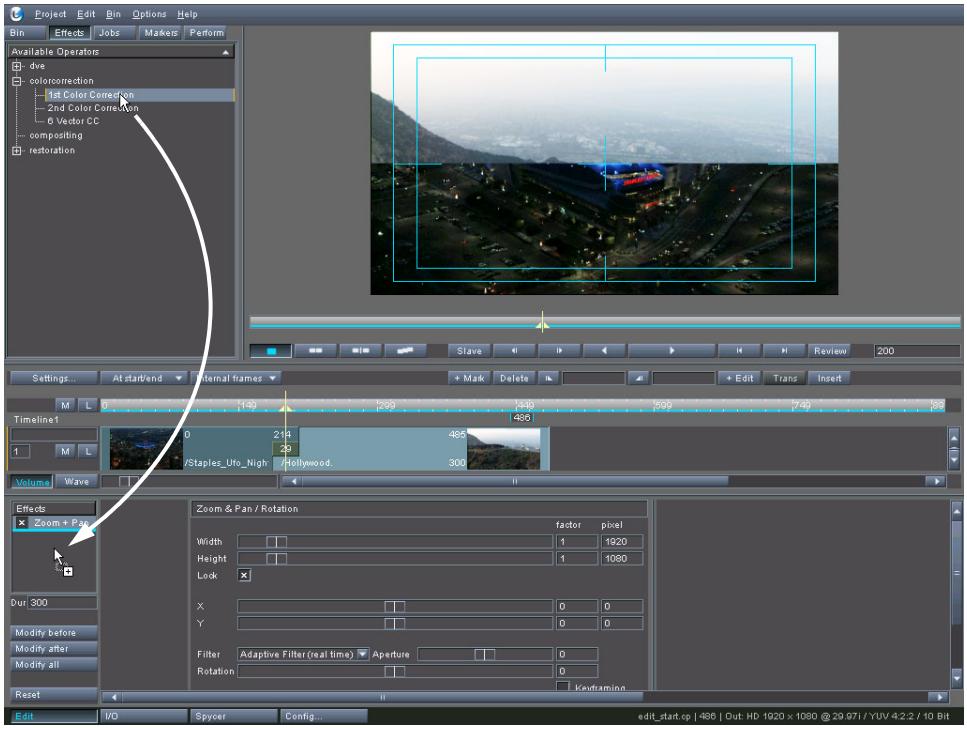


Figure 7-6: Drag and drop of effect

This will apply the selected effect to the clip whose properties are displayed in the area of the timeline element properties. Its settings controls will be made available in the settings pane to the right where you can then perform the desired adjustments (see section “Altering Effect Settings” on page 7-12).

Some effects are not real-time capable. Prior to a play-out their application to a clip in the timeline has to be rendered (see section “Prerendering of Timeline Elements” on page 6-46).

To delete an applied effect from the effects list of the clip in the timeline you can select the respective effect and press the key [Del] on your keyboard.

7.6.2 Altering Effect Settings

With the timeline element properties area you can set the properties of a video clip via the available effects operators. The effects added to a video clip in the timeline can be accessed easily with the effects list to the left:

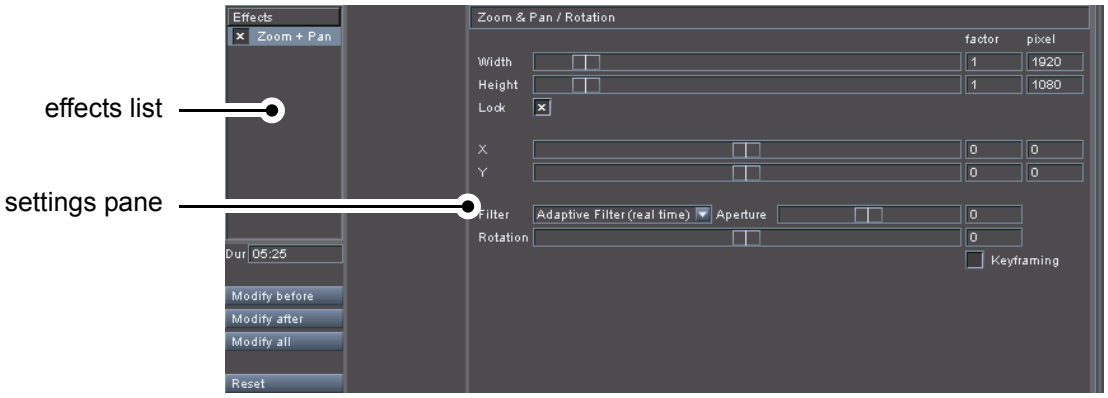


Figure 7-7: Video clip properties

Simply select an effect from the effects list and its settings are immediately displayed in the settings pane to the right of the list. Then they can be altered according to your liking and the changes are directly applied to the clip in the timeline.

The individual settings possibilities of the effects operators developed by DVS are explained in the later sections of this chapter. For a description of operators developed by third parties please refer to their respective documentation.

To view changes to the effects immediately with the overlay of the control area make sure that the timeline cursor is positioned on the clip currently selected in the timeline.

With the check boxes in front of the effects operators available in the effects list you can enable or disable effects. If a check box in front of an effect is activated, it is enabled; if it is deactivated, it is disabled. Thus you can easily evaluate the outcome of an individual effect by comparing it with the original image or other applied effects.

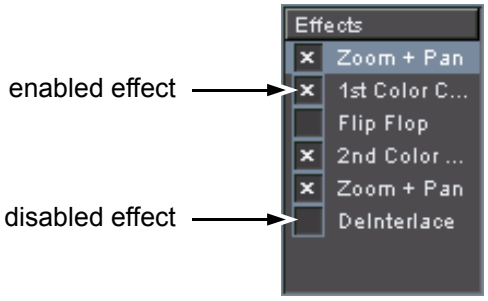


Figure 7-8: Enabling or disabling effects of a video clip

If you need an operator to be applied to a limited range of frames of a clip only, you have to edit the clip with hard cuts beforehand because the applied effects are valid for a whole timeline clip always.

Some operators may not be real-time capable. Clips modified with such an operator will automatically be subject to a prerendering (see section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46).

The sequence of all added effects to a clip that are listed in the effects list is important as well. They are applied top to bottom, i.e. the effect at the top of the list will be applied first to the clip followed successively by the rest of the added effects. This may be especially important when applying the same effect type several times, because, for instance, in case of a color correction, the bottom color correction will be applied to the colors corrected by the top color correction(s). You can change the sequence of the effects in the effects list easily via drag-and-drop. Simply select one effect and drag it to the desired position within the list.

An effect can be deleted from the effects list of a clip the same way you delete a clip from the timeline. Just select the effect from the effects list in the timeline element properties and press the key [Del] on your keyboard or select from its context menu the menu option ***Delete***.

To apply the same effect settings to other clips in the timeline you can either use the general items to the left of the timeline element properties area (see section "General Items of the Properties Area" on page 7-3) or use preset effects as described in section "Effects" on page 4-25 and section "Using Preset Effects in the Properties Area" on page 7-14.

When transferring settings to other clips in the timeline (e.g. via the 'modify' buttons), only the settings of the currently selected operator are copied. In case you want to apply the settings of another operator to clips in the timeline, you have to select it in the effects list and perform the same procedure again.

7.6.3 Using Preset Effects in the Properties Area

To apply the same effect settings of one clip to another the adjusted effect's settings in the timeline element properties can be created as an independent effect easily. Afterwards they can be applied to other clips on the timeline without any problem.

To create such a preset effect as well as apply it to a selected clip in the timeline you may use the context menu of an effect in the effects list.



Further information about preset effects and, for example, other ways to create and apply them as well as how to use them for several projects, can be found in section “Effects” on page 4-25.

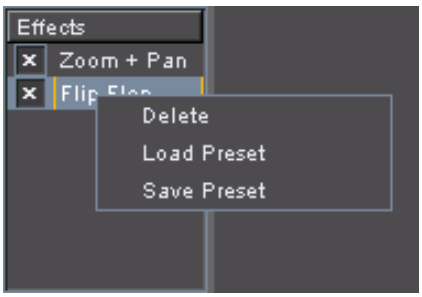


Figure 7-9: Context menu of the effects list

The context menu of an effects operator in the effects list provides the following menu options:

Delete This menu option deletes the respective effect where the context menu was invoked from the effects list. After this its effect is removed from the clip in the timeline. Alternatively, you can select the effects operator and press the [Del] key on your keyboard.

Load Preset The ***Load Preset*** menu option enables you to load the settings of a preset effect to the respective effects operator. After the selection of this menu option a dialog window opens where you have to select the wanted preset effect from a list. Once this is confirmed with the **OK** button, the settings of the preset effect will be applied to the selected effects operator.

Save Preset This menu option creates a preset effect of the effect where the context menu was invoked. After its activation a dialog window opens where you have to enter a name for the preset effect. Once this is confirmed with the **OK** button, the preset effect will be created as a 'subeffect' under the respective effect in the tool area's effects pane. Then it can be used easily to apply the same effect setting over and over again for different clips in the timeline, for example, with the ***Load Preset*** menu option (see above).

7.7 The Operator 'Zoom + Pan'

The operator 'Zoom + Pan' allows to zoom, pan and rotate as well as to sharpen or blur the contents of the video clip in the timeline. It is by default available and active for all clips in the timeline and thus the first operator visible in the timeline element properties area after it has been accessed.

For this effect keyframing is available (see section "Keyframing" on page 7-21).

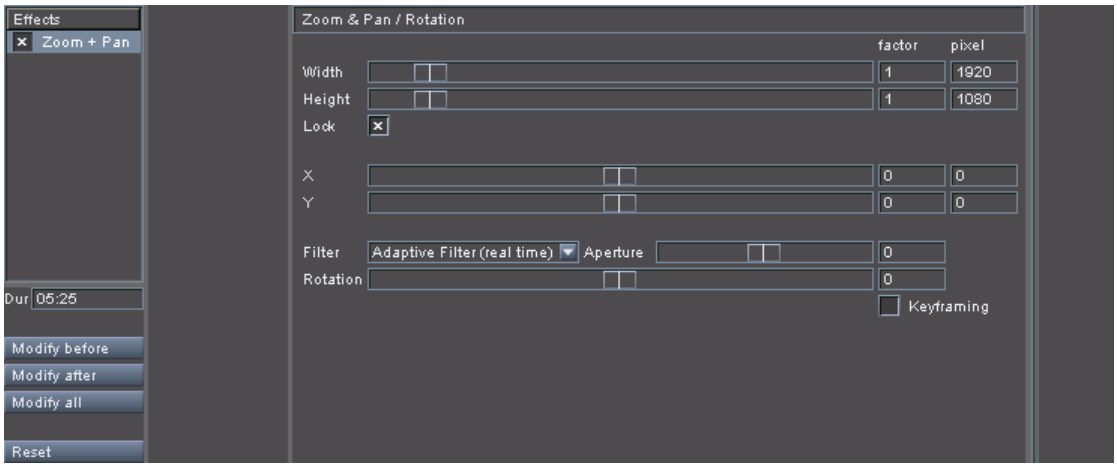


Figure 7-10: Zoom and pan operator

This section describes in detail the settings that this operator provides.

7.7.1 Items for Zooming

With the sliders for width and height you can adjust the zooming. Simply pull the sliders to the left to zoom out of the clip or to the right to zoom in.



Figure 7-11: The items for zooming

Additionally, you can enter either the zoom factor or the pixel size that the original frames should be set to in the respective entry fields to the right of the sliders manually.

Slider	Slider Movement	Result	Factor Range
Width / Height	left	zoom out	< 1
	right	zoom in	> 1

With the check box **Lock** activated, the original aspect ratio (the relation of width (x) and height (y) of the video format) can be preserved. If enabled, the images will neither get stretched nor compressed and the remaining value will adjust itself automatically.

The way a zooming of the video clip is performed can be influenced with the combo box **Filter**. Its settings are explained in section "Advanced Settings" on page 7-18.

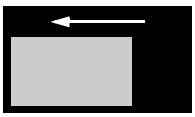
7.7.2 Items for Panning

To achieve a panning for the currently selected clip two sliders are at your disposal.



Figure 7-12: The items for panning

With them you can move, for instance, in a zoomed clip to the part of the clip (image) that should be displayed during a play-out. For example, if you move the **X** slider to the left, the image will move to the left; and if you move the **Y** slider to the left, it moves up:

Slider	Slider Movement	Image Movement	Factor and Pixel Range
X	left		negative
	right		positive

Slider	Slider Movement	Image Movement	Factor and Pixel Range
Y	left		negative
	right		positive

As already indicated in the table above to the right of the sliders you can find entry fields where you can specify either the image movement factor or the movement in pixels manually. Simply enter the respective value with the appropriate sign as specified in the table to pan the image. The factor and pixel range entries have to be set in dependence on the settings made for zooming.

7.7.3 Advanced Settings

Below the items for panning you can find a combo box to determine the filter used for zooming as well as two sliders to set the rotation and sharpness.



Figure 7-13: The advanced settings items

The combo box **Filter** is associated with the sliders for sharpness (setting **Aperture**) and zooming. It determines the algorithm that will be used to change the video image content. The following settings are available on the list of the combo box:

Filter	Meaning
`Classic (real time)`	This filter uses an algorithm without filtering and is ideal when working with light scaling factors only, because it results in very sharp pictures. If this filter is selected, all alterations will be performed in real time, but sharpness cannot be controlled manually.

Filter	Meaning
`Bilinear (real time)`	This setting applies a bilinear filtering to the zoomed image and may be appropriate for greater scaling factors. If this filter is selected, all alterations will be performed in real time, but sharpness cannot be controlled manually.
`Adaptive Filter (real time)`	The 'Adaptive Filter' is the default setting for the 'Zoom + Pan' operator. It provides an optimized filtering for every scaling factor which will result in high-end quality pictures. This filter is real-time capable, i.e. all changes to sharpness or a zooming can be played out immediately.
`Adaptive+ Filter (real time)`	This filter doubles the precision and quality of the 'Adaptive Filter' by using hardware resources that are normally used to calculate transitions in real time. When the 'Adaptive+ Filter' is selected for clips and the clips are zoomed, transitions on these clips may require a prerendering (see section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46). A prerendering can be avoided either by removing a scaling or setting the clips to the default 'Adaptive Filter'.
`Software Filter (rendering)`	With this setting the best possible filter is selected. It provides a software based sophisticated algorithm for all settings on the operator 'Zoom + Pan'. However, if this filter is used, the clip has to be prerendered prior to a play-out (see section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46).

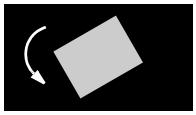
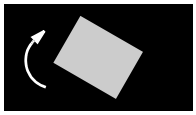
With the **Aperture** items to the right of the **Filter** combo box you can sharpen or blur the image. The slider and its entry field to the right find their main usage when Moiré effects occur in your images. Moiré effects are interferences in your video output signal usually caused by fine black and white image details in your video clip such as striped or checked patterns. If such interferences in your output occur, use the

slider and pull it to the left or right until the jittering or other interferences disappear.

Slider	Slider Position	Result	Factor or Factor Range
Aperture	left	blur	< 1
	right	sharpen	> 1

The **Aperture** slider is not available for certain filters selected via the combo box **Filter**.

With the **Rotation** slider and its entry field at the bottom of the settings pane you can rotate the clip full circle (±180°). By dragging the slider to the left or entering a negative value in the entry field you can rotate the image counter-clockwise and by dragging the slider to the right or entering positive values you can rotate the image clockwise.

Slider	Slider Movement	Rotation	Entry Field Values
Rotation	left		negative
	right		positive

If a clip is rotated, the clip has to be prerendered prior to a playout (see section “Prerendering of Timeline Elements” on page 6-46).

The check box **Keyframing** activates keyframing for this effect. Further information about this can be found in section “Keyframing” on page 7-21.



7.8 Keyframing

For effects there may be keyframing available. It allows you to use the effect on a clip's timeline with definable points of settings (keyframes). With this you can easily configure, for instance, smooth transitions between these effect's settings, for example, to fade in the effect during a play-out of the clip.

This feature is available for zooming and panning (see section "The Operator 'Zoom + Pan'" on page 7-16).

For a description how to activate it, please refer to the section of the above mentioned effect.

Once activated for the respective effect, the keyframe editor will be displayed in the settings pane of the effect:

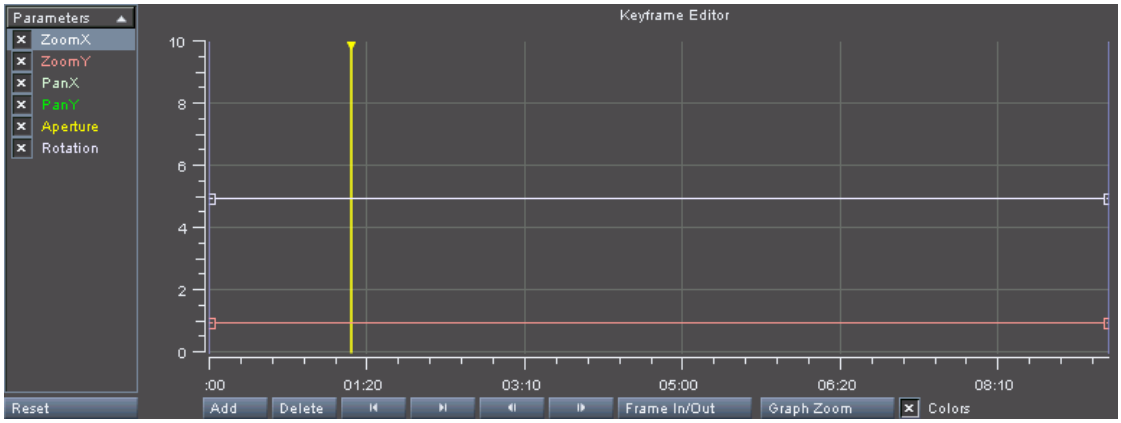


Figure 7-14: Keyframe editor

With the keyframe editor a keyframing of the effect's settings can be set. On the left hand side you can find a list of the effect's settings that can be used for a keyframing. On the right hand side the graph of the keyframe editor is displayed where a keyframing can be configured.

7.8.1 The Parameters List

To the left of the keyframe editor you can find the **Parameters** list. It lists all settings of the effect that can be used for a keyframing:

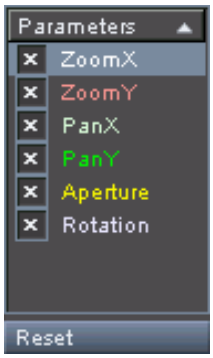


Figure 7-15: Parameters list

For each effect setting in the list there is one keyframing line available in the graph of the keyframe editor. In the default view of the keyframe editor they are color coded, meaning each setting is displayed in a different color and you can easily identify the keyframing line belonging to a setting because they are drawn in the same color.

However, due to the fact that most effect settings have default values of either one (e.g. 1.000) or 50 %, their respective keyframing lines may overlap each other in the graph. With the list of parameters you can select the setting that should be keyframed: When selecting a setting from the list, you can click on the stack of keyframing lines in the graph and create a keyframe for this particular setting (even if others are visible on top of it). However, this works only as long as there is no other keyframe available at this location. In case you accidentally selected another stack of lines, the keyframe will be created instead on the keyframing line first available from the top of the parameters list.



You can see the selected keyframing line and whether others are on top of it more clearly with the check box **Colors** deactivated. Then the keyframing lines are displayed without color coding, except for the currently selected line which will be highlighted in blue (as long as no other lines are on top of it).

The check boxes in front of the settings in the parameters list allow you to display or hide keyframing lines in the graph. If the check box in front of a setting is activated, its keyframing line is displayed; if deactivated, it is hidden. With this you can display only those keyframing lines in the graph where a keyframing should be performed.

Additionally, the settings entries of the **Parameters** list provide the following context menu:

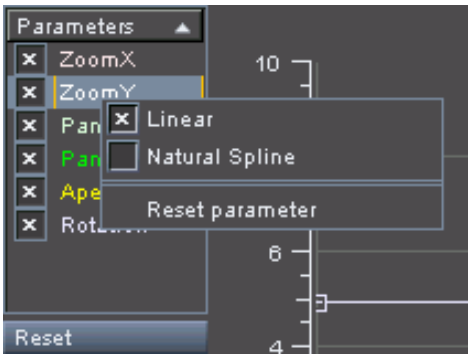


Figure 7-16: Context menu of parameters list

Linear ***Natural Spline***	These settings determine the curving of the keyframing line of the selected setting. You can toggle between them. With ***Natural Spline*** activated the keyframing line will be curved between the keyframes, with ***Linear*** it will be straight from keyframe to keyframe. To activate ***Natural Spline*** at least one additional keyframe has to be set on the keyframing line of the selected setting.
Reset parameter	This menu option resets the selected setting of the parameters list. It removes all additional keyframes from the keyframing line, restores its default values and sets it back to ***Linear***.

The button **RESET** sets all settings of the parameters list back to their default values and states, i.e. all additional keyframes will be removed from their keyframing lines, their default values will be restored and their curving will be linear again.

7.8.2 Viewing the Graph

Because an effect is valid for a single clip in the timeline, the graph of the keyframe editor usually shows the timeline of the selected clip. Nevertheless, it can be set to a viewing/zooming of your needs.

When trimming a clip in the timeline while the keyframing editor is visible, the trimming will be displayed in the graph: The trimmed parts will be shown dimmed with a blue hue.

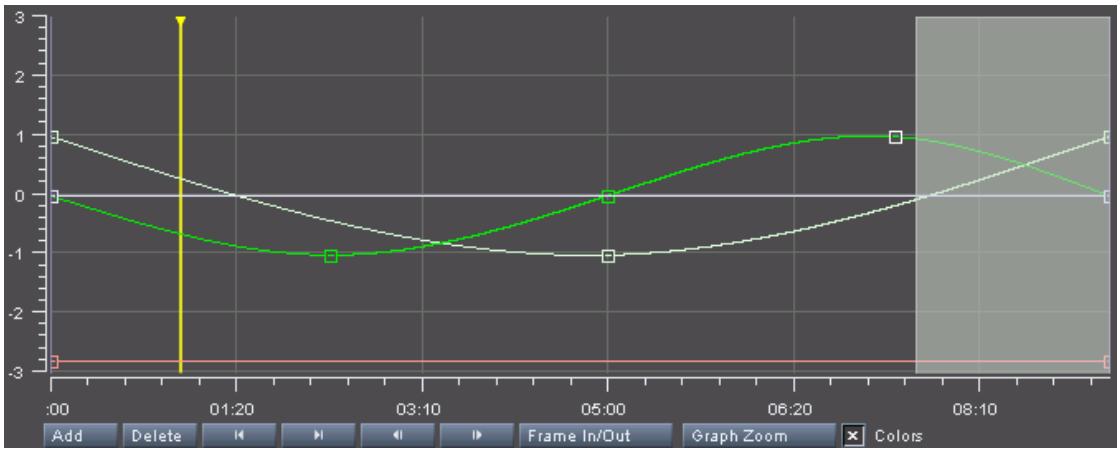


Figure 7-17: The graph

To work on a selected part of a clip you can use the button **FRAME IN/OUT**: Set the timeline's in- and outpoint to the part you want to zoom into and press this button. The graph will then display the selected part only.

The graph will show the timeline's in- and outpoint same as the timeline: Any deselected part will be displayed in a dimmed fashion.

A zooming can also be performed with the button **GRAPH ZOOM**: Pressing this button while moving with the mouse to the right or left allows you to zoom in and out of the graph. Alternatively, instead of the button you can also use the keyboard combination [Shift + Ctrl] (then move the mouse). The zooming will be made on the current viewing position.

In case you want to view a particular detail, you can hold down the [Ctrl] key and draw a (yellow) rectangle with the mouse around it in the graph. Once the mouse button is released, the view of the graph will be adjusted to the width of the drawn rectangle.

When zoomed into the graph, a scroll bar will be available at the top of the graph which allows you to change the viewing position on the graph's timeline. You can also hold down the keyboard keys [Shift + Alt] and move the mouse to the right or left to change the viewing position.

As long as the graph has the focus, you can reverse a zooming and step between previous views on the clip's timeline with the keyboard keys [Page Up] and [Page Down].

The viewing/zooming can also be set back to the full view of the clip's timeline again. For this you have to use the context menu of the graph:

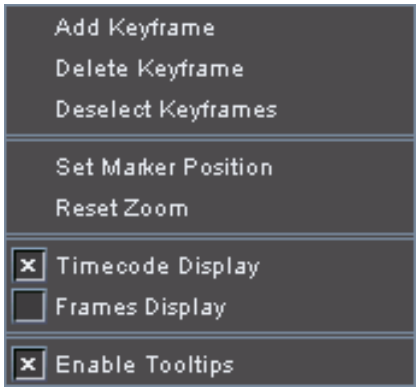


Figure 7-18: Context menu of the graph

On the graph's context menu select the menu option ***Reset Zoom*** to reset the view of the timeline.

Furthermore, the context menu provides the possibility to switch the notation of the graph's scale. For this select from the context menu either the ***Timecode Display*** or ***Frames Display*** menu option. This will change the notation of the graph as well as of all position and length indicators in the software module.

7.8.3 Moving within the Graph

The graph provides a cursor same as the timeline cursor of the Edit Tool. They are connected to each other, meaning when one of them is moved, the other one will move accordingly. This way you can move in the graph directly and see the effect of a keyframing in the overlay immediately:

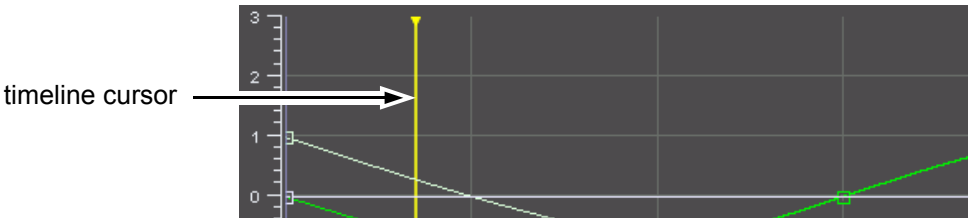


Figure 7-19: The timeline cursor in the graph

To position keyframes or review their effect you may want to move the timeline cursor in the graph. There are several ways to do this:

– You can click anywhere with the mouse in the graph and the timeline cursor will be positioned there immediately.
– The timeline cursor of the graph can be scrubbed the same way as you can scrub a scrub bar/timeline of the DVS software.

– You can use the controls of the Edit Tool as usual to move in or play out the timeline (see section "Moving within the Timeline" on page 6-29). The cursor of the graph will be moved accordingly.
– You can set an in- and outpoint for the timeline (see section "Setting an In- and Outpoint for the Timeline" on page 6-32), for example, to confine a play-out to the clip currently under processing or to zoom further into the graph (see section "Viewing the Graph" on page 7-23).

When moving the graph's timeline cursor with the mouse, its exact position is displayed to the left of the cursor:



Figure 7-20: Exact positioning 1

Additionally, you can move the timeline cursor with the menu option ***Set Marker Position*** of the graph's context menu (see figure 7-18 on page 7-25). It will open a small window in the graph where the position of the timeline cursor can be entered:

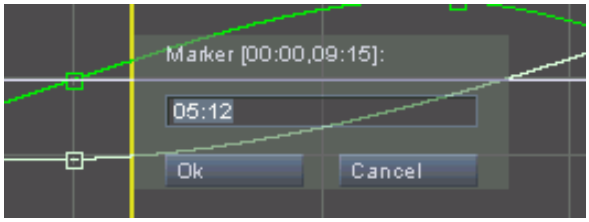


Figure 7-21: Exact positioning 2

The range of possible values that can be entered is indicated in the window in square brackets. Once a correct position is entered, the marker can be positioned there exactly either by using the **OK** button of the window or by pressing [Enter].

Furthermore, there are some buttons available at the bottom of the keyframe editor that allow you to move the graph's cursor:



You can jump to particular points in the graph with these buttons (e.g. to keyframes and the beginning/end of a clip). The first button jumps to a previously located point in the graph while the second button jumps to the next one.



With these buttons you can step one frame for- or backward in the clip currently under processing. The cursor will move accordingly. Alternatively, you may use the keyboard shortcuts [Left Arrow]/[Right Arrow] or [3]/[4] when the timeline has the focus.

7.8.4 Setting Keyframes

Keyframes for an effect setting can be set easily in the keyframe editor: A single click on the respective keyframing line of the setting in the graph will create a keyframe.

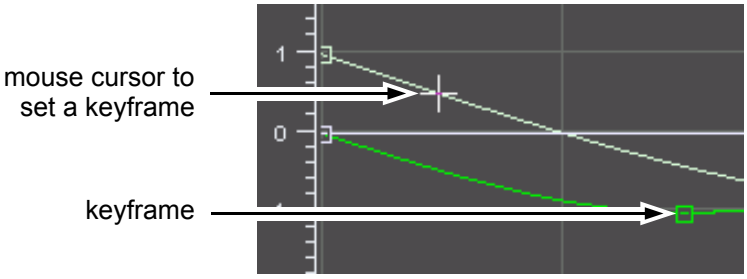


Figure 7-22: Creating keyframes

Usually the keyframe will be created on the keyframing line of the setting that is either selected or available first in the parameters list (see section “The Parameters List” on page 7-21).

To create keyframes you can also use the button **ADD** below the graph. It will create keyframes on all visible keyframing lines at the current location of the timeline cursor.

Additionally, with the menu option ***Add Keyframe*** of the graph’s context menu (see figure 7-18 on page 7-25) you can create a keyframe for the setting that is currently selected in the parameters list. The keyframe will be created at the position of the timeline cursor.

7.8.5 Positioning Keyframes

Once a keyframe is created, it can be moved and positioned freely with the mouse:



Figure 7-23: Positioning keyframes

During the moving of a keyframe with the mouse, its position and setting is displayed on the screen, allowing you to accurately position and set the keyframe.

Each keyframing line represents a setting of the effect. Thus, to set and adjust a keyframe you can also use the settings of the effect directly. Simply select one of the settings items in the settings pane of the effect and a keyframe will be created on the respective keyframing line at the position of the timeline cursor. Then it can be adjusted to your needs with the settings item of the effect directly.

The settings items of the effect can also be used to adjust already available keyframes. For this position the timeline cursor of the graph on a keyframe (see section "Moving within the Graph" on page 7-25) and then use the settings item in the settings pane of the effect to change the keyframe.

An already created keyframe can also be adjusted precisely in the graph with a double-click of the mouse on a keyframe. This will open a small window in the graph where the setting of the keyframe can be entered:

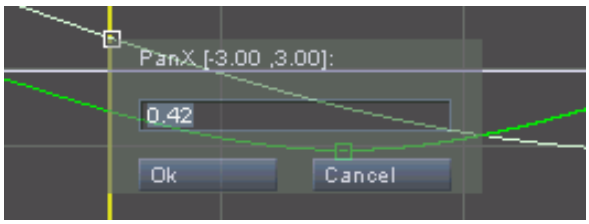


Figure 7-24: Exact positioning of keyframe

The range of possible values that can be entered is indicated in the window in square brackets. Once a valid setting is entered, the keyframe can be precisely set either by using the **OK** button of the window or by pressing [Enter].

7.8.6 Further Possibilities

When working with keyframes there are further possibilities at hand, for example, to select and position keyframes or to delete them:

Just as easily as single keyframes can be selected with the mouse, several keyframes can be selected. For this hold down the [Shift] key and draw a rectangle around them:

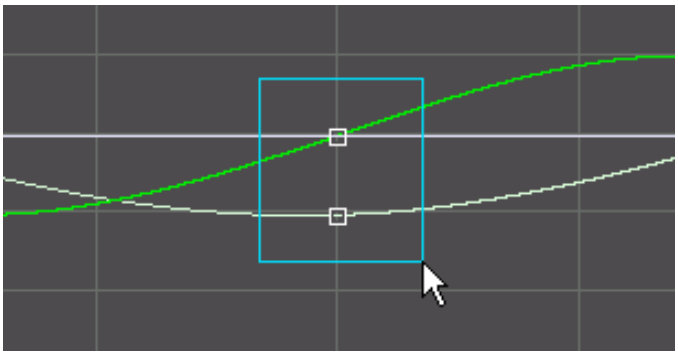


Figure 7-25: Selecting several keyframes

Once the mouse button is released, the keyframes within the rectangle will be selected. Then they can, for example, be positioned all at once by moving one of them with the mouse. The selected keyframes can be deselected with the menu option ***Deselect Keyframes*** of the graph's context menu (see figure 7-18 on page 7-25).

Of course, created keyframes can also be deleted. For this you have various possibilities at hand: You can select one or more keyframes in the graph and press [Del] on your keyboard or the button **DELETE** below the graph, or you can use the menu option ***Delete Keyframe*** of the context menu of the graph (see figure 7-18 on page 7-25).

Keyframes can also be deleted by resetting the keyframing line(s) (see section "The Parameters List" on page 7-21).

With the menu option ***Enable Tooltips*** of the context menu of the graph (see figure 7-18 on page 7-25) you can turn on or off tooltips for the keyframing editor, independent from the rest of the tooltips displayed in the Edit Tool.

7.9 The Operator 'Flip Flop'

The flip/flop operator enables you to mirror the video image vertically and/or horizontally.

If the flip/flop operator is used on a clip, it has to be prerendered prior to a play-out (see section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46).

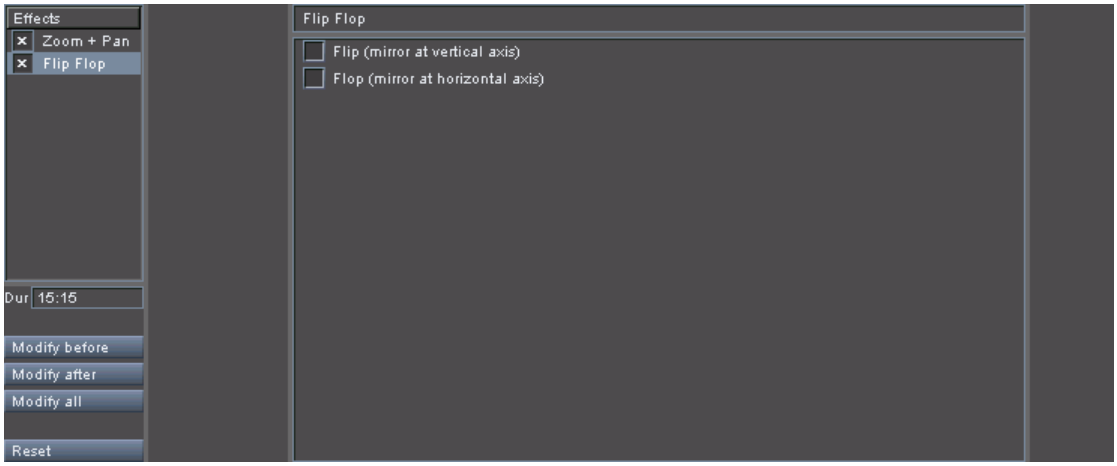


Figure 7-26: Flip/flop operator

The following settings are available on the flip/flop operator:

Setting	Meaning
Flip	When this check box is enabled the clip's images will be flipped in horizontal direction, i.e. the image is mirrored along the vertical axis.
Flop	Activating the **Flop** check box will mirror the images along the horizontal axis thereby turning the pictures upside down.

7.10 The Operator '1st Color Correction'

The operator '1st Color Correction' can be used to perform a primary color and/or gamma correction on the currently selected clip in the timeline. It provides a user interface where you can load a static LUT, as well as several sliders for a more immediate control:

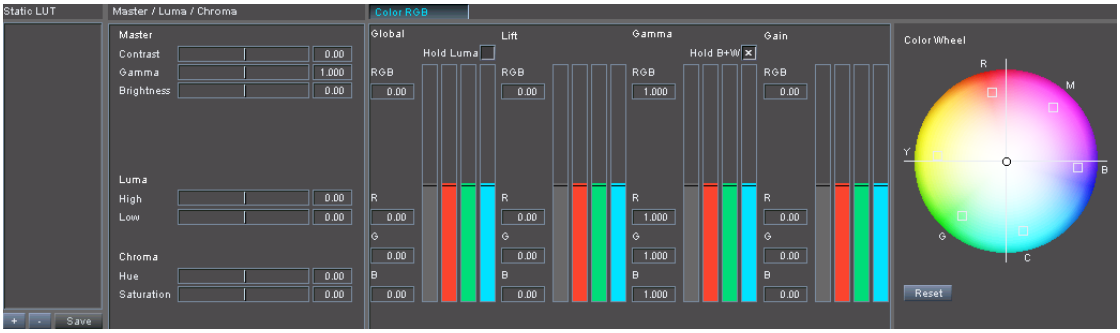


Figure 7-27: 1st color correction operator

This section describes in detail the settings provided by the '1st Color Correction' operator.

7.10.1 Static LUT

With the operator '1st Color Correction' you can assign a static look-up table (LUT) to the currently selected clip to perform a color and/or gamma correction.

With this operator only one-dimensional look-up tables (1D LUT) can be applied. 3D LUTs can be loaded and applied to the timeline via the video format settings (optional feature, see section “Loading and Applying a 3D LUT File” on page 6-18)



Figure 7-28: The area for to set a static LUT

In the area **Static LUT** you can find at its top a list box that will contain the LUT files in the order they were selected. If the list box contains

more than one LUT, the effects of the LUT files are combined to color correct the images of the clip.

Below the list box three buttons are available. With the button **+** you can load a LUT. For this select in the opening dialog window the directory path and file name of the look-up table. After this confirm your selection with the button **OPEN**. This will load the selected LUT file and its name and path will be entered in the list box above.

File extension:	`*.lut`	Look-up table
	`*.txt`	

The selected file will then be valid for the currently selected clip and a color and/or gamma correction will be performed accordingly. By repeating this action you can select and load more than one LUT file and their effects will be combined.

Several sample LUT files are delivered with the DVS software. They can be found in the directory `lut` of the software's installation path (default: `C:\Program Files\DVS\Clipster`).

With the button **-** you can delete an already applied LUT from the list box. Simply select an LUT file entry from the list box and press this button to delete it.

If more than one LUT file is loaded, the button **SAVE** will combine their color correction settings and create a new LUT file from the already set ones. The selection of this button opens a standard dialog window to save a file. There you have to specify the storage path and file name of the new LUT file. Once you confirm your settings with the button **SAVE**, the file will be created. After that you can use this single LUT file instead of several ones to color correct video clips.

Once finished with the loading of a static look-up table, you can perform further adjustments to the appearance of the clip via the controls to the right of the primary color correction.

More detailed information about 1D LUT files can be found in section “1D LUT Files” on page A-13.

7.10.2 Master / Luma / Chroma

With the **Master**, **Luma** and **Chroma** items you can adjust the luminance as well as color settings:

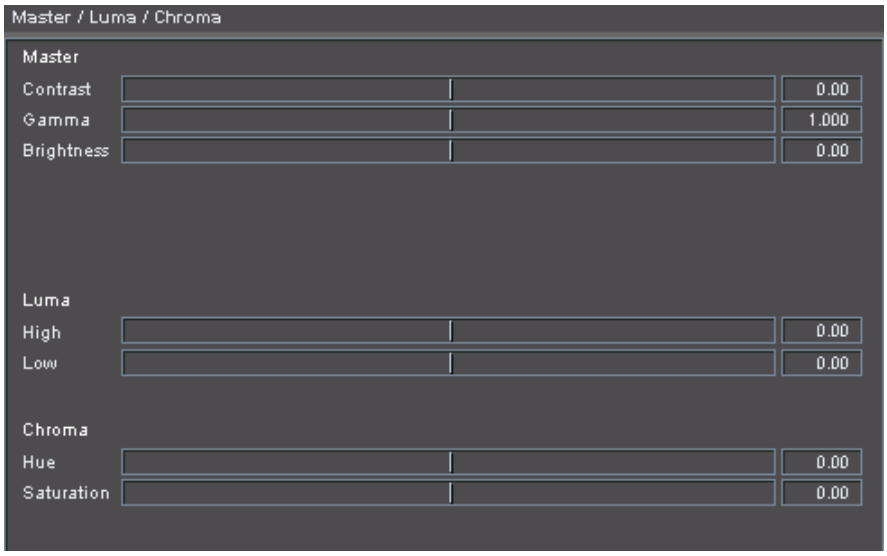


Figure 7-29: The area for master, luma and chroma

With the **Master** items you can adjust luminance relevant settings, such as gamma or brightness:

Contrast With the contrast items you can set the contrast of the clip's images. An increase of the contrast setting will push the image colors more towards their full color, whereas a decrease will adjust the colors more towards a tone of grey. You can adjust the settings between -100 (no contrast) and +100 (maximum contrast).

Gamma **Gamma** adjusts the mid-tones of an image. Lowering the value will darken the mid-tones, bringing the image closer to black. Raising the value will lighten the mid-tones while bringing the image closer to white. Sometimes this setting can be used to make details visible that are usually hidden in shadows or highlights. The settings range is between 0.1 and 3 where 1 represents the unchanged image.

Brightness The brightness setting adjusts the luminance of the image and indicates the bright- and darkness of the image colors. It is measured between -100 (black) and +100 (white).

The items of the group **Luma** allow you to adjust the white or black point of the clip's images:

High Adjusts the brighter parts of the clip, i.e. the gain or white point. By using this setting only the luminance changes, the chroma settings remain as they were. Values range from -100 to +100.

Low — Adjusts the darker parts of the clip, i.e. the lift or black point. By using this setting only the luminance changes, the chroma settings remain as they were. Values range from -100 to +100.

With the **Chroma** items you can adjust color related settings, such as the hue:

Hue — The hue setting moves the colors of the images around the color wheel in the HSL color space (±180°). It is recommended to use this setting lightly for small corrections only: Adjustments greater than ±10 usually produce dramatic color changes.

Saturation — A color's saturation is its intensity. A higher saturation will make the color to appear richer, while a lower saturation makes it look paler, or in other words the saturation is the proportion of grey in relation to the color's hue. This setting can be set between -100 (grey) and +100 (full saturation).

7.10.3 Global

The **Global** items provide you with sliders for each color value (**R**, **G** and **B**) as well as a master slider to adjust them all at once.

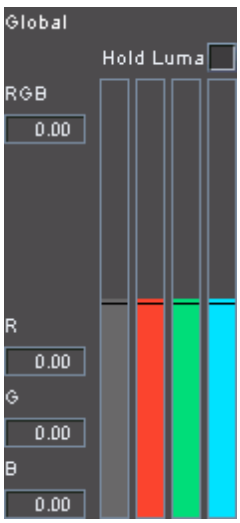


Figure 7-30: The global color settings

Use the sliders **R**, **G** or **B** to step up or down the color values of the image for the respective color component (red, green or blue). With the master slider **RGB** to the left you can set the settings for all three color components at once, even after already adjusting individual color components.

The check box **Hold Luma** allows you to hold the luminance level of the clip while adjusting a single color component. Usually, while adjusting a color component, the luminance of the clip is changed as well, i.e. changes occur in the **Brightness** setting, too. When this check box is activated during the adjustment of a color component, e.g. **G**, instead of adjusting the brightness parameter, the luminance of the image is set via the remaining two values (**R** and **B**) which will be set according to your changes while the luminance level is preserved.

7.10.4 Lift / Gamma / Gain

To the right of the **Global** items you can find the **Lift**, **Gamma** and **Gain** items where you can adjust the individual color components in more detail. This area provides the same sliders as the previously described ones but for further accuracy they are split into the three contrast shades: lift, gamma and gain.

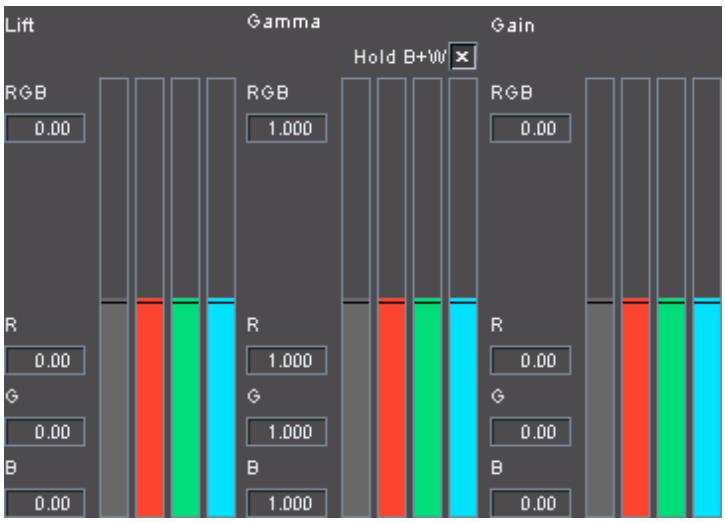


Figure 7-31: The detailed color settings

Use the sliders the same way as described for the global color settings. Then you can set the values for each color component of the brighter, average and darker parts of an image separately, for example, by altering the brightest parts of the image (highlights) while preserving the average and darkest parts (shadows).

Lift	Adjusts the darker parts of the clip, i.e. the lift or black point. Values range from -100 to +100.
Gamma	Adjusts the average parts of the clip, i.e. the gamma or mid-tones. Values range from 0.1 to 3.
Gain	Adjusts the brighter parts of the clip, i.e. the gain or white point. Values range from -100 to +100.

The check box **Hold B+W** allows you to hold the black and white points of the image. When it is activated, a gamma correction will be performed between adjusted black and white points. With the check box deactivated, the black and white points will be disregarded and a gamma correction will be made on the full value range of the image's color channels instead.

Example:
To see the effect of the check box **Hold B+W** lower the black and white points of an image, for example, by flattening its contrast (set to a negative value). Afterwards adjust the gamma of one of the colors with the sliders for gamma. Once this is set, you can see the effect of the check box in the video overlay and in an RGB parade immediately (see section "The Video Scopes" on page 5-3): When activated, a color correction will be performed between the limited black and white points only; when deactivated, the adjusted black and white points will not be observed.

7.10.5 Color Wheel

To the right of the settings pane you can find a color wheel. It contains the colors according to their hue and saturation (HSL color space), and additionally indicates all color components (RGB and CMY). With the hues set on the rim of the circle, the distance from the circle's center determines the saturation of the respective color.

The color distribution in a color wheel is the same as in a vectorscope. Further information about this can be found in section "The Video Scopes" on page 5-3.

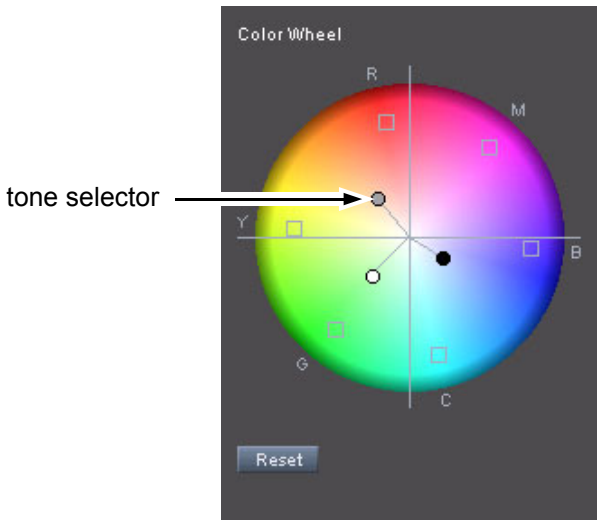


Figure 7-32: Color wheel of the primary color correction

When called for the first time, you can find in the middle of the color circle three dots that overlay each other. These are the selectors for the high-, mid- and low-tones of the image. Each can be selected individually and positioned anywhere in the circle. To select a particular tone selector when they are all located in the center of the circle, click somewhere inside the color circle with the mouse. Each click will bring another selector to the foreground.



This is the high-tone selector. It will adjust the brighter colors of the image while the luminance remains constant.



This is the mid-tone selector. It will adjust the average colors of the image.



This is the low-tone selector. It will adjust the darker colors of the image while the luminance remains constant.

When positioning a tone selector in the color circle, it will cause a color correction of the respective tones towards the color the selector is dragged to. The farther away from the center the selector is positioned, the more the saturation of that particular color increases. For example, if an image is too blue, then you would drag one or all three selectors in the opposite direction of that color, toward yellow. In case you want to pronounce a color, you would add more of the same color by dragging the selectors toward the side of the circle that provides this color.

The button **RESET** sets the color wheel of the primary color correction back to its default state.

7.11 The Operator '2nd Color Correction'

The '2nd Color Correction' operator is an optionally available feature for the DVS software. If you have received this option, you will be able to adjust one color value in a video clip without affecting the other colors. This type of color correction is often referred to as selective or secondary color correction.

The secondary color correction can be used, for example, to change the color of a shirt, a car, etc. or to intensify those colors without influencing the rest of the clip. It works similar to the blue screen effect in film and television where the blue of the background is keyed and replaced by another background image. However, instead of replacing the selected color with another image you can perform a color correction on it with the secondary color correction.

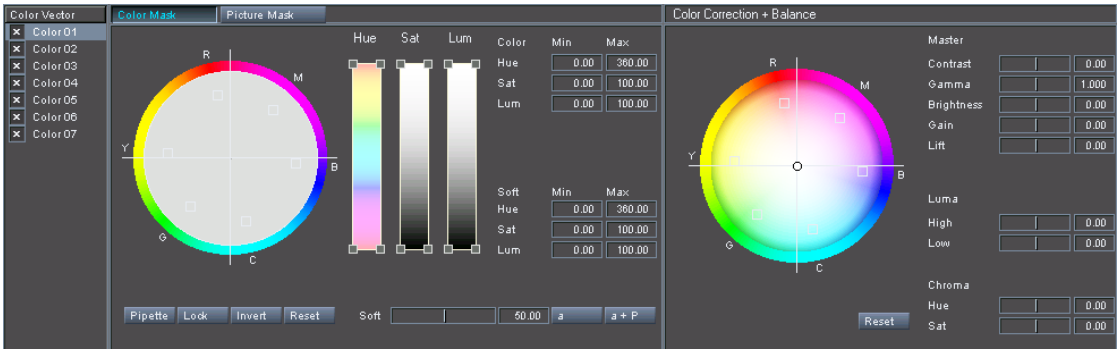


Figure 7-33: 2nd color correction operator

This section explains the usage and the items of the secondary color correction.

For this effect picture masks are available. allowing you to limit the effect of the secondary color correction to certain areas (shapes) in the images of a video clip (see section "Picture Masks" on page 7-51).

7.11.1 Usage of the Secondary Color Correction

When applying the secondary color correction to a video clip, you can adjust one color value or color range in the images of this clip without affecting any other colors. The following provides information on the steps necessary to use the secondary color correction.

Selection of a Color Vector

First, when using the secondary color correction, you have to select a color vector from the provided list to the left (color vector list). It will

afterwards hold your data of the selected color or color range as well as the information about the performed color correction.

The DVS software provides overall seven predefined color vectors: One that has all colors selected and six others that provide each a different color by default (red, green, blue, yellow, cyan and magenta). Tolerances and softness are also predefined in these vectors.

Nevertheless, each of the provided vectors can be used and adapted to define your color or color range, and every one may hold a different color as well as a unique color correction. Simply select one of the color vectors from the color vector list and alter its settings in the settings pane with the color mask, color correction and balance items. Further information about the color vectors and the color vector list can be found in section "The Color Vector List" on page 7-41.

Defining a Color Mask

After selecting a color vector from the vector list you have to define the alpha mask for your clip, i.e. the color vector that should undergo a color correction. For this you have to position the timeline cursor on an appropriate image in your video clip that you want to color correct. The image should clearly show the color that you want to change or correct.

The preview window and the pipette of the secondary color correction are the easiest way to select a color vector. They can be activated with the button **PIPETTE**. The window will show you the frame currently marked by the timeline cursor, and with its pipette you will be able to select the desired color(s).



Figure 7-34: Preview window

To facilitate the selection of a color vector, the view of this window can be switched between a display of the source image (with applied color

correction if already set), a display of the alpha channel only and a view of the alpha channel plus the source image.

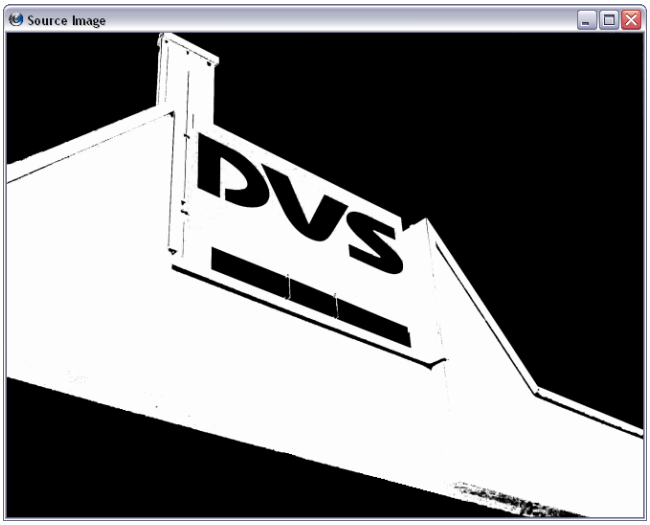


Figure 7-35: Alpha channel view of the selected color vector

In the alpha channel view of the preview window the black parts of the image will not be affected while all areas and pixels displayed in white will be color corrected. The set color vector will be graphically shown in the color wheel to the left of the color mask area. Although the preview window and the pipette are the easiest way to determine a color vector, it can also be adjusted with the color/grey-scale bars and the entry fields to the right as well as the controls at the bottom of the color mask area.

Further information about the color mask area with the preview window and all other items and controls can be found in section "The Color Mask Area" on page 7-42. Once everything is set correctly, you can change or correct the selected color vector.

Color Correction

After the color vector is set and determined you can start to color correct it. You can either alter the hue of the chosen color(s) or other properties such as brightness or saturation. In other words, to correct a color vector the settings of a primary color correction are at your disposal. For this you have to use the settings items and color wheel to the right of the secondary color correction properties (color correction and balance area).

The applied color correction will be shown in the preview window in its source view as well as on the video overlay and the outputs of the DVS system:



Figure 7-36: Color corrected example image

Once the color alterations are set as desired, the procedure to perform a secondary color correction is finished. The changes are immediately applied to the selected clip in the timeline. However, prior to a real-time play-out the clip where the secondary color correction is applied has to be prerendered (see section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46).

Further information about the items to perform a color correction can be found in section "The Color Correction and Balance Area" on page 7-48.

7.11.2 The Color Vector List

From the color vector list to the left of the settings pane you have to choose a vector for the color correction. Once the procedure to perform a secondary color correction is completed, it will hold your data of the selected color or color range as well as the changes applied to color correct it.

The DVS software provides overall seven predefined color vectors: One that has all colors selected and six others that provide each a different color.

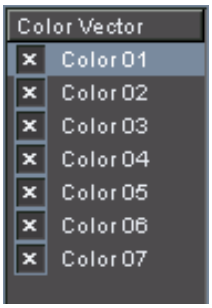


Figure 7-37: Color vector list of the secondary color correction

Simply select one of the predefined color vectors from the list. Its settings are immediately displayed in the settings pane to the right of the list. Then they can be altered according to your liking and the changes are directly applied to the clip in the timeline. Each vector available in the list may hold a different color as well as a unique color correction, i.e. you can define up to seven different color corrections with a single secondary color correction operator applied to a clip.

With the check boxes in front of the color vectors in the list you can enable or disable color vectors. If the check box in front of a vector entry is activated, it is enabled and will be used on the clip; if deactivated, it is disabled. Thus you can easily create different versions of a color correction and evaluate their outcome by comparing them with the original image or other color vectors/corrections. This can also be used to build up a library of color corrections that you can easily choose from: Simply set these color corrections as a preset effect in the effects pane as described in section "Creating Preset Effects" on page 4-26.

7.11.3 The Color Mask Area



Once a color vector has been selected, its settings are displayed in the settings pane to the right. For this make sure that the tab **Color Mask** is activated.



With the tab **Picture Mask** you can determine picture masks for the secondary color correction. Further information about this can be found in section "Picture Masks" on page 7-51.

For each color vector a different color mask is available. With the color mask you have to set the alpha mask/channel for your clip, i.e. you have to determine the color vector that should undergo a color correction.

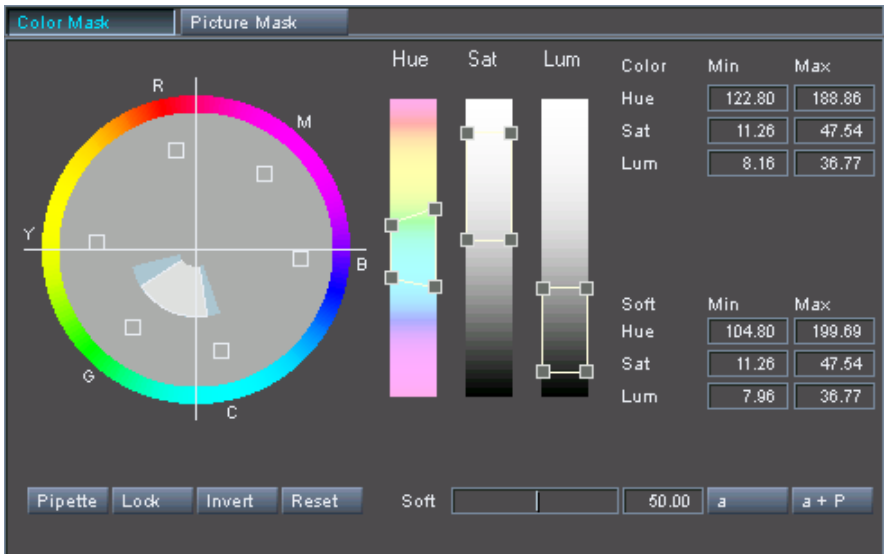


Figure 7-38: Color mask controls

In detail the color mask area provides the following control elements and possibilities:

Color Wheel

The color wheel of the color mask area shows you the selected color vector in a circle. The circle contains all colors according to their hue and their saturation (HSL color space), and additionally all color components are indicated (RGB and CMY). The distance from the circle's center determines the saturation of the respective color.

The color distribution in a color wheel is the same as in a vectorscope. Further information about this can be found in section "The Video Scopes" on page 5-3.

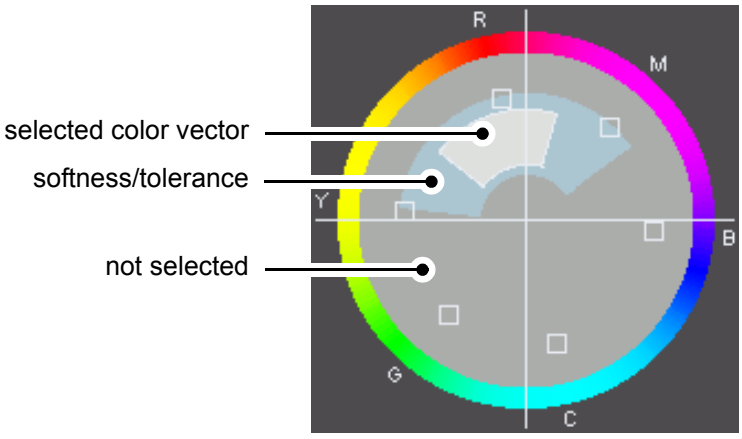


Figure 7-39: Color wheel of the color mask area

While the selected color vector is displayed in a light grey, the colors not selected are shown in a darker grey. The blue-grey surrounding the vector marks the softness/tolerance of the selected color vector, i.e. the colors lying in this area will be selected as well, but a color correction will only be performed on them on a percentage basis. This percentage basis is calculated from their distance from the selected color vector, meaning, when a value is near the selected color vector, almost all pixels of this color will be selected (close to 100 %), while colors at its outer edge are barely selected (close to 0 %).

The color vector and softness can be changed either with the preview window by selecting colors via the pipette directly or with the bars, sliders and entry fields to the right of the color wheel. Additionally, the color mask in the color wheel can be selected with the mouse and moved to another position in the color wheel. This way not only the hue of the color mask can be adjusted but its saturation as well.

The Bars and Entry Fields

With the bars and entry fields you can change the color vector shown in the color wheel and visible in the alpha mask of the preview window.

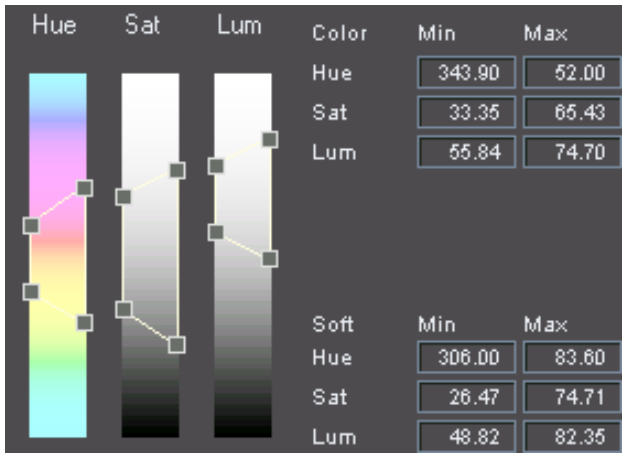


Figure 7-40: Bars (left) and entry fields (right)

The bars show you the exact values of the color vector displayed in the color wheel. Each bar provides either a trapezoid or a rectangle (yellow lines, in the following called 'selection shapes') that mark the respective hue, saturation or luminance currently selected. The settings of the selection shapes' corner points can be seen in the entry fields to the right. The left two corner points of the selection shapes select the vector, while the right two corner points of each mark the softness of the set-

ting. Therefore, in case the shape is no trapezoid but a rectangle, no softness is selected for the respective value.

The settings of the left two bars are displayed in the color wheel to the left. The luminance setting is not shown in the color wheel.

You can change the areas bordered by the selection shapes (yellow lines) in several ways:

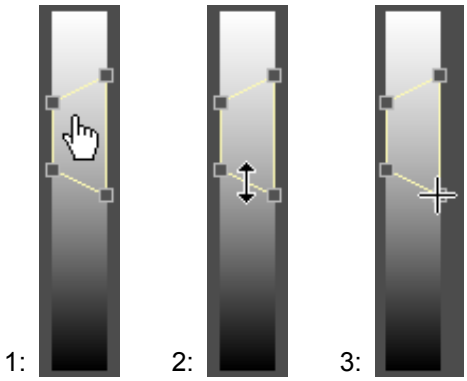


Figure 7-41: Altering the selection shapes

You can select a shape completely and drag it to the position within the bar that you want to cover (1).

Because the hue bar represents a color wheel, in this case not the area of the selection shape is moved but the colored background.

You can select the top and bottom sides of the shapes and move them (2), thereby reducing or enlarging the area covered by the selection shapes. Finally, you can select one of the four corner points and position them to your liking (3).

The softness settings of each shape may lie outside the vector area settings but not within, i.e. the left or right corner points can only be dragged to be level with its opposing point on the other side of the shape but not further.

As already mentioned, the settings of the selection shapes' corner points can be seen in the entry fields to the right. The top entry fields display the settings of the six corner points for the color vector, i.e. they show the settings of the left two corner points of each shape. The bottom six entry fields show the settings of the right corner points and indicate the softness of the vector. You can also adjust the color vector/softness in the entry fields directly by simply entering a value

and afterwards pressing [Enter] on your keyboard. The value ranges that can be entered are as follows:

Setting	Range	Remark
Hue	0 - 360	Settings in degrees of a color wheel: 0°/360° shade of red 90° shade of green 180° shade of cyan 270° shade of magenta/blue (lilac)
Saturation	0 - 100	Percentage value where 0 indicates no saturation and 100 full saturation
Luminance	0 - 100	Percentage value where 0 indicates no luminance (black) and 100 full luminance

The same restrictions as with the corner points of the selection shapes apply to the settings in the entry fields: The softness area settings may lie outside of the vector area settings but not within.

Color Mask Controls

With the controls of the color mask area you can open the preview window as well as switch between the various views of it. Additionally, you can lock, invert or reset your current settings or adjust an overall softness for them.



Figure 7-42: Color mask controls

In detail they provide the following control elements:

PIPETTE The **PIPETTE** button will show you the image currently selected by the timeline cursor in a preview window. After pressing this button the preview window is displayed on the screen and the button **a + P** is switched on automatically. Further information about the preview window and its different views can be found in section "The Preview Window" on page 7-47.

LOCK The button **LOCK** prohibits any alterations in the area of the color mask, i.e. no changes can be performed to the color vector/softness. When this button is activated, the color mask area is locked; when it is deactivated, changes can be performed.

INVERT With this button you can invert the color vector that is currently selected. Afterwards all colors that were previously deselected are selected.

RESET The button **RESET** sets the selected color vector back to its default values.

Soft With this slider and its entry field to the right you can adjust an overall softness for the selected color vector as well as for an already set softness. By dragging this slider to the left you will reduce the softness; by dragging it to the right it will be increased. The softness entry field to the right of the slider will change accordingly. You can also set the softness in the entry field directly by entering a value and afterwards pressing [Enter] on your keyboard. When adjusting the overall softness, all values of the softness entry fields above the controls as well as the softness corner points of the selection shapes will be altered as well.

This item is most useful when performing a quick color correction. You just have to pick roughly your color vector, e.g. with the pipette, and afterwards you can adjust your selection swiftly by using the **Soft** setting.

a When the preview window is displayed on the screen, you can switch its view to a display of the alpha channel of the currently selected color vector with this button. In this view you can discern immediately the parts of the image that will be affected. Black areas will not be affected, while all parts shown in white will undergo a color correction. Further information about the preview window can be found in section "The Preview Window" on page 7-47.

a + P When the preview window is displayed on the screen, you can use this button. It will switch the view of the preview window and show you the original image selected by the timeline cursor together with an alpha mask of the selected color vector. The colors that are currently selected by the color vector will be shown in grey. Further information about the preview window can be found in section "The Preview Window" on page 7-47.

The Preview Window

The preview window and the pipette of the secondary color correction are the easiest way to select a color vector. This window will show you the image of the frame currently selected by the timeline cursor. It can be displayed on the screen with the button **PIPETTE** of the color mask controls (see section "Color Mask Controls" on page 7-46). Then the button **a + P** will be switched on automatically as well, enabling you to

see the selected color vector more clearly because it will be shown in grey.

As soon as the preview window is visible, the pipette is automatically active. With it you can select in the image directly the colors that you would like to add to your alpha mask, i.e. your color vector. A left-click of the mouse selects the color where the pipette cursor is positioned. A right-click of the mouse deselects all colors. Nevertheless, to select a whole range of colors more quickly you can also draw a rectangle in the preview window. This will select all colors in the rectangle.

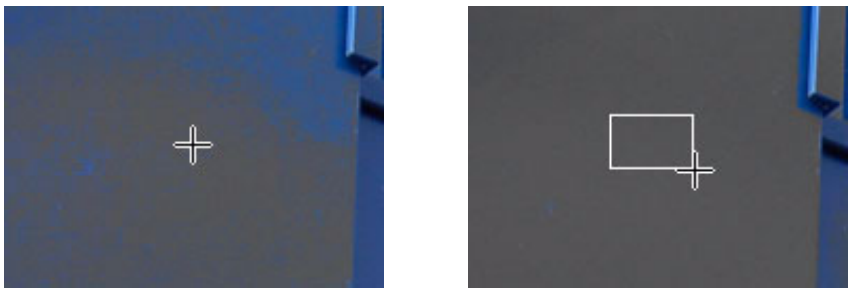


Figure 7-43: Selecting colors in the preview window

To facilitate the selection of a color vector, the view of this window can be switched between three different states:

1. When the button **a** is enabled, the preview window will show you a view of the alpha channel of the currently selected color vector. The white pixels in this view are selected, while the black pixels are deselected.
2. When the button **a + P** is enabled, the original image will be shown in the window together with an alpha mask of the selected color vector (displayed in grey).
3. If both above mentioned buttons are disabled, the image will be shown with the color correction performed, i.e. when changes were made to the settings in the color correction and balance area, their effect can be seen in the preview window.

All views of the preview window are displayed in the overlay of the Edit Tool and at the output of the system as well.

As soon as you are finished with your color vector selection, you may close the preview window at any time.

7.11.4 The Color Correction and Balance Area

When the color vector is set and determined, you can start to color correct it. You can either alter the hue of the chosen color(s) or other properties such as brightness or saturation. In other words, to change a color

vector the settings of a primary color correction are at your disposal. The respective settings items can be found in the color correction and balance area to the right of the settings pane:

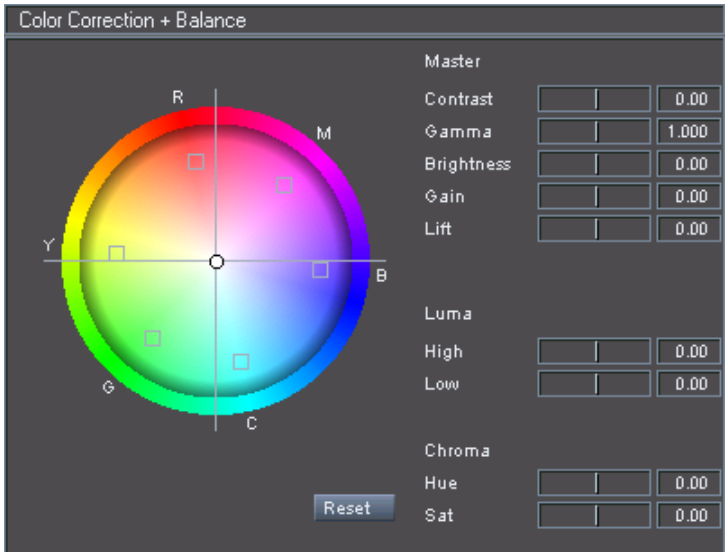


Figure 7-44: Color correction and balance controls

The applied color correction will be shown in the preview window in its source view as well as in the video overlay and at the outputs of the DVS system.

In detail the color correction and balance area provides the following control elements and possibilities:

Color Wheel

To the left of the color correction and balance area you can find a color wheel that shows you the color shifts when a color correction is performed.

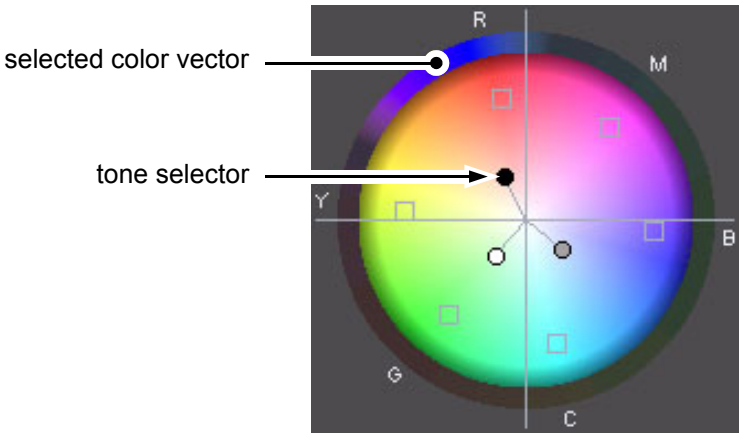


Figure 7-45: Color wheel of the color correction and balance

The outer ring of the color wheel displays the color vector that you have set with the color mask items to the left. It can be selected with the mouse and turned around the color circle, thereby causing a hue shift (the hue slider to the right will change accordingly). With this any shift of the color vector towards another color can be seen at once in the wheel: It is the color that the color vector in the outer ring is positioned above.

In addition to the above said, the color wheel can be used the same way as the color wheel of the primary color correction, but will affect the selected color vector only instead of all colors in the image. So for further information about its usage see section "Color Wheel" on page 7-36.

Additional Controls

The additional controls of the color correction and balance area are located to the right of the color wheel and below it. Most of them provide the controls for a color correction. With them you can alter, for example, the hue of the chosen color vector or other properties, such as brightness or saturation.

Because the controls, i.e. the sliders to the right of the color wheel, provide the same features as the ones of the primary color correction, a description of them can be found in section "The Operator '1st Color Correction'" on page 7-31. Nevertheless, when using these controls, only the selected color vector will be affected.

The button **RESET** sets all controls and the color wheel of the color correction and balance area back to their default values and states.

7.12 Picture Masks

For effects there may be picture masks available. They allow the usage of an effect on a selectable part of a clip only. The part of the images that will be affected can be set with freely definable shapes (masks).

This feature is available for a secondary color correction (see section “The Operator '2nd Color Correction'” on page 7-38).

For a description how to activate it, please refer to the section of the above mentioned effect.

Once selected for the respective effect, you will receive another settings pane in the area of the timeline element properties:

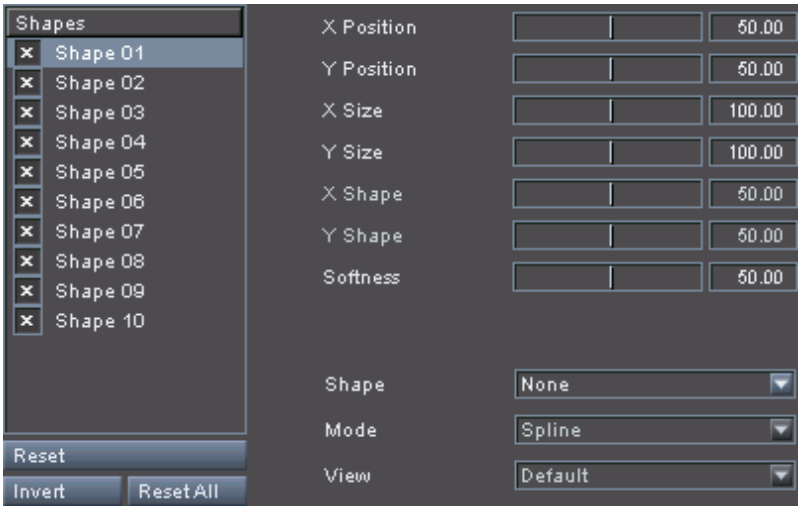


Figure 7-46: Picture masks settings pane

With the items available in this settings pane the picture masks can be set. To the left a list of shapes can be found which can be used, for example, to define the shapes. To the right some settings items are located available for a configuration of the shapes.

7.12.1 The Shapes List

From the **Shapes** list to the left choose one of the available shapes for a picture mask. Once the procedure to configure a shape is completed, it will hold your data of the set shape. Up to ten different shapes can be defined.

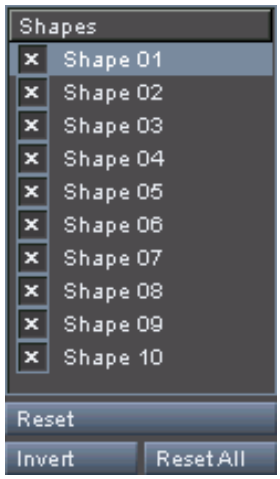


Figure 7-47: Shapes list

The settings of the selected shape are displayed in the settings pane to the right of the list. Then they can be altered according to your liking and the changes are directly applied to the clip in the timeline.

With the check boxes in front of the shapes in the list you can display or hide shapes after they have been defined. If the check box in front of a shape is activated, it will be displayed and used on the clip if defined; if deactivated, it is hidden. With this you can easily enable or disable defined shapes.

Additionally, below the shapes list the following buttons are provided:

RESET	This button resets the selected shape of the list. It deletes the defined picture mask and sets the settings items back to their default values.
INVERT	Reverses all defined shapes: Instead of masking the area within the defined shapes, it masks the area outside of the shapes.
RESET ALL	This button resets all shapes of the list in a single step. All picture masks are deleted and the settings items are set back to their default values.

7.12.2 Setting Shapes

Once a shape from the list of shapes is selected, it can be enabled and defined. For this position the timeline cursor on an appropriate image in the video clip that shows clearly the area where the shape should be defined. Then to enable and determine the shape you have to use the items at the bottom right of the settings pane:



Figure 7-48: Items to set a shape

With the combo box **Shape** you enable a shape: As soon as it is set from `None` to `Static`, the preview window will be displayed on the screen. It shows the frame at the current timeline cursor position:

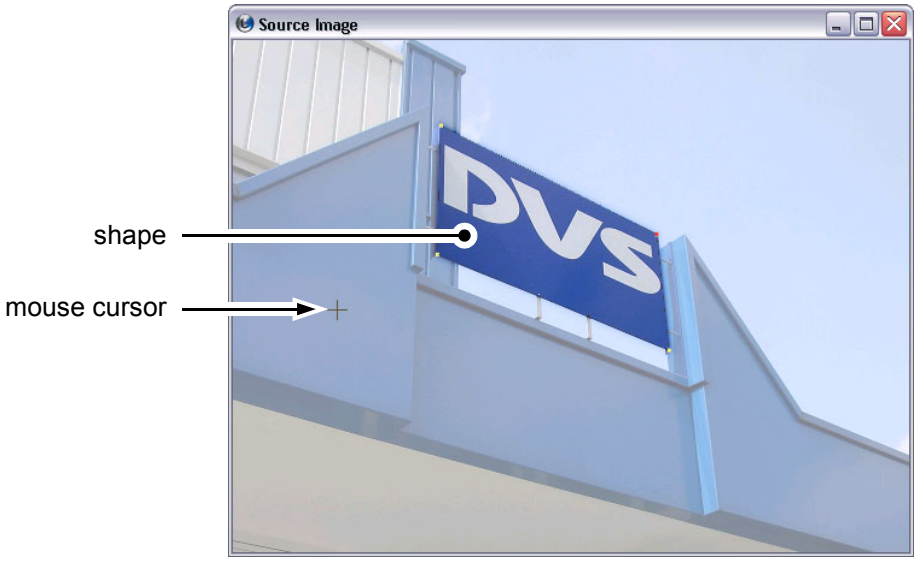


Figure 7-49: Preview window

When placing the mouse on the image, the cursor forms a cross. Then, to set a shape click at least three times in the image at different locations. The size and form of the shape will be determined by these knots placed in the image.

The combo box **Mode** configures the curving of the shape lines. When `Spline` is selected, the lines will be curved; with `Polygon` selected they will be straight between the knots set with the mouse.

A knot placed in the image can be selected with the mouse and then moved. The knot that is currently selected is marked in red. Additionally, it can be deleted by pressing the right mouse button.

To facilitate a setting of shapes, the view of the preview window can be switched with the **View** combo box:

`Outline`	Displays the source image together with shapes if already defined. The parts of the image that are not selected by shapes appear dimmed (as in figure 7-49 on page 7-53).

`Alpha`	Shows the alpha channel (same as in figure 7-35 on page 7-40). The parts of the image shown in black are not selected, white parts are.
`Default`	Shows the source image only. Shapes are not displayed in this view, nor can they be defined.

Once a shape is defined, you can close the preview window at any time. Afterwards it can be displayed again by selecting, for example, the `Outline` setting of the **View** combo box.

7.12.3 Adjusting the Shapes

Defined shapes can be adjusted with the settings items at the top right of the settings pane. They will be applied to the shape that is currently selected in the shapes list (see section “The Shapes List” on page 7-51):



Figure 7-50: Items to adjust a shape

X Position **Y Position**	These settings change the horizontal (x-axis)/vertical (y-axis) position of the shape. The settings are in percent of the image with values ranging from 0 (left/down) to 100 (right/up).
X Size **Y Size**	These settings alter the size of the shape, i.e. its width (x-size) and height (y-size) in percent of the shape. Values range from 0 to 200.
X Shape **Y Shape**	Currently without function.
Softness	Adjusts the softness (feathering) of the shape. All shapes will be adjusted. Values range from 0 (no feathering) to 100 (full feathering).

7.13 The Operator '6-Vector CC'

The '6-Vector CC' operator enables you to adjust colors based on predefined color vectors in a video clip without affecting other colors. It operates similar to the secondary color correction, but instead of freely definable color vectors it provides several predefined ones that can be used for a selective color correction. In many cases when you want to perform a selective color correction, applying a 6-vector color correction will be suffice.

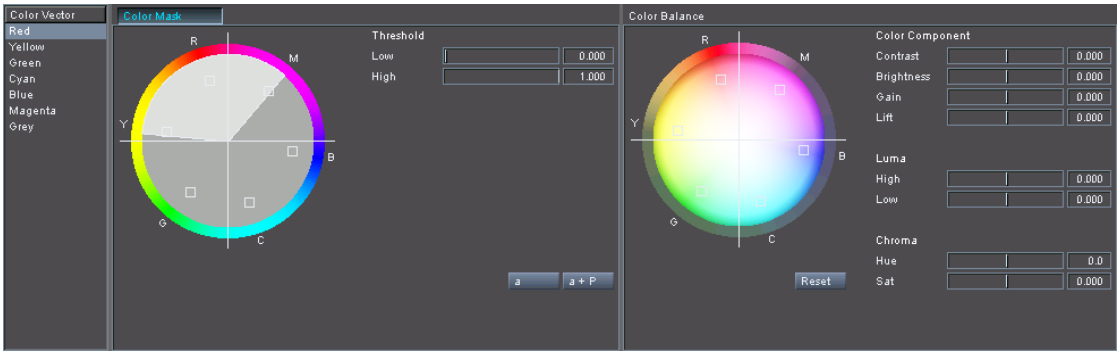


Figure 7-51: 6-vector color correction operator

If the 6-vector color correction operator is used on a clip, it has to be prerendered prior to a play-out (see section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46).

Because the 6-vector color correction works similar to the secondary color correction and provides almost the same settings items, this section explains only the differences. For any information not detailed in the following please refer to section "The Operator '2nd Color Correction'" on page 7-38.

Compared to the secondary color correction, instead of defining a color mask you just have to use the predefined color vectors offered by the color vector list. They can be adjusted only in so far that softness can be applied to the vector with the **Threshold** items:

Low — Applies softness to the color vector from the center of the color wheel onwards, i.e. by increasing this setting you can mask out lower saturated hues on a percentage basis. The value range is from 0 to 1.

High — Applies softness to the color vector from the rim of the color wheel onwards, i.e. by lowering this setting you can mask out higher saturated hues on a percentage basis. The value range is from 0 to 1.

The buttons **a** and **a + P** show you the selected color vector in the video overlay of the Edit Tool and at the output of the system: The button **a** shows you a view of the alpha channel (white selected, black deselect-

ed). The button **a + P** shows you the alpha channel together with the original image (the selected colors will appear in grey). The finally applied color correction can be seen when both buttons are deactivated.

With the items of the **Color Balance** area you can perform the color correction. They are almost identical to the ones offered by the secondary color correction but provide, for example, no tone selectors or gamma settings. For further information about them please refer to section “The Operator '2nd Color Correction'” on page 7-38.

7.14 The Operator 'DeInterlace'

The operator 'DeInterlace' enables you to convert interlaced material (fields) on your system into the progressive image format (frames).

If the deinterlace operator is used on a clip, it has to be prerendered prior to a play-out (see section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46).

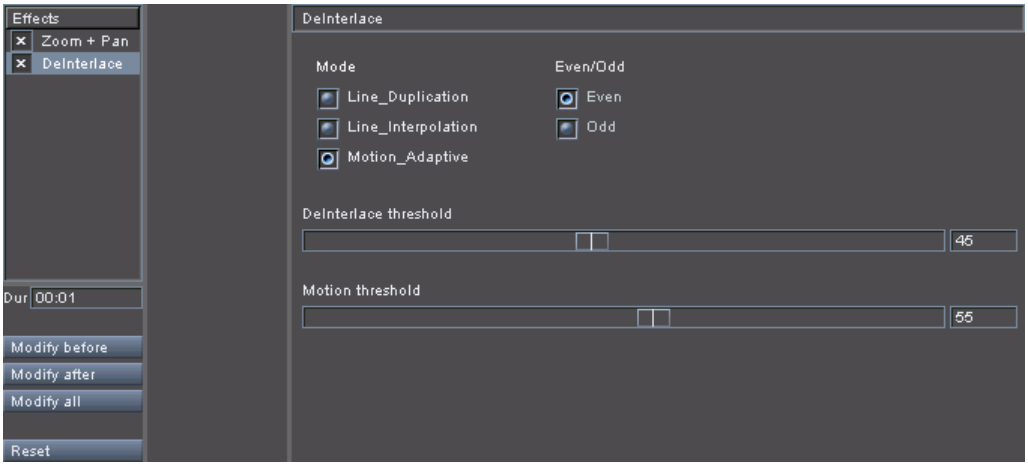


Figure 7-52: Deinterlace operator

This section describes in detail the settings provided by this operator.

The items available under the heading **Mode** determine the method used for the deinterlacing:

Line_Duplication This mode simply duplicates in the images the lines selected in the **Even/Odd** area, meaning either the odd or the even lines of an interlaced field will be doubled to get rid of the interlacing. The method of doubling lines is most suited when your clip contains no moving objects.

Line_Interpolation The effects of the line interpolation method are almost identical to the ones of the line duplication. Every second line in the image is dropped and replaced by an interpolation of neighboring lines. Thus slow moving objects in your clip will most likely be rendered with a good result because differences between two lines are calculated and averaged out.

Motion_Adaptive This mode will yield good results when your clip contains moving objects because motion in the clip's images is detected automatically. A line interpolation will be applied only when interlacing effects are found. This mode provides best quality and does not lose general resolution as only in fast moving parts an interpolation is applied.

The items of the **Even/Odd** area are used to determine the starting field for the calculated result:

Even The even numbered lines (starting with line 0) are used as the starting field for the application of a deinterlacing. All odd numbered lines remain unaltered.

Odd The odd numbered lines (starting with line 1) are used as the starting field for the application of a deinterlacing. All even numbered lines remain unaltered.

With the sliders below the previous settings can be refined:

DeInterlace threshold This slider sets the deinterlacing threshold for the selected modes. It is used to detect whether interlacing is present in the images. Decrease this parameter in case moving objects in your prerendered result still contain some interlacing effects. The lower the value the more pixels are deinterlaced.

Motion threshold This slider sets the motion threshold for the selected methods. It is used to detect regions with moving objects in an image. By decreasing this parameter you apply the deinterlacing to a larger area in the images. Use it in case interlacing effects are still visible in your prerendered results.

The Conforming Tool



With the conforming tool of the Edit Tool you can conform, for example, offline composed projects.

This chapter explains how to conform data lists (e.g. EDLs or cut lists) with the Edit Tool. First, an introduction to conforming and the conforming tool in general is provided as well as some notes about what to observe prior to a conforming process. After this follows a description of how to perform a conforming with the Edit Tool (the first steps).

However, if the described conforming procedure fails, you may use the timeline features of the conforming tool or the conforming mode of the control area to adapt the conforming. These two features of the conforming tool will be described next in this chapter.

8.1 Introduction to Conforming with the Edit Tool

This section provides an introduction to conforming and the conforming tool in general. Additionally, you can find here some important notes about what to observe prior to a conforming process.

8.1.1 Conforming in General

Conforming in general is the process of linking a data list, such as a cut list or a list in the edit decision list (EDL) standard, to audio/video material on a storage which enables one to work further on already edited projects. On a DVS system this would normally be the linking to the original high-resolution material thereby taking advantage of the real-time power of the DVS system for further processing.

A conforming may be required, for instance, during the editing of digital movie shots in film projects: An editor cuts scenes of the film on an editing workstation using low-resolution material. When finished, an EDL can be created of the created project which can afterwards be sent to other editors (i.e. only the EDL has to be sent). This EDL can then be imported in other applications and after a conforming the work on the respective project can be continued (e.g. color graded).

8.1.2 The Conforming Tool and its Mode

The conforming tool of the Edit Tool has been designed for an easy and fast conforming: With it you can load (import) EDLs and cut lists, build up a timeline from them as well as set up and perform the conforming. It can handle EDLs of various formats, such as CMX or GVG, as well as cut lists.



The data lists that can be handled by the DVS software will be subsumed in this chapter under the term 'EDL' (i.e. implying not the standard but the term 'edit decision list' in general).

Once everything is set up correctly, the conforming will be successful and you will receive in the timeline properly linked clips. Then you can continue your work on the project immediately. The first steps to perform a conforming are described in section "First Steps to Make a Conforming" on page 8-6.

However, if the first steps of a conforming procedure fail, you have to adapt the conforming, for example, by applying another linking method or by editing the events of the EDL. This can be done either directly in the timeline or by using the conforming mode of the Edit Tool. Then you can, for example, configure individual clips or complete reels to the requirements of your conforming. Additionally, with the conforming mode you can easily determine offsets, adjust reel names or in- and

outpoints. The possibilities when adapting the conforming in the timeline directly are explained in section "Working with EDLs from the Timeline" on page 8-22. The possibilities of the conforming mode are in detail described in section "The Conforming Mode in General" on page 8-25 and the sections following this one.

Furthermore, the conforming mode can also be used to verify the result of the conforming. With the split screen function of the preview area you can easily compare the built up EDL in the timeline with a low-resolution clip created from the offline edited EDL frame accurately. For further information about this please refer to section "Working with Split Screen" on page 8-64.

8.1.3 Important Notes

This section provides some notes that should be observed prior to performing a conforming:



Further information about source timecode and keycode can be found in section "Notes on Source Timecode and Keycode" on page 2-15.

For a conforming with source timecode or keycode *.dpx, *.mov as well as *.mxf files are supported.

For further information about Spycer see the "Spycer" user guide.

If, no matter what, a conforming persistently fails for certain events, they can be manually referenced to source material by relinking them (see section "Relinking Clips" on page 6-58). However, then no new bin clip will be created, but the properties of this event will be changed.

General

- The most important concept for a successful conforming is that you should know your source, for example, whether the files to be conformed provide a timecode via their frame numbering, whether the directories are named according to reels, or the files' headers provide source timecodes and/or reel names, etc. To be successful the conforming has to be set accordingly.
- The frame rate of the imported EDL must be set correctly: It must be set to the native frame rate of the EDL, otherwise the timecodes will be calculated wrongly. Please observe a possible drop-frame timecode as well.
- An autoconforming as described in section "First Steps to Make a Conforming" on page 8-6 can be performed with source timecode, keycode or file numbers. Offsets cannot be set at this stage. For this you have to use the conforming mode.

– Cut lists without source in- and outpoints will be automatically provided with this information by the DVS software. They will be calculated from the data available in the list. However, this information may require manual adaptation.
– To add the EDL to the timeline, the frame rate of the video format of the timeline must match the frame rate of the imported EDL. For this you can either set the timeline's frame rate to the frame rate of the EDL or convert the timecodes of the EDL to another frame rate. Please observe a possible drop-frame timecode as well.

Conforming with Header Data

– When autoconforming on a connected storage (`Disk Online`) with the setting `Source TC (in header)`, make sure that the default source timecode (setting **Default source TC**) is set correctly in the timecode settings of the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more information). If not set correctly, a conforming will always fail.
– To be successful the frame rate detailed in the header data should match the frame rate of the EDL.
– DVS stores in the headers of *`*.dpx`* image files at a location for user-defined data the reel (tape) names. To avoid conflicts due to identical source timecodes/keycodes, this information can be used for a conforming to distinguish between different reels. However, files created by other systems may not provide reel names in their headers. Then a search for reel names should be either deactivated or limited to the folder or file names.
– Via Spycer you can take a look at the header data provided by the files to determine, for example, that the appropriate source timecodes/keycodes, frame rate or reel names are available. If required, the header data can be adjusted.

Conforming with the SpycerNet

– In case you want to conform with Spycer and the SpycerNet, see to it that the Spycer application on your system as well as on all participating systems is configured appropriately (e.g. local content management enabled).
– On the remote systems in the SpycerNet the permissions 'Browse and Search' as well as 'Read Essence' should be set at least. Without reading permissions multi-clips will not be recognized correctly.
– Make sure that the 'Fast Scan' option is disabled (Configuration Tool, group ***Spycer Scan Filter***) on each Spycer involved in the conforming process. Otherwise when new material is copied to a system, it may not be recognized by the DVS software properly due to missing metadata information which are only available after a thorough scan.

- Prior to conforming via the SpycerNet for the first time, it is recommended to initiate a rescan of the watched folders on each system involved in the conforming process (update of the Spycer database). Before updating see to it that the configuration settings mentioned above are set appropriately. A rescan is mandatory if the 'Fast scan' option was activated on a system.
- If a search via the SpycerNet persistently fails, make once again sure that the Spycer database on the systems where the search is performed is up-to-date.
- A conforming with source timecode with Spycer is limited to the generic source timecode.
- When conforming on a remote system in the SpycerNet, real-time processes on this system may prohibit an answer with the result that no clips will be found (time-out). Make sure that no real-time processes are running on the remote system.
- An answer of remote systems can also be prohibited when there is a lot of traffic in the network. Performing the conforming at a different time may yield better results.
- Copy processes via the 'transfer data' feature of the conforming tool can be paused manually on the remote Spycer or automatically via a real-time process of the DVS software. However, in the conforming mode they will still be displayed as 'Is transferring'. Via the tab **Job List** of Spycer you can check the state of copy processes and, if required, resume them.
- For an improved performance it is recommended to upgrade each Spycer stand-alone application involved in the conforming process to version 1.4.3.2 or higher.

8.2 First Steps to Make a Conforming

This section describes the first and recommended approach to a conforming with the Edit Tool. It will be described how to add EDLs to your project, how to build up a timeline as well as how to set up and perform the conforming. Usually, when everything is set correctly and the points listed in section "Important Notes" on page 8-3 are observed, the conforming will be successful.

8.2.1 Importing and Adding EDLs

EDLs can be used very easily in the Edit Tool: They just have to be imported and added to the bin of the Edit Tool.

To do this you can use the same procedures as to add a clip to the bin (see section "Adding Clips to the Bin" on page 4-6). However, instead of being available in the contents area of the bin, EDLs will be added to the folder area.



When adding an EDL this way you have to observe where to add the EDL. An EDL can only be imported to a standard folder of the bin (e.g. the root folder). Vice versa, standard clips from the storage cannot be added to an EDL folder.

In addition to the above said you have the following possibilities at hand to import and add EDLs:

- Use either one of the following:
  - Call up the context menu on a folder in the folder area of the bin and select the menu option ***Add EDL...*** (see section "Working with Folders in the Bin" on page 4-14).
  - Use the menu option ***Add EDL...*** on the menu ***Project*** of the menu bar (see section "Add EDL…" on page 9-6).



An EDL can also be added to the bin with the button **LOAD...** of the conforming mode (see section "Conforming Mode – The Conforming Controls" on page 8-40).

These possibilities open the standard dialog window of the operating system for the selection of a file.

- In this dialog window select the EDL file from the list box or enter its name in the entry field **File name**.

File extensions:	`*.edl`	EDL file
	`*.ctl`	Cut list file

- Confirm your selection with the button **OPEN**.

After confirmation a configuration window similar to the following will be displayed on the screen:

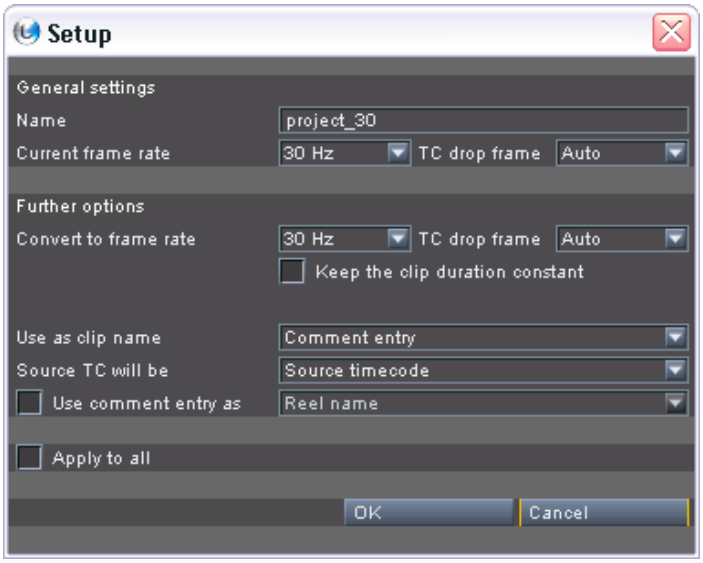


Figure 8-1: Example dialog window to configure an EDL

It provides the settings items as described below:

Depending on the type of EDL added, the configuration window may provide different settings items. The descriptions below detail all items that can be available even if not present in the figure above.

Item	Description
Name	This field determines the name of the EDL as it will appear in the bin. It can be altered freely.
Current frame rate	Sets the frame rate of the EDL, i.e. the video raster's frequency that was used during the creation of the list. If not already set correctly, select the matching frame rate from the drop-down list of the combo box.
TC drop frame	Sets whether drop-frame timecode should be applied to the frequency indicated in the combo box to the left. Further information about drop-frame timecode can be found in the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.
Gauge	*Cut lists only:* Allows you to set the type of film as well as its perforation. Select the matching type from the drop-down list of the combo box.

Item	Description
Extension	*Cut lists only:* Determines how to interpret the reference numbers of the keycode information in the files' headers on the storage, i.e. whether they should be interpreted as frames or perforations. By default the keycode reference numbers of cut lists are interpreted as frames by the DVS software.
Convert to frame rate	With this combo box you can convert the frame rate set with **Current frame rate** to another frequency. It recalculates the in- and outpoints and the durations will be adjusted (see also **Keep the clip duration constant**). Select from its drop-down list the frequency that the added list should be converted to.
TC drop frame	Same as **TC drop frame** above.
Keep the clip duration constant	This setting will be observed during a frame rate conversion. With it the in- and outpoints of the clips in the list are recalculated, keeping the events' durations constant.
Use as clip name	Specifies what should be used as the names of the EDL events. It allows you, for example, to select comments as clip names or the name of the EDL/reels in combination with a numbering.
Use as reel name	*Cut lists only:* Sets what should be used as the reel name (e.g. lab or cam roll).
Source TC will be	Configures what will be used as the source in- and outpoints. With this you can select, for example, that the destination in- and outpoints should be used as the source in- and outpoints.
Use comment entry as	*EDLs only:* When activated, this setting allows you to use comment entries in the EDL as reel names or as the path for an online-conforming. The first comment entries of the events will be interpreted accordingly.
Apply to all	In case you have added several EDLs to the bin in a single step (e.g. via drag-and-drop of more than one EDL from a file manager to the bin), each will usually invoke a setup window. When activating this check box, the currently specified settings will be applied to all EDLs, i.e. you have to set them only once.

- Configure the list to be added appropriately.
- Once everything is set as wanted, confirm your settings with the **OK** button.

This will start the import process. When finished, the selected and configured EDL can be found in the folder area of the bin with the clips of the EDL already sorted into reel subfolders. Of course, as long as no conforming has been made, the clips are marked as pending clips without thumbnail preview (see section "Details about Clips" on page 4-10). By repeating the described steps above you can add as many EDLs to your project as you want.

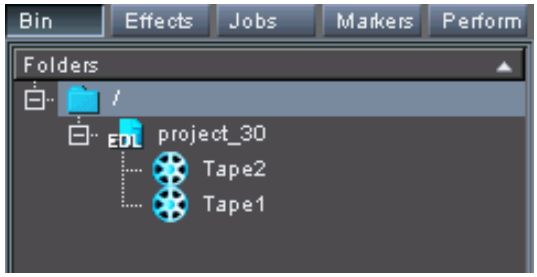


Figure 8-2: EDL added to the bin

Once an EDL is available in the bin, you can start a conforming process at any time (see section "Conforming" on page 8-13), build up a timeline of the EDL in the Edit Tool (see section "Building up a Timeline" on page 8-9) or process it further with the conforming mode of the Edit Tool (see section "The Conforming Mode in General" on page 8-25).

8.2.2 Building up a Timeline

Normally, the goal of a conforming process is to have a timeline of the imported EDL properly conformed in the timeline tracks of the Edit Tool, ready for further processing. For this you have to build up a timeline of the EDL in the timeline area of the Edit Tool:

- Select the EDL in the folder area of the bin and drag and drop it with the mouse into a video/audio track of the timeline area. It can be dropped anywhere you want.

  A timeline of the EDL can also be built up with the button **CREATE IN TL...** of the conforming mode (see section "Conforming Mode – The Conforming Controls" on page 8-40).

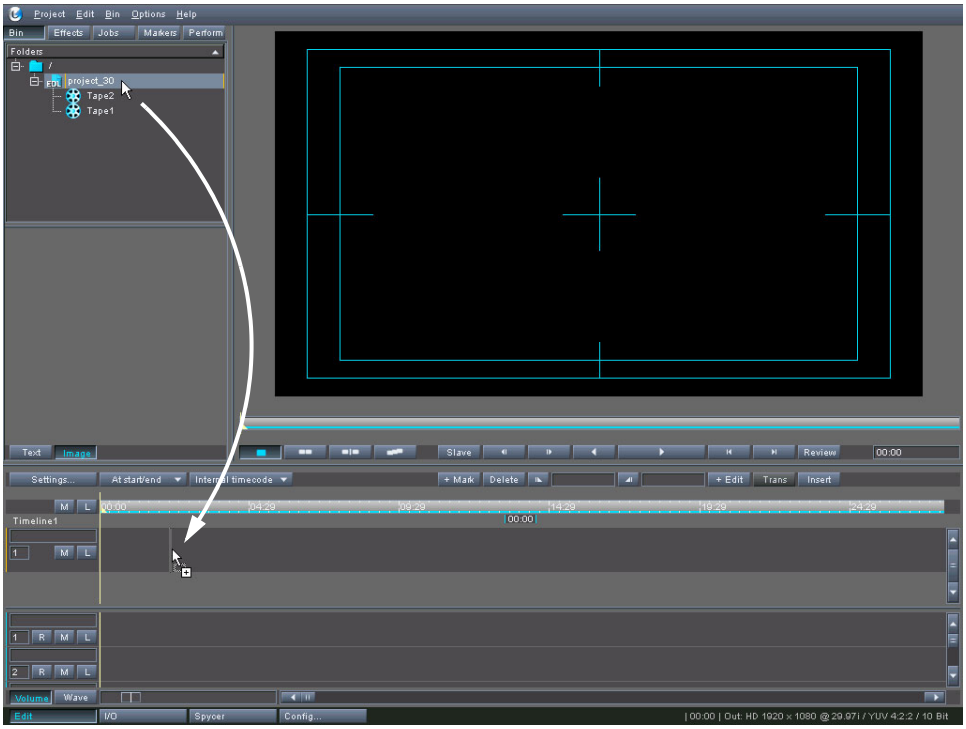


Figure 8-3: Drag and drop of EDL to timeline

When the mouse button is released, the following window will be displayed on the screen:

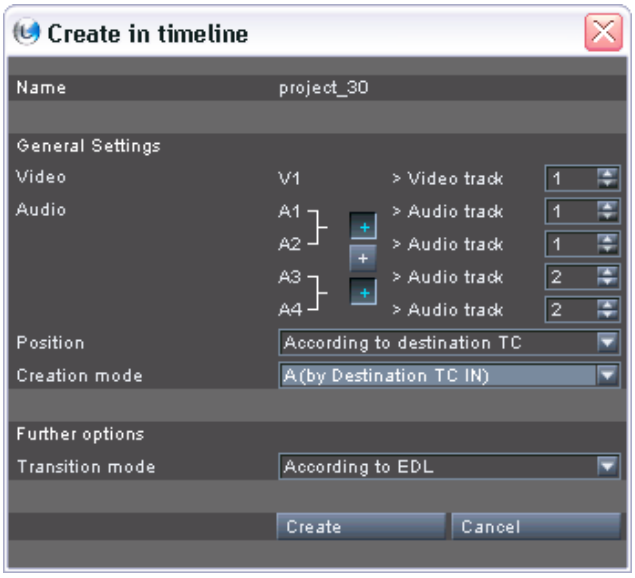


Figure 8-4: Dialog window to configure the EDL creation in the timeline

Creating an EDL twice in the timeline will duplicate it (in the bin and timeline). However, if the first created EDL exists only partially in the timeline, a dialog window appears beforehand asking you whether you want to duplicate the EDL or (re-)create the missing clips. By default newly added clips/EDLs will be added for video in the next higher video track (> no. 1), and for audio in the lowest audio tracks (> no. 16). Anyhow, this can be adjusted freely with the settings items described below.

This window allows you to configure the creation of the EDL in the timeline. It provides the following settings items:

Item	Description
Name	This field shows you the name of the EDL as it is available in the bin.
Video	Determines in which video track to add the video stream of the EDL. With only one video stream available the video track can be selected freely with the entry field to the right.
Audio	Determines in which audio track to add the audio of the EDL. To the left the possible audio streams of an EDL are detailed (A<x>). These can be assigned to audio tracks of the Edit Tool with the entry fields to the right. An activated **+** button between two audio streams configures them to stereo. Then, when these streams are detailed for an audio clip in the EDL, a stereo clip will be created in the assigned audio track. Only neighboring streams can be configured to stereo. A deactivated **+** button will create mono clips. The configured stereo and/or mono streams have to be assigned to different audio tracks of the timeline. Hence, with the entry fields to the right only unassigned tracks can be selected. What is created in the timeline must be seen in relation to the EDL: An audio stream that is not specified in the EDL will not be created in the timeline.

Item	Description
Position	Specifies the position where to add the clips of the EDL to the timeline. For example, they can be placed at the current position of the timeline cursor, at the end of the timeline or at their destination positions determined by the destination in- and outpoints of the EDL (not available if C-mode creation is selected in **Creation mode**).
Creation mode	With this setting you configure the way the EDL will be created in the timeline. It can be created either in A-mode or in C-mode. In A-mode the clips of the EDL will be created in the timeline in the sequence of their destination positions as detailed in the file. In C-mode the clips of the EDL will be created in the timeline in ascending order sorted by reel names and source inpoints. This may be useful, for example, when you want to record the clips of the EDL with a linear device such as a tape machine (e.g. for archiving) or color correct the clips more efficiently, based on the time of the shot (i.e. on daylight changes). The timeline can provide an EDL in C-mode and A-mode at the same time. Just build up the same EDL twice in the timeline in different tracks and with different modes. The effects settings made for an EDL in C-mode can also be received for the EDL in A-mode: By reconforming (see section “Reconform…” on page 8-46) the edited EDL with a duplicate of the EDL or with its original EDL file and then creating this EDL in the timeline in A-mode, the effects settings should be available in A-mode as well (if set up correctly and the clips provide different durations).
Transition mode	Determines the way transitions will be created in the timeline. It enables you to replace transitions detailed in the EDL with hard cuts.

- Configure the list to be created in the timeline appropriately.

- Once everything is set confirm your settings with the **OK** button.

This will start the creation process and a progress bar may inform you about its status. When finished, the clips of the EDL will be available in the timeline of the Edit Tool. If an EDL with unconformed events has been added to the timeline, you will be asked whether you want to perform an autoconforming immediately:

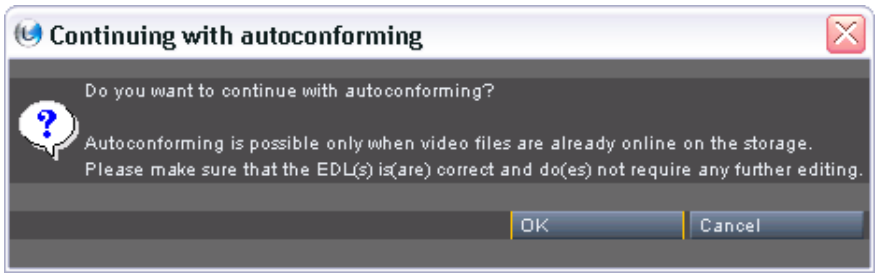


Figure 8-5: Continue with autoconforming?

Then you can start the conforming process right away by confirming the message with the **OK** button (see section “Conforming” on page 8-13).

Alternatively, if you want to configure the EDL beforehand or record the clips of the EDL from a connected external player, you can skip the automatic conforming with the button **CANCEL**. Then you can process the EDL either in the timeline directly (see section “Working with EDLs from the Timeline” on page 8-22) or use the conforming mode of the Edit Tool for further adjustments (see section “The Conforming Mode in General” on page 8-25).

8.2.3 Conforming

As soon as an EDL is available in the Edit Tool, it can be conformed. There are several ways to start an autoconforming:

– An autoconforming can be started manually, for example, with the controls of the conforming mode of the Edit Tool.
– An autoconforming can be performed automatically right after the build-up of an EDL in the timeline.

For an autoconforming the video/audio data must be already available as files on a storage.

There are other possibilities at your disposal to conform an EDL, such as the capturing of the required data from an externally connected player. For further information about these see section “Working with EDLs from the Timeline” on page 8-22 and section “The Conforming Mode in General” on page 8-25.

The above mentioned methods to start an autoconforming will be described in the following. Right after one of them is performed, you have to configure and afterwards start the autoconforming which will also be explained in this section.

Conforming an EDL Manually

As soon as an EDL is available in the Edit Tool the conforming process can be started at any time with the conforming mode of the control area:



This way to start an autoconforming can always be used, meaning it can be used for conformed/unconformed EDLs or EDLs already built up in the timeline.

The following can also be performed via the menu option ***Autoconform...*** on the context menu of an EDL in the timeline (see section "Working with EDLs from the Timeline" on page 8-22).

- To start the conforming process activate the conforming mode with its respective button of the control area's controls (see section "Controls" on page 5-11).



- If not already selected select the EDL either in the bin or on the tab **EDLs** of the work area of the conforming mode (see section "Conforming Mode – The Work Area" on page 8-27).
- Then press from the controls of the conforming mode the button **AUTOCONFORM...** (see section "Autoconform..." on page 8-49).

After this the window to configure the autoconforming will be displayed on the screen. Then you can continue the conforming as described in section "Configuring the Autoconforming" on page 8-15.

Conforming an EDL Automatically after its Build-up in the Timeline

When an EDL with unconformed events is built up in the timeline, an autoconforming can be performed immediately afterwards:

- For this just click the **OK** button in the message window that will be displayed after an EDL is built up in the timeline (see section "Building up a Timeline" on page 8-9).

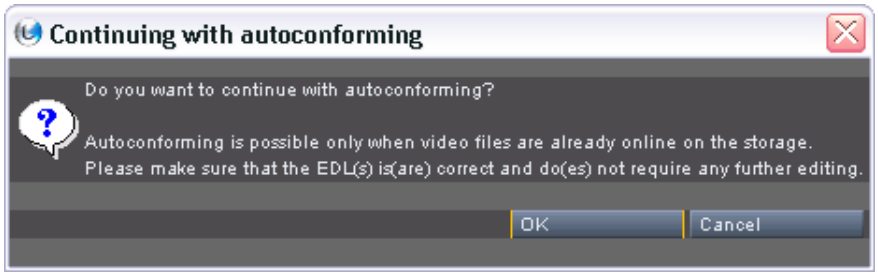


Figure 8-6: Continue with autoconforming?

After this the window to configure the autoconforming will be displayed on the screen. Then you can continue the conforming as described in section “Configuring the Autoconforming” on page 8-15.

Configuring the Autoconforming

After starting the autoconforming process the window to configure the conforming will be displayed on the screen:

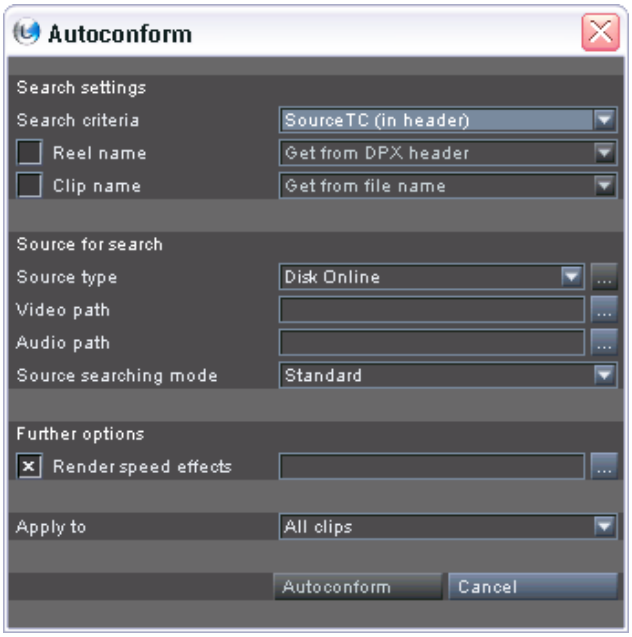


Figure 8-7: Configuring the autoconforming

It provides the following settings items:

Search criteria	This setting determines how to perform the search for the EDL clips. For an autoconforming you can select between `Source TC (in header)`, `Keycode (in header)` and `File number as TC`.

	The first two settings should be used if the headers of the files on the storage provide source timecode or keycode information. Then, if the header data of a found video clip matches a source in-/outpoint stated in the EDL, the respective EDL clip will be appropriately linked. Audio clips will be linked if their duration comprises the source outpoint of the audio event. The `File number as TC` setting should be used if timecodes of the original source were used for the numbering of the image files. With this setting the timecode information stated in the EDL (source in- and outpoints) will be translated into frames with the frequency set for the EDL. Afterwards these numbers will be searched for in the file names. If matching frame numbers are found within a video clip (in- as well as outpoint), the respective EDL clip will be appropriately linked. Audio clips will be linked if their duration comprises the source outpoint of the audio event.
Reel name	Narrows down your search (AND search). The setting can be activated with the check box to the left and searches for the reel name as it was determined during import of the EDL either, for example, in the files' header data, in the directory path where the found clip is stored or in its file name prefix. Select the appropriate option with the combo box.
Clip name	Narrows down your search (AND search). The setting can be activated with the check box to the left and searches for the clip name as it was determined during import of the EDL either, for example, in the directory path where the found clip is stored or in its file name prefix. Select the appropriate option with the combo box.
Source type	Sets the source/search type. You can choose between `Disk Online`, `SpycerNet` and `VTR-TL`. The `Disk Online` setting searches for the clips on the local storage in the specified locations (**Video path** and **Audio path**) including all subdirectories.

	The setting `SpycerNet` utilizes the SpycerNet to search for clips. Its main advantage is that you can include remote systems with it in your search, but it may also be helpful during local searches, especially when large amounts of data should be searched through (faster search). Once this setting is selected, the button to the right of the combo box **Source type** will be available (...). With it you can select hosts and directories in the SpycerNet that should be searched for the clips (including all subdirectories). With the setting `VTR-TL` you can select a VTR timeline project for the conforming (see the "CLIPSTER I/O Tool" user guide), i.e. the clips on the 24-hours timeline of the selected VTR project (**Video path** and **Audio path**) will be used.
Video path	Available for `Disk Online` and `VTR-TL`: Determines where to search for video clips. Either enter a directory path directly or use the button to the right (...) to select the location. With `VTR-TL` selected, this entry must point to a VTR timeline project file (*.cp), i.e. the same that is set for audio.
Audio path	Available for `Disk Online` and `VTR-TL`: Determines where to search for audio clips. Either enter a directory path directly or use the button to the right (...) to select the location. With `VTR-TL` selected, this entry must point to a VTR timeline project file (*.cp), i.e. the same that is set for video.
Source searching mode	Sets the mode that should be used for the search. You can select between different search modes: `Standard` is the fastest search mode available because it uses an efficient algorithm. However, under rare circumstances it may not be able to find the correct clips. If the standard search does not yield the expected results, you can use an `Intensive` search. It will look through the found files one by one and thus takes considerably longer.

Render speed effects	Speed effects that an EDL may provide can be processed by the conforming tool as well. They have to be rendered during the conforming, meaning image files may be omitted or created anew according to the specified speed. This setting can be activated or deactivated with the check box to the left. When activated, you can enter the location where the files of the speed effects should be saved in the entry field directly or use the button to the right of this field (...) to select one. If no location is set, the speed effects' files will be stored in a subfolder at the location of the original clip.
Apply to	This setting allows you to limit the procedure. You can perform it either on all clips of an EDL or on a selection of reels/clips. A selection can be specified either when the EDL is available in the timeline (see section "Working with EDLs from the Timeline" on page 8-22) or in the conforming mode (see section "The Conforming Mode in General" on page 8-25).

- In this window configure the autoconforming according to the material to be conformed.
- Once everything is set start the autoconforming with the button **AUTOCONFORM**.

This will start the conforming process and a progress bar will inform you about its status. When finished, you may receive log messages informing you about the success of the conforming (see section "Evaluation and Further Processing of the Conforming" on page 8-18).

8.2.4 Evaluation and Further Processing of the Conforming

After an autoconforming is finished, you may receive log messages which will inform you about clips where problems were detected during the conforming. The following provides information how to resolve them.



If the respective EDL is not already available in the timeline, you should add it right now as described in section "Building up a Timeline" on page 8-9.

Still, regardless of the state of an EDL and its clips (conformed or unconformed), as soon as it is built up in the timeline you can use the Edit Tool as usual and work on the timeline. Then you can, for example, add other 'standard' clips to the timeline or change the clips of the EDL as

you want, e.g. via trimming or color correction. You can also import other EDLs and add them to the timeline as well.

During editing, the clips of the EDL in the timeline will stay linked to the EDL visible in the bin and the conforming mode. All changes to the timeline will be reflected either in the 'Timeline as EDL' view or in the EDL directly. Further information about this can be found in section "The Conforming Mode in General" on page 8-25 and the sections following it.

Successful Conforming

In case there are no messages displayed after a conforming process, the conforming was successful. Then you can immediately work with the clips of the EDL in the timeline in any manner you like.

Once finished with your work, you can, for instance, combine different EDLs, export the changes of a single EDL or the complete timeline as an EDL, or finalize the project, i.e. all possibilities of the Edit Tool are at your disposal.

Multiple Search Results

Multiple search results after a conforming process are not uncommon, especially when conforming audio clips due to the fact that they lack appropriate header data. Each audio clip that is found within the search parameters will just be tested for its duration, i.e. whether the source outpoint of the audio event lies within the duration of the audio clip. If the duration of the audio clip is equal or longer than the source outpoint of the EDL event, it will be considered a hit for the respective clip.

When several clips have been found that match an element in the EDL, you will be informed about them after the conforming:

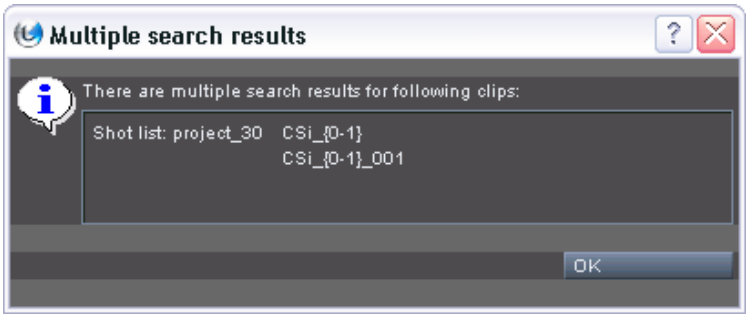


Figure 8-8: Notification about multiple found clips

If several clips were found for a video clip entry in the EDL, its representation in the Edit Tool will be substituted by the software with a special image:



Figure 8-9: Substitute image for multiple found clips

This will be displayed instead of the original clip's images, for example, in the bin as the clip's thumbnail or in the video overlay of the control area if the timeline cursor is positioned on such a clip.

After confirming the message of multiple search results you can work directly in the timeline and identify the clips with multiple search results, for example, by their substitute image. Then you can use the features of the conforming tool provided in the timeline to resolve them (see section "Working with EDLs from the Timeline" on page 8-22).

Alternatively, you can switch to the conforming mode of the control area and resolve the multiple hits from there (see section "Resolving Multiple Found" on page 8-67).

Clips Not Found

If a clip could not be found for an event in the EDL, you will be notified after the conforming about the clips that could not be conformed:

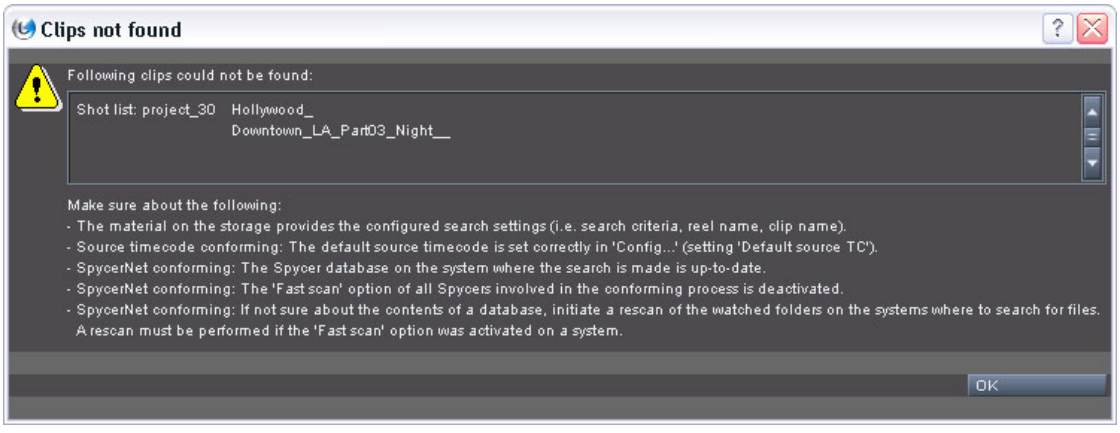


Figure 8-10: Notification about not found clips

A failing of the conforming may happen because of a number of reasons and how to avoid the most common ones is detailed in section "Important Notes" on page 8-3. You have to make sure that these are observed properly.

However, if the failing of the autoconforming cannot be resolved, you can adjust the conforming, for instance, by trying another linking method or by editing the events of the EDL.

In case you want to apply another linking method you can work in the timeline directly. Clips that could not be found will be indicated by the DVS software with the standard substitution image (see section "Consistencies of Clips" on page 6-63). Then you can start another autoconforming for these clips via the menu option ***Autoconform...***, for example, by selecting a different conforming method (see section "Working with EDLs from the Timeline" on page 8-22).

As well, you can initiate an autoconforming and, moreover, edit the events of the EDL with the conforming mode of the Edit Tool. There you can, for instance, define offsets or change the source in- and outpoints so that the EDL matches the material on the storage. For further information about this see section "The Conforming Mode in General" on page 8-25.



If, no matter what, a conforming persistently fails for certain events, they can be manually referenced to source material by relinking them (see section "Relinking Clips" on page 6-58). However, then no new bin clip will be created, but the properties of this event will be changed.

8.3 Working with EDLs from the Timeline

As soon as an EDL is available in the timeline (see section “Building up a Timeline” on page 8-9), you can use the Edit Tool as usual and work with its clips on the timeline. Furthermore, if a conforming has been performed already, you can evaluate and process its result directly in the timeline.

With the edit mode of the control area activated (see section “Controls” on page 5-11) the clips of an EDL are displayed as standard timeline clips:

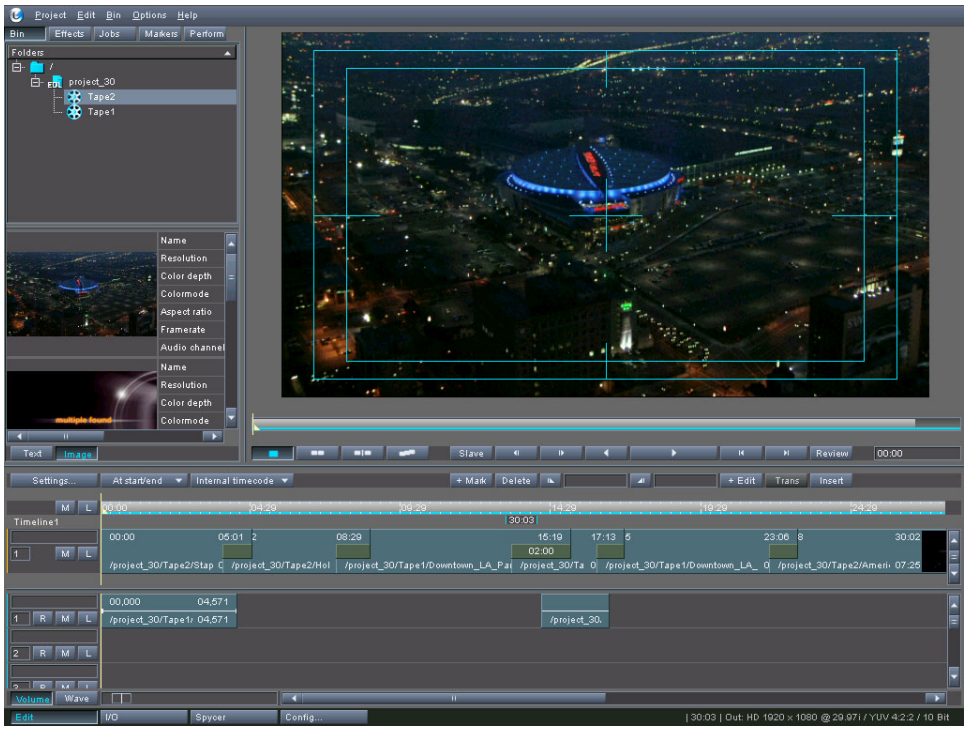


Figure 8-11: Conformed EDL in timeline (edit mode)

By stepping through the timeline for example or by playing it out, you can immediately see where the EDL clips require adjustment (such as multiple or not found clips, see section “Evaluation and Further Processing of the Conforming” on page 8-18).

The following describes the possibilities that are available for EDLs in the timeline. All can be a found on the context menu of a clip in the timeline under the menu option ***Conforming*** (see e.g. section “The Context Menu of Video Clips” on page 6-61):

By changing in-/outpoints of clips from an EDL in the timeline (trimming) you change the destination in-/outpoints of the EDL. To change source in-/outpoints you have to use the conforming mode (see section “The Conforming Mode in General” on page 8-25).

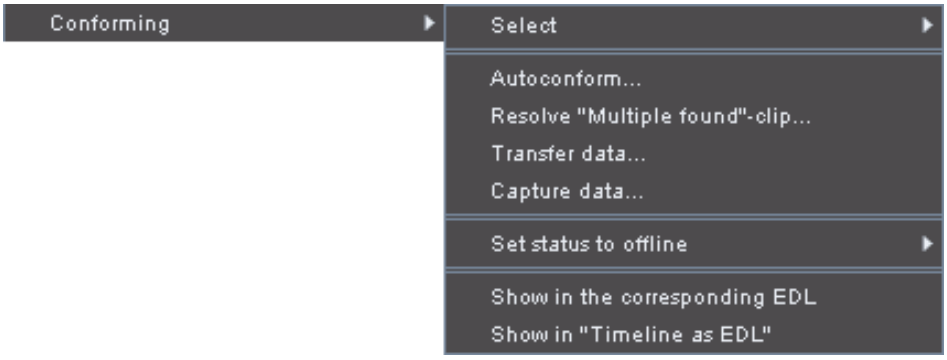


Figure 8-12: Conforming functions provided in the timeline

Select	This menu option opens a further submenu where you can choose between different methods to select clips on the timeline. For example, the option ***All "online RT" clips*** selects all clips on the timeline that have the status 'Online RT' (for further statuses as well as explanations of them see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31).
Autoconform…	Performs the same operation as the button **AUTOCONFORM…** of the conforming mode. See section "Autoconform…" on page 8-49.
Resolve "Multiple found"-clip…	If not already visible, this menu option switches to the conforming mode of the control area and displays in the preview area the clips that were found for this EDL entry. Then you can assign one of the found clips to this EDL entry and thus resolve its state. See section "Resolving Multiple Found" on page 8-67 for further information.
Transfer data…	Starts the process to transfer data from a non-real-time capable storage (e.g. on a remote system) to the main storage of the DVS system. See section "Transfer data…" on page 8-51.
Capture data…	Starts the process to capture data. See section "Capture data…" on page 8-53.
Set status to offline	This menu option opens a further submenu where you can select the range of clips that should be set to the status 'Offline' (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31), i.e. whether only the currently selected clip(s) or all should be set to offline. See also section "Set status to offline" on page 8-47.

Show in the corresponding EDL	If not already visible, this menu option switches to the conforming mode of the control area, selects the appropriate EDL and displays it on the tab **EDL Clips** (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31). The entries of the clips that were selected when this menu option was called will be highlighted in the table. It can be used on clips of the same EDL only.
Show in "Timeline as EDL"	If not already visible, this menu option switches to the conforming mode of the control area, selects the 'Timeline as EDL' view and displays it on the tab **EDL Clips** (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31). The entries of the clips that were selected when this menu option was called will be highlighted in the table.

8.4 The Conforming Mode in General

All tasks that have been described so far in this chapter can be performed directly with the conforming mode of the Edit Tool. With it you can, for instance, import EDLs, build them up in the timeline or auto-conform them. Furthermore, already conformed EDLs can be evaluated and processed further.

The conforming mode can be activated with its respective button from the controls in the control area of the Edit Tool (see section “Controls” on page 5-11). The control area will then switch to the conforming mode:



Figure 8-13: Conforming mode overview

If a conformed EDL is already available in the timeline, its clips will be especially color coded:

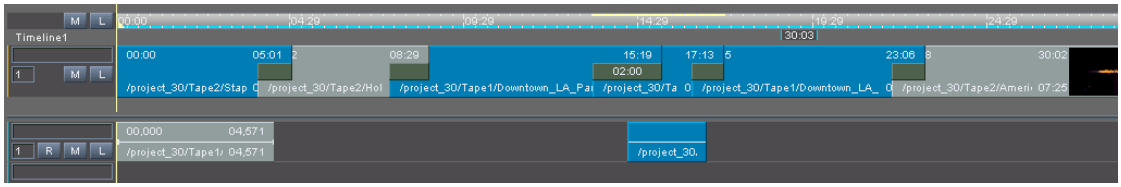


Figure 8-14: Conformed EDL in timeline (conforming mode)

With this you can grasp the status of a conforming immediately:

standard clip color	The clip does not belong to an EDL. It is a normal clip available in one of the standard folders of the bin.
blue	The clip is already conformed and linked to data on a storage.

grey	The clip is unconformed either because a conforming has not been made yet, no matching clips could be found or there are multiple search results available.

In case a clip was conformed with material from a non-real-time capable storage, it will be marked in the timeline for a prerendering (see section “Prerendering of Timeline Elements” on page 6-46). However, instead of prerendering, such statuses can be resolved more effectively by copying the material of these clips to the local storage (see section “Transfer data…” on page 8-51).

In the conforming mode you can work on the timeline as usual. During editing the clips of the EDL in the timeline will stay linked to the EDL visible in the bin and work area of the conforming mode. All changes to the timeline will be reflected either in the 'Timeline as EDL' view or in the EDL directly. When in- or outpoint values are changed, they will be will be displayed on the tab **EDL Clips** in orange.



Source in- and outpoints can be altered, for example, in the work area directly, while destination values can be changed by trimming the clips of a built-up EDL in the timeline.

Additionally, you can review the result of your work on the timeline/EDL easily in the preview area of the conforming mode. It can be switched between a view of the timeline or the selected EDL (see section “Conforming Mode – The Preview Area” on page 8-60).

The following sections describe the areas and items provided by the conforming mode:

- section “Conforming Mode – The Work Area” on page 8-27
- section “Conforming Mode – The Conforming Controls” on page 8-40
- section “Conforming Mode – The Preview Area” on page 8-60

8.5 Conforming Mode – The Work Area

Once at least one EDL is available in the bin (see section “Importing and Adding EDLs” on page 8-6), it can be displayed in the work area:

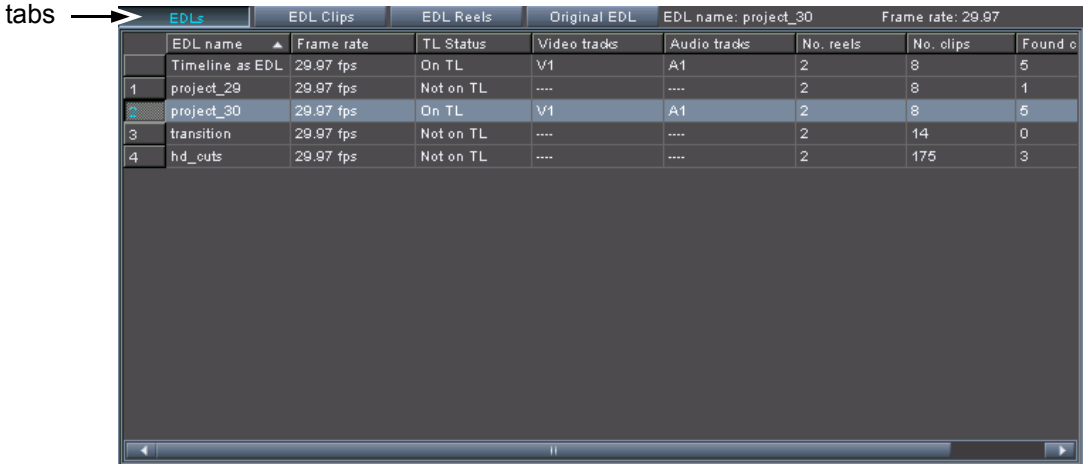


Figure 8-15: The work area with the tab 'EDLs' activated

Besides status information at the top right (i.e. the name of the currently selected EDL and its frame rate), the work area provides several tabs that offer different views on the imported EDL(s) for further processing:

EDLs	Displays all EDLs imported in the current project. See section “The Tab 'EDLs'” on page 8-29.
EDL Clips	Displays all clips (events) of the currently selected EDL. See section “The Tab 'EDL Clips'” on page 8-31.
EDL Reels	Displays all reels of the selected EDL. See section “The Tab 'EDL Reels'” on page 8-36.
Original EDL	Displays the EDL in its original form, i.e. as it would appear in a text editor. See section “The Tab 'Original EDL'” on page 8-38.

This section explains the features and tables provided by the work area.

8.5.1 Viewing EDLs

To display a certain EDL on the tabs of the work area you can choose between different possibilities. You can select the EDL that should be shown…

- from the bin directly,
- from the table entries provided on the tab **EDLs** (see section “The Tab 'EDLs'” on page 8-29) or

– via the EDL combo box of the controls (see section "<EDL>" on page 8-41).

Additionally, to view the EDL of a certain clip on the timeline you can select the menu option ***Conforming » Show in the corresponding EDL*** on the context menu of the timeline clip (see section "Working with EDLs from the Timeline" on page 8-22).

8.5.2 Adapting the Appearances of the Tables

Once an EDL is selected and shown in the work area on one of its tabs, the appearance of the displayed table can be adapted to your needs in various ways. For example, besides changing the width of the columns you can also display or hide columns. All controls to adapt the appearances of the tables can be found in the area **View** of the conforming controls (see section "The View Controls" on page 8-41).

Some columns of the tables are hidden by default, such as the ones to configure a conforming manually for individual events ('Source type', 'Search criteria' and 'Offset/Start frame'). For information about how to display these see section "View settings…" on page 8-42.

The entries in the tables can be sorted in descending or ascending order. For this simply click on the respective column heading with the mouse that you want to sort the list by (most columns offer this feature). This switches between an ascending and descending order of the entries in the respective column. The type of order will be indicated by a triangle to the right of the column heading.

8.5.3 Changing Values and Entries

In most views of the work area you can change the displayed elements to adapt the conforming to your needs. To change a table entry on one of the tabs you have to double-click it. If an editing is allowed, the appearance of the field will be slightly altered, whereupon you will be able to modify it. Depending on the type of field that you want to edit there may be additional user interface items available then:

Changes to events can only be performed as long as they are unconformed (status 'Offline').

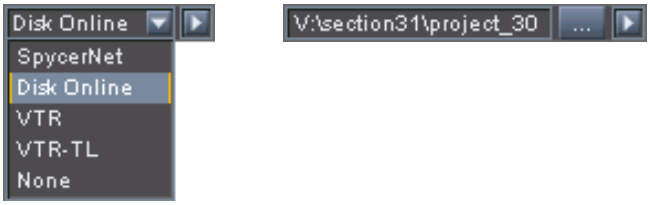


Figure 8-16: Example entry fields

The above figure shows two examples of entry fields and their additional items: The entry field to the left provides a combo box where you can select settings from a drop-down list. In the entry field to the right you can either enter a value (in this case a directory/file) or use the button to the right (...) to select one.

The button to the far right allows you to transfer the changed entry from this field to other table entries (rows). It provides a menu where you can select between different copy/transfer methods:

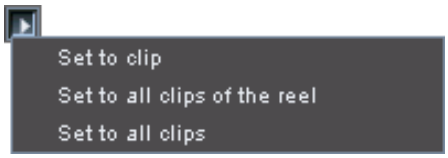


Figure 8-17: Transferring settings

With this, changes in the tables of the work area can be made easily. When in- or outpoint values are changed, they will be will be displayed in orange to make them immediately discernible.

8.5.4 The Tab 'EDLs'

On the tab **EDLs** you can see all EDLs that are currently available in the project. It provides general information about them such as their name, frame rate and timeline status.

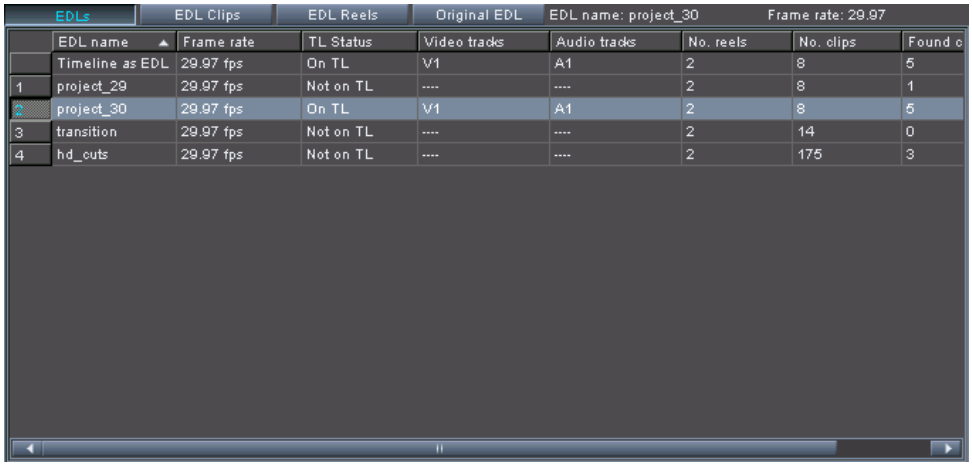


Figure 8-18: The tab 'EDLs'

The other tabs of the work area detail the information of the EDL that is selected in this table (see also section “Viewing EDLs” on page 8-27).

By default the entry 'Timeline as EDL' is available for all projects. It shows the timeline of the project with all its clips as an EDL in the conforming mode.

The following explains the columns that are available on the tab **EDLs**:

Column	Description
EDL name	This column shows the name of the EDL as it appears in the bin. It can be altered freely and its counterpart in the bin will be named accordingly. This works also the other way around: When changing the name of the EDL in the bin, it will be altered in this field as well.
Frame rate	Details the frame rate of the EDL.
TL status	Indicates the current timeline status of the EDL, i.e. whether it is already built up in the timeline.
Video tracks	Details the numbers of the video tracks that are currently used by the EDL in the timeline of the Edit Tool.
Audio tracks	Details the numbers of the audio tracks that are currently used by the EDL in the timeline of the Edit Tool.
No. reels	Shows the number of reels that are currently set for the EDL.
No. clips	Shows the number of clips that the EDL provides.

Column	Description
Found clips	Indicates how many clips of the EDL are already linked to data on a storage.
Duration	Details the duration of the EDL, i.e. its length.

When working on an EDL in this tab, for example, with the controls of the conforming mode, all tasks are performed on the selected EDL only. In case you want to work on several EDLs at once you have to combine them (see section "Combine…" on page 8-45).

8.5.5 The Tab 'EDL Clips'

The tab **EDL Clips** shows all clips (events) of the currently selected EDL. It provides information, for example, about their names, statuses and source in- and outpoints.

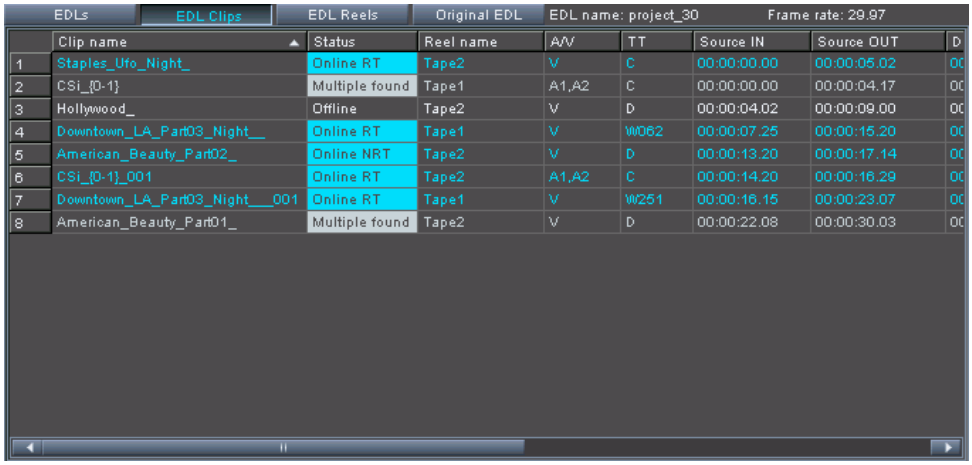


Figure 8-19: The tab 'EDL Clips'

By selecting one or more clips in this view of the EDL its representation(s) in the timeline area will be selected as well. This works also the other way around.

To select more than one element in this view on the EDL you can use the usual methods provided by the DVS software (see section "Keyboard Shortcuts" on page A-7) or the functionality of the **SELECT…** button (see section "Select…" on page 8-43). Additionally, to select several adjoining elements you can select one with the mouse, keep the mouse button pressed and then move the mouse to the point where the selection should end. All adjoining elements will be selected.

The following explains the columns that are available for the tab **EDL Clips**:



On this tab you can change the settings for individual events. However, to change the settings for several events in a single step it may be more appropriate to alter them for a complete reel (see section "The Tab 'EDL Reels'" on page 8-36).

Changes to events can only be performed as long as they are unconformed (status 'Offline').

Column	Description	
Clip name	Details the name of the clip as it was determined during the import of the EDL. It can be altered freely and its counterpart in the bin will be named accordingly.	
Status	Indicates the current timeline status of the clip:	
	Online RT	The clip is conformed and linked to data on a real-time capable storage.
	Online NRT	The clip is conformed and linked to data on a non-real-time capable storage (e.g. on a remote system). To make it real-time capable it should be transferred to the main storage of the DVS system (see section "Transfer data…" on page 8-51).
	Is transferring	The clip is currently transferred (copied) from another system to the local storage (see section "Transfer data…" on page 8-51). After this its status will change to 'Online RT'.
	Multiple found	There are multiple search results available for this clip (see section "Resolving Multiple Found" on page 8-67).
	Offline	The clip is unconformed because a conforming has not been made yet or no clips could be found.

Column	Description
	Original — This clip does not belong to an EDL. It is a normal clip available in one of the standard folders of the bin.
Reel name	Details the name of the reel that this clip belongs to as it was determined during the import of the EDL. It can be altered freely. If you enter a new, not existing reel name, the reel count on the tab **EDL** increases and you will receive a new reel on the tab **EDL Reels** as well as in the bin. Please note that in some EDL standards the reel name is restricted, for example, to a maximum number of characters.
Essence type (A/V)	Shows the type of the event, i.e. audio (A) or video (V). Additional numbers for audio indicate the audio stream that is connected to this event.
Transition type (TT)	Indicates the transition type that precedes this event, e.g. cut (C), dissolve (D) or wipe (W<SMPTE no. of transition>, see also section "Properties of a Transition" on page 7-7).
Source IN Source OUT	These entries specify the source in- and outpoint of the event either in timecode or in frames, depending on the selected notation for the Edit Tool (see section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17). They can be changed either by entering an in-/outpoint manually or by using the button **SLIP SOURCE TC** (see section "Slip source TC…" on page 8-47). When changing one of the values, the remaining value will be set accordingly, i.e. the duration will not be changed. Altered values will be displayed in orange.
Head & Tail	Shows the amount of head and tail available for an already conformed clip. The values are in frames.

Column	Description
Keycode IN Keycode OUT	These entries show the keycode in- and outpoint. Normally these information are detailed in cut lists only. When available, they can be changed either by entering an in-/outpoint manually or by using the button **SLIP SOURCE KC** (see section "Slip source KC…" on page 8-48). Only the keycode's reference number can be altered. When changing one of the values, the remaining value will be set accordingly, i.e. the duration will not be changed. Altered values will be displayed in orange.
Destination IN Destination OUT	These settings detail the destination in- and outpoint either in timecode or in frames, depending on the selected notation for the Edit Tool (see section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17). Usually they determine the final position of the event on a built-up timeline. They can be changed by altering the clips' representations of a built-up EDL in the timeline. Altered values will be displayed in orange.
Duration	Specifies the duration of the event (i.e. its length) either in timecode or in frames, depending on the selected notation for the Edit Tool (see section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17).
TL status	Indicates the timeline status of the event, i.e. the track (audio (A) or video (V)) and track number where the event can be found in the timeline.
Source type	Details the source/search type that was selected during an autoconforming (see section "Conforming" on page 8-13). It is the same setting as the **Source type** setting of the autoconforming dialog. By changing this entry you can change the conforming (linking) method manually for the respective event. It will be applied when the button **LINK DATA…** is used (see section "Link data…" on page 8-50). In addition to the settings already described in section "Configuring the Autoconforming" on page 8-15 you can select here the following:

Column	Description
	`VTR` Records the event via RS-422 from an externally connected player (see section "Capture data..." on page 8-53). `None` This event is ignored during a conforming. When an autoconforming is performed for this event, a manually adjusted setting will be overwritten with the one of the autoconforming.
Search criteria	Details the search criteria that was selected during an autoconforming (see section "Conforming" on page 8-13). It is the same setting as the **Source criteria** setting of the autoconforming dialog. By changing this entry you can change what should be searched for. Depending on the selected 'Source type', this field either cannot be edited at all or provides different settings possibilities. Then, in addition to the settings already described in section "Configuring the Autoconforming" on page 8-15 you can select here the following: `Start frame` This setting is similar to `File number as TC`. You can use it if there is no direct connection between file numbers and EDL timecodes. With this setting you can specify a start frame number that should be identified as the source inpoint (see below). The actual search will be performed as with `File number as TC`. This setting can also be made on the tab **EDL Reels**. There you can assign a start frame number for a complete reel (see section "The Tab 'EDL Reels'" on page 8-36). When an autoconforming is performed for this event, a manually adjusted setting will be overwritten with the one of the autoconforming.

Column	Description
Offset/Start frame	When `File number as TC` is selected, you can enter in this field a timecode/frames offset for the respective event (negative as well as positive). The entered offset will be added to the source in- and outpoint. When `Start frame` is selected, you can enter in this field the frame number that should be identified as the source inpoint, i.e. this frame number will then be assigned to the position stated in 'Source IN' and taken as a reference to calculate the remaining values.  In case this setting is made on the tab **EDL Reels** for the reel of the event, any manually specified value here will be overwritten.
Path	Details where to search for clips for this event. If applicable, it is already set to the path that was selected during an autoconforming (see section "Conforming" on page 8-13). By changing this entry you can select a new location for the search when `Disk Online` or `VTR-TL` is selected. For further information see **Video path** and **Audio path** in section "Configuring the Autoconforming" on page 8-15.
Consolidated clips	Shows the name of the consolidated clip, i.e. the (future) source clip for this event (see section "Capture data..." on page 8-53).
Bin clip	Details the path and name to this event in the bin of the DVS software.
Comment	If applicable, this field shows comments that were available for this event in the originally imported EDL file. It can be changed freely, i.e. you can change already available comments or enter new ones. When exporting to an EDL, the entries in this field will be added as comment(s) for this event to the exported EDL.

8.5.6 The Tab 'EDL Reels'

On the tab **EDL Reels** you can find the reels that are currently available in the selected EDL. It provides information, for example, about their names and conforming methods.

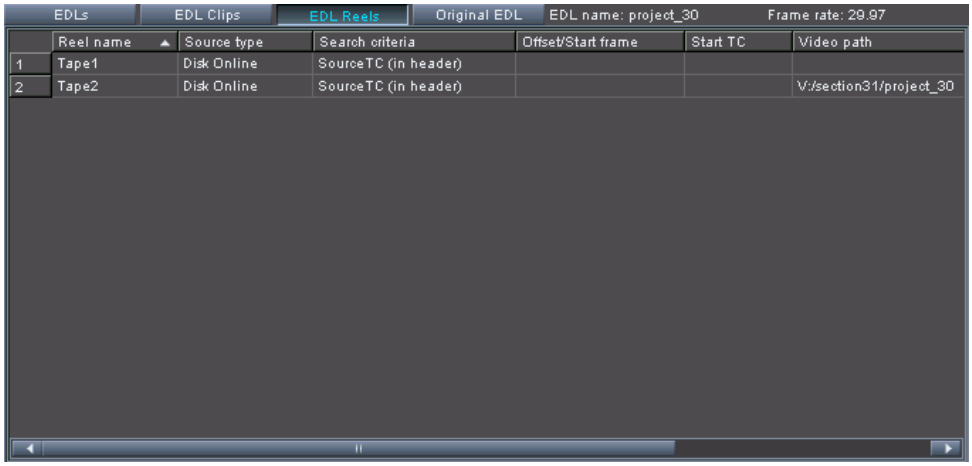


Figure 8-20: The tab 'EDL Reels'

By selecting one or more reels in this view on the EDL, the clips belonging to this reel will be selected in the timeline area and on the tab **EDL Clips** as well. This works also the other way around, meaning when all clips of a reel are selected in the timeline and/or on the tab **EDL Clips**, the respective reel will be selected in this view as well.

To select more than one element in this EDL view you can use the usual methods provided by the DVS software (see section "Keyboard Shortcuts" on page A-7) or the functionality of the **SELECT...** button (see section "Select..." on page 8-43). Additionally, to select several adjoining elements you can select one with the mouse, keep the mouse button pressed and then move the mouse to the point where the selection should end. All adjoining elements will be selected.

The following explains the columns that are available on the tab **EDL Reels**:

When changing settings on this tab, the settings of all events that belong to the respective reel will be changed (if their status is 'Offline'). The changes can be seen in the respective columns of the events on the tab **EDL Clips**.

Column	Description
Reel name	Details the name of the reel as it was determined during the import of the EDL. It can be altered freely and its counterpart in the bin will be named accordingly. Please note that in some EDL standards the reel name is restricted, for example, to a maximum number of characters.
Source type	Same as the 'Source type' setting on the tab **EDL Clips** (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31).

Column	Description
Search criteria	Same as the 'Search criteria' setting on the tab **EDL Clips** (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31):
Offset/Start frame	Same as the 'Offset/Start frame' setting on the tab **EDL Clips** (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31), with the following exception: The offset/start frame entered here is valid for the complete reel. When `Start frame` is selected, you can enter in this field the frame number that should be set as the starting point of your reel. The actual starting point (timecode) has to be set in 'Start TC'.
Start TC	Available when `Start frame` is selected: Enter in this field the starting point of your reel, i.e. the timecode that should be equated with the frame number specified in 'Offset/Start frame'.
Video path	Same as the 'Path' setting on the tab **EDL Clips** (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31), with the exception that it is valid for video events of the reel only.
Audio path	Same as the 'Path' setting on the tab **EDL Clips** (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31), with the exception that it is valid for audio events of the reel only.
Found clips	Indicates how many clips of the reel are already linked to data on a storage.

8.5.7 The Tab 'Original EDL'

The tab **Original EDL** shows you the original file of the currently selected EDL as it would appear in a text editor.

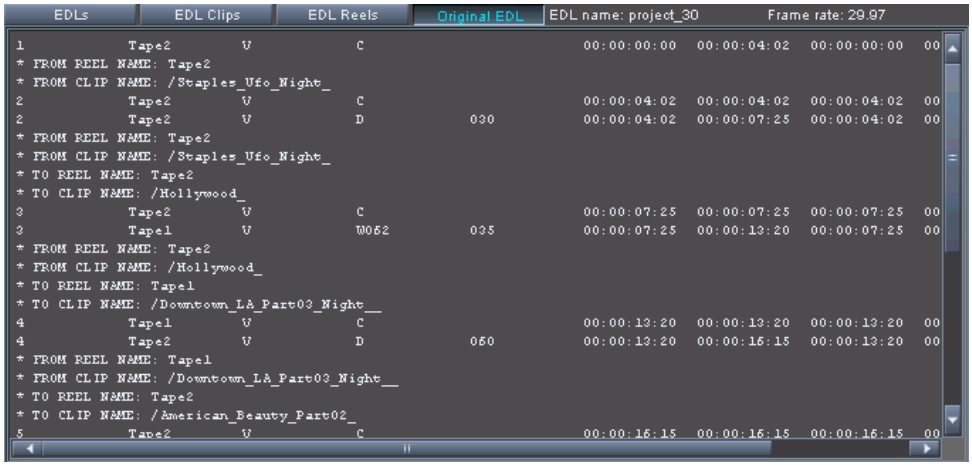


Figure 8-21: The tab 'Original EDL'

With the help of the tab **Original EDL** you can, for example, compare the contents of the EDL file with its imported version in the Edit Tool. Additionally, you can mark text with the mouse and then copy it to the clipboard of the operating system by simply calling the context menu in the text field and selecting the menu option ***Copy*** or using the keyboard shortcut [Ctrl + C].

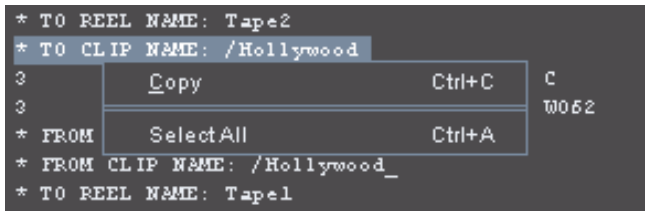


Figure 8-22: Marking and processing of text

The menu option ***Select All*** of the context menu (keyboard shortcut [Ctrl + A]) marks the complete text of the EDL.

8.6 Conforming Mode – The Conforming Controls

The conforming controls offer you various sophisticated functions to process EDLs.

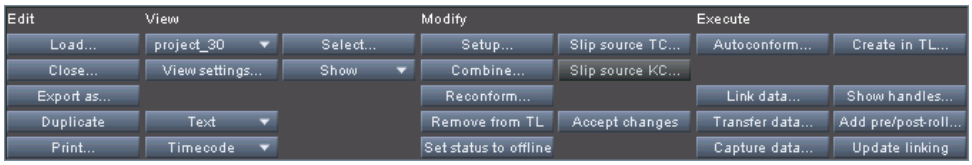


Figure 8-23: The conforming controls

Via the conforming controls you can, for example, import EDLs, change the viewing settings of the work area or modify imported EDLs. They will be described in this section.

8.6.1 The Edit Controls

In the following you can find descriptions of the controls that allow you to edit EDLs more generally.

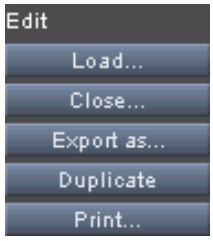


Figure 8-24: The edit controls

Load... 

This button allows you to import an EDL or cut list into the Edit Tool. It performs the same operation as, for example, the ***Add EDL...*** menu option of the menu ***Project***. The complete procedure is in detail described in section “Importing and Adding EDLs” on page 8-6.

Close... 

This button closes an imported EDL. Afterwards it will be removed (deleted) from the Edit Tool, i.e. from the bin as well as from the conforming mode. In case it was built up in the timeline, you will be asked whether the clips should be removed from the timeline as well. If this is denied, the EDL folders in the bin will be changed to standard bin folders and the EDL clips in the timeline will be converted to standard clips.

During the closing procedure you will also be asked whether you want to save the EDL, i.e. whether already made changes should be saved as an EDL. In case you confirm this, the procedure to export an EDL will be initiated (see section “Export as…” on page 8-41).

Export as... Export as...

This button exports the selected EDL with all changes applied to an EDL. It performs the same procedure as the menu option ***Export EDL...*** of the ***Project*** menu but for the currently selected EDL only (see section “Export EDL…” on page 9-8).

Duplicate Duplicate

This button duplicates the selected EDL. Afterwards the duplicated EDL will be available in the bin as well as on the tab **EDLs** (see section “The Tab 'EDLs'” on page 8-29).

Print... Print...

This button prints out the information of the currently activated tab of the work area (see section “Conforming Mode – The Work Area” on page 8-27). The elements that should be printed out can be adjusted with the controls to configure the view of the conforming mode, such as the button **VIEW SETTINGS...** (see section “View settings…” on page 8-42) or the combo box **Show** (see section “Show” on page 8-44).

8.6.2 The View Controls

The following describes the controls that allow you to determine the view on the EDLs.



Figure 8-25: The view controls

<EDL> TL as EDL

From the drop-down list of this combo box you can select the EDL that should be marked and/or displayed in the work area. The drop-down

list shows all EDLs currently available in the project (see also section "The Tab 'EDLs'" on page 8-29).

View settings... View settings...

Via the button **VIEW SETTINGS...** you can adjust the appearances of the tables on the tabs of the work area to your needs. It allows you to hide or display columns of the tables. Additionally, you can configure the size of the thumbnails of the work area. A click on this button opens the following window:

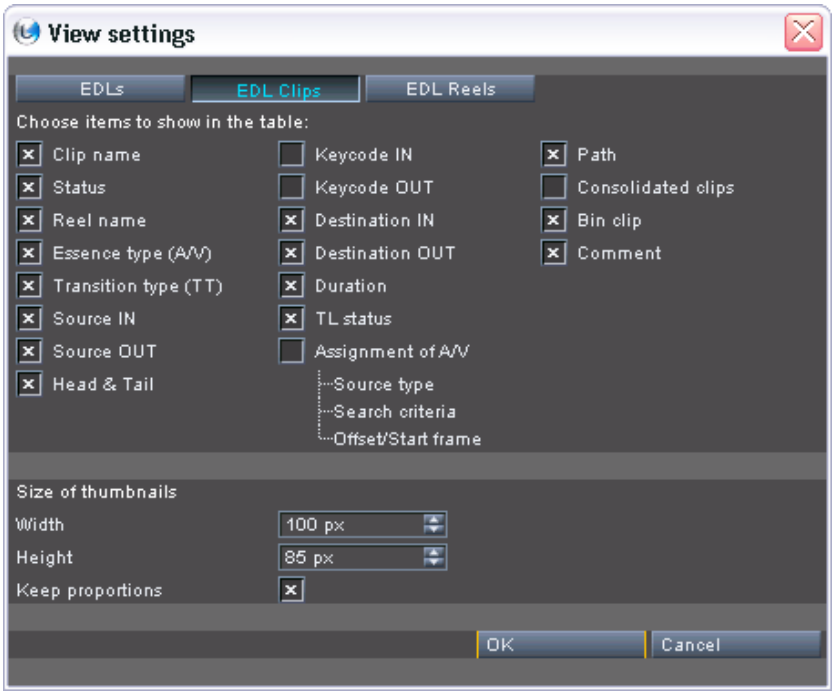


Figure 8-26: The view settings

With the buttons at the top of the window you can switch between the different views (tabs) of the work area (see section "Conforming Mode – The Work Area" on page 8-27). The items that are available for each view will then be displayed below the buttons. By activating or deactivating the check boxes you can display or hide columns in the tables of the tabs.

Furthermore, in some views of the work area you can also display thumbnails of the EDL clips (see section "Text / Image" on page 8-43). Then the settings items **Size of thumbnails** will be available at the bottom of the window. With them you can adjust the width and height of the thumbnails that can be displayed in the selected tab. Either enter the size (in pixels) manually or use the controls to the right of the entry field to step the value up or down until it is set as desired. When the check box below the settings items is activated, you can adjust just one value: The remaining value will adapt itself according to the entered

one so that the relation of width to height of the last confirmed size remains the same.

Once everything is set close the window and confirm your view settings with the button **OK**. Your adjustments to the view settings can then be seen in the tables of the work area.

Text / Image 

This combo box switches the view of the table displayed in the work area between the normal text-only view and a view together with thumbnails. When `Text` is selected, the table is displayed with text information only. If `Image` is selected, there will be an additional column available showing you the thumbnails of the EDL clips'/reels' first image.

Timecode / Frames 

This combo box performs the same operation as the context menu on a position/length indicator in the DVS software. For further information about this see section "About Timecode / Frame Number Fields" on page 2-17.

Select... 

With this button you can select (mark) entries in the table of the displayed tab. It may be useful, for example, in case a lot of elements are displayed in the table and a selection would otherwise be tedious to make. It opens a window as the following:

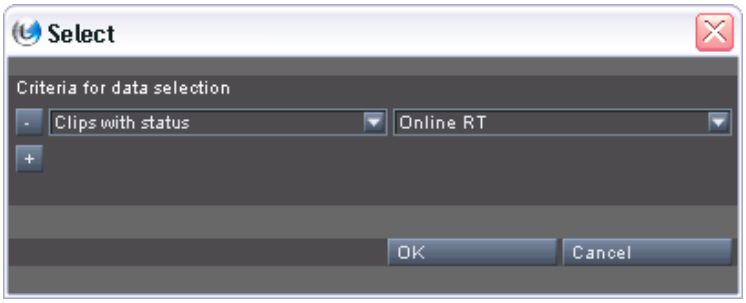


Figure 8-27: Making a selection

With the combo box to the left determine the search criteria that should be used to make the selection. There will be different criteria to choose from depending on the tab displayed in the work area. When a criteria is selected, you can specify the parameter on which to make the selection with the combo box to the right.

The button **+** () to the left adds another set of search criteria items that will also be used to make the selection. With them an AND search is provided (e.g. when searching for clips of a particular reel (`Clips of`

reel) that have a specific status (Clips with status)). You can add as many AND searches as you like and they can be deleted just by clicking the **-** button (-) right in front of the criteria items.

Once everything is set, the selection can be performed with the button **OK**. Afterwards the elements that match your specified criteria will be selected in the table as well as in the timeline.

Show Show

When a selection is made in the table displayed in the work area (see e.g. section "Select…" on page 8-43), you can use this combo box to switch between a view of the selected elements only or of all elements. This allows you, for example, to perform tasks on the selected elements only (e.g. printing, see section "Print…" on page 8-41).

8.6.3 The Modify Controls

The following describes the controls that allow you to modify EDLs or their elements.



Figure 8-28: The modify controls

Setup... Setup...

This button allows you to set up and configure the currently selected EDL. After pressing it the same window will be displayed as during the adding of an EDL to the bin. For further information about this window see section "Importing and Adding EDLs" on page 8-6.

Depending on the state of the EDL (e.g. if it is already conformed and/or built up in the timeline), some settings items may not be available.

Additionally, when working on an EDL that is already partially conformed, changing the configurations will affect events with the status 'Offline' only.

Combine... 

With this button you can combine EDLs available in this project to a single EDL. It opens the following window:

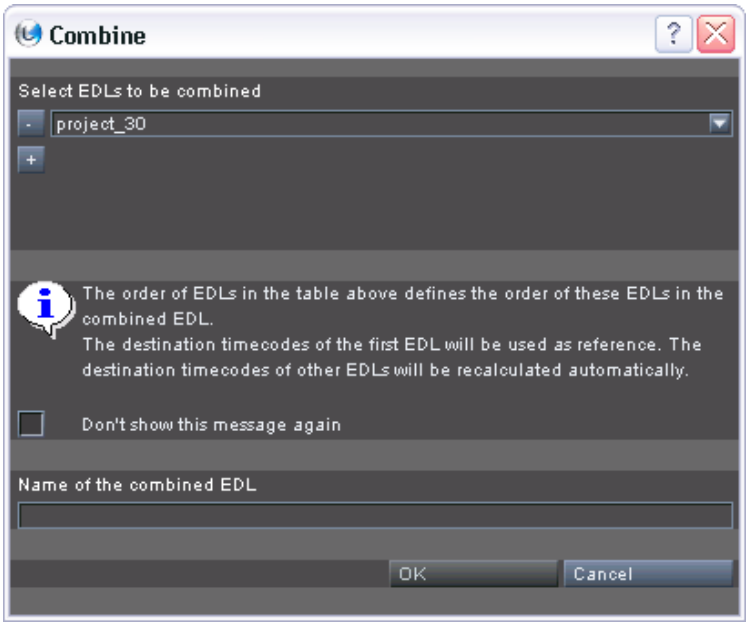


Figure 8-29: Combining EDLs

Use the items at the top of the window to select the EDLs that should be combined.

If you want to combine the timeline of your project with an EDL, you have to create an EDL of the timeline first by duplicating the entry 'Timeline as EDL' on the tab **EDLs** (see section "Duplicate" on page 8-41).

From the very first combo box choose the EDL that should be used as the starting point for the combined EDLs. With the button **+** (+) to the left you can add additional combo boxes to the first one to select additional EDLs that should be appended to the first one. The drop-down lists of the combo boxes show all EDLs that are available in the project. With the **-** button(s) (-) you can remove the respective combo box.

The EDLs will be combined in the specified sequence from top to bottom. The destination timecodes of the top EDL will be taken as the reference. The destination timecodes of the appended EDLs will be recalculated so that they appear one after another behind the first one in a timeline.

At the bottom of the window you can find an entry field where you have to enter the name of the combined EDL. Once everything is set, the EDLs can be combined to a single one with the button **OK**. Afterwards the combined EDL will be added to the bin and the tab **EDLs** from where it can be used just as any other EDL in the Edit Tool.

Reconform... 

When an EDL is already conformed and built up in the timeline and you receive an update for this EDL, you can use this button to compare the used EDL with the changed one. Then, instead of conforming the updated EDL again, the reconforming feature will save you time by linking the clips it recognizes from the older EDL automatically to the clips of the new EDL. Any effects that have been already added to the clips of the older EDL can be retained as well.

To use this function make sure that the EDL to be updated is selected and visible in the work area of the conforming mode.

A click on the button **RECONFORM...** opens the following window:

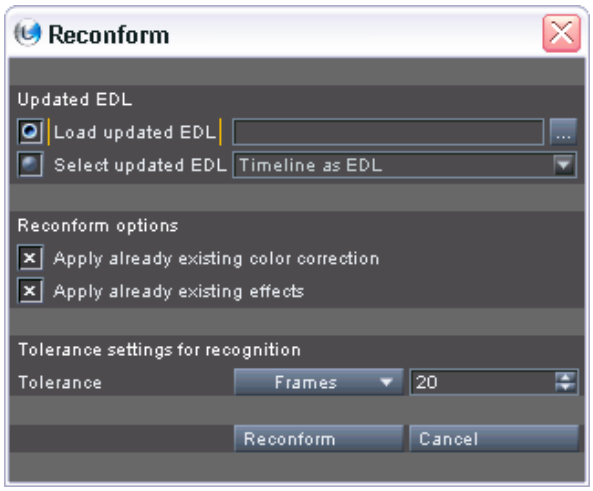


Figure 8-30: Reconforming an EDL

Use the items at the top of the window to select the updated EDL by choosing one of the options provided by the radio buttons to the left:

Load updated EDL	With this option you can load an EDL and import it into the Edit Tool. Use the button to the right (...) to select the EDL via the opening dialog window. After this you have to set up the EDL to be imported as usual (see section “Importing and Adding EDLs” on page 8-6).
Select updated EDL	If already imported into the DVS software, you can use this option to select the updated EDL from the drop-down list of the combo box. It will list all EDLs available in the project.

With the check boxes you can determine that the clips of the updated EDL should be set to the same effects settings configured for the clips of the EDL to be updated. To apply these effects settings correctly you can specify a tolerance value for the clip lengths with the **Tolerance**

settings. Then, a clip will receive the same effects settings as a clip of the older EDL if its duration is within the stated tolerance. Enter the tolerance in the entry field to the right either in frames or timecode notation (which can be switched with the combo box to the left).

Finally, with the button **RECONFORM** you can automatically conform the updated EDL on the basis of the already conformed one. Afterward the updated EDL can be selected in the bin from where it can be used as usual, e.g. created in the timeline of the Edit Tool.

Remove from TL

Remove from TL

This button removes the EDL that is selected in the work area from the timeline.

When removing an EDL from the timeline observe the insert/overwrite mode: In the insert mode still available contents of the timeline will be moved appropriately so that the removal of the EDL causes no gaps in the timeline, while in the overwrite mode the clips will stay at their locations (see also section "The Insert/Overwrite Mode of the Timeline" on page 6-34).

Set status to offline

Set status to offline

With this button you can set the statuses of the EDL events that are currently selected on the tab **EDL Clips** back to 'Offline' again (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31). It will remove already established linkings to video and/or audio material for the selected events so that they are unconformed again. Afterwards the events and their conforming can be adjusted, for example, by altering their in- and outpoints or by selecting another conforming method.

Slip source TC...

Slip source TC...

The source in- and outpoints of unconformed events can be adjusted with this button in a single step. It can be used either on a selection of events or on all displayed on the tab **EDL Clips**. A click on this button opens the following window:

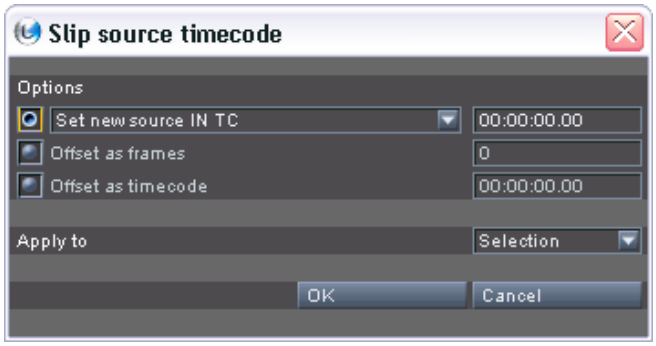


Figure 8-31: Slipping source in- and outpoints

To adjust the source in- and outpoints you can select between several possibilities and you have to choose one with the radio buttons to the left:



Further information about timecode or frames notation can be found in section “About Timecode / Frame Number Fields” on page 2-17.

The smallest/largest source in-/outpoint available among the selected events cannot be set beyond the boundaries of a 24-hours timeline.

combo box	With this item you can set either a new source inpoint or a new source outpoint. Select the respective option from the drop-down list of the combo box. Then enter in the field to the right the new in- or outpoint in timecode format. If more than one event will be altered, it sets the source position of the smallest/largest value. All other events will be adjusted accordingly.
Offset as frames	Sets an offset value in frames (positive or negative) that will be added or subtracted from the source in- and outpoints of the selected events.
Offset as timecode	Sets an offset value in timecode format (positive or negative) that will be added or subtracted from the source in- and outpoints of the selected events.

Additionally, once an option has been set, you can specify the range of events that should be changed with the **Apply to** combo box: They can be performed either on all clips of an EDL or the event(s) currently selected in on the tab **EDL Clips**.

When everything is set, the source in- and outpoints of the EDL can be adjusted by clicking the button **OK**. Afterward the adjusted source in- and outpoints will be displayed in orange.

Slip source KC...



If keycodes are available in your EDL or cut list respectively, they can be adjusted with this button in a single step. It opens the following window:

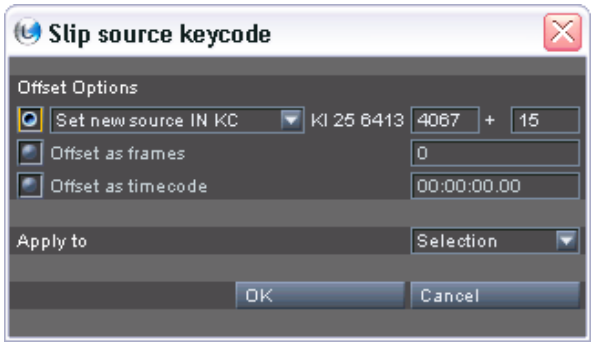


Figure 8-32: Slipping keycodes

This window provides you with the same possibilities as the window to slip source in- and outpoints, only that it adjusts keycodes. For further information about its settings items see section “Slip source TC…” on page 8-47.

Only the keycodes’ reference numbers can be altered.

Further information about keycodes can be found in section “About Keycode” on page 2-16.

Accept changes



When changes were applied to an EDL, for example, by altering their source or destination in- and outpoints, they will be displayed in orange on the tab **EDL Clips**. By clicking this button you can accept the changes. Then all entries in the table will be displayed in the standard colors of unmodified events again.

8.6.4 The Execute Controls

The following describes the controls that allow you to process EDLs.

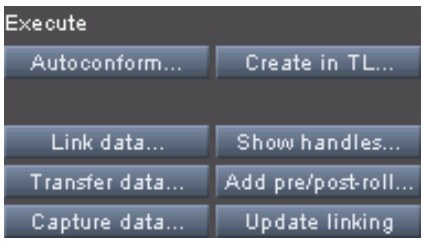


Figure 8-33: The execute controls

Autoconform...



This button starts an autoconforming process for the EDL that is currently selected in the work area. After pressing it the same window will

be displayed as after initiating an autoconforming (e.g. after the build-up of an unconformed EDL in the timeline). For further information about this window as well as about the autoconforming process see section "Configuring the Autoconforming" on page 8-15.

When an autoconforming is performed, manually adjusted settings for events (see section "Conforming Mode – The Work Area" on page 8-27) may be overwritten with the ones set for the autoconforming.

Link data... Link data...

With this button you can start a conforming by using linking methods that have been manually set for events, for example, on the tab **EDL Clips** (see section "Conforming Mode – The Work Area" on page 8-27). The linking data feature can be applied to either a selection of unconformed events or all displayed on the tab **EDL Clips**. It is able to perform different searches in a single step in accordance with your settings, such as searching in the SpycerNet (`SpycerNet`) as well as on the local storage (`Disk Online`).

When `Disk Online` or `VTR-TL` is set as the 'Source type', a path has to be specified which can be done, for instance, in the fields of the column 'Path' on the tabs **EDL Clips** or **EDL Reels** (see section "Conforming Mode – The Work Area" on page 8-27).

When using this function the events set to `VTR` will be ignored. For them you have to perform a capturing, for example, via the button **CAPTURE DATA...** (see section "Capture data..." on page 8-53).

A click on the button **LINK DATA...** opens the following window:

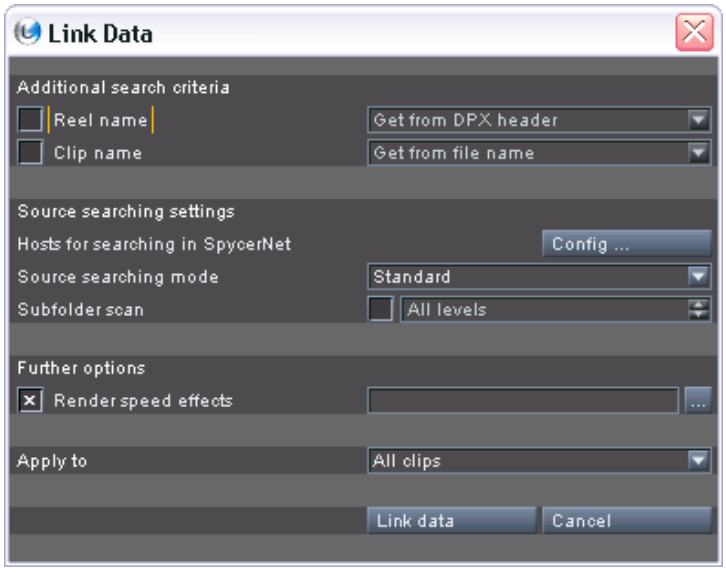


Figure 8-34: Linking data

This window provides almost the same settings items as the **'Autoconform'** window. The ones that are missing should have been configured manually on the tabs of the work area. The following describes the settings items that are available in addition. For information about the ones not described please refer to section "Configuring the Autoconforming" on page 8-15.

Hosts for searching in SpycerNet	With the button **CONFIG...** provided by this setting you can determine where in the SpycerNet to search for clips. It opens a window that lists all systems currently registered in the SpycerNet and their watch folders in a tree view. Simply select the systems/directories where to search for clips by activating their check boxes.
Subfolder scan	Normally, a search will be performed recursively in all (sub)directories available at the specified locations. By activating the check box of this setting you can define with the entry field to the right the number of subdirectory levels that should be searched through. With this you can, for example, limit a search to the main branch of a volume/directory and discard others that are available beneath it.

When everything is set, you can start the linking of data with the button **LINK DATA**. Then the conforming methods detailed for the selected events are used to search for the content at the specified locations and one or more progress bars will provide you with information about the statuses of the search. Afterwards you will be informed about them same as after an autoconforming (see section "Evaluation and Further Processing of the Conforming" on page 8-18).

Transfer data...



When conforming, for instance, with the SpycerNet you will most likely search for content on foreign systems. If clips were found on such systems, they will get the status 'Online NRT' (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31). To make them real-time capable they can be transferred (copied) to the main storage of your system via the 'transfer data' feature. It can be applied to either a selection of clips or all displayed on the tab **EDL Clips**, and it will be performed if their status is 'Online NRT'. A click on the button **TRANSFER DATA...** opens the following window:

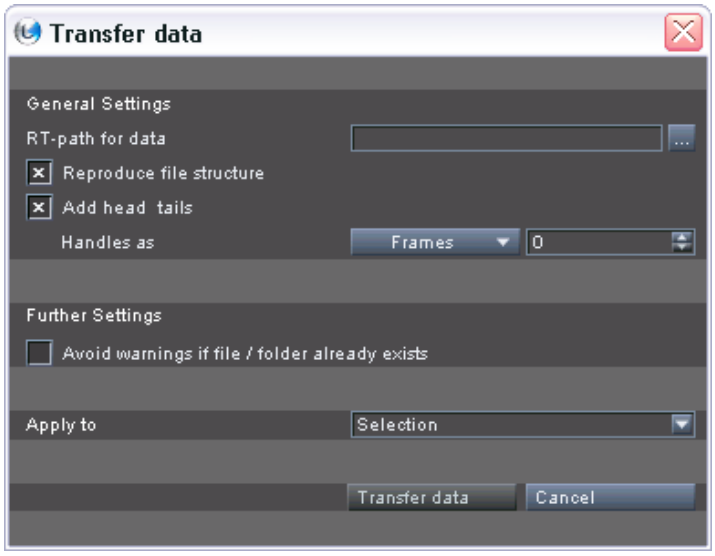


Figure 8-35: Transferring data

Use the settings items as detailed in the following to configure the copy process:

RT-path for data	Specify in this entry field the path on your main storage where to save the copied data or use the button to the right of the field (...) to select one directly via the opening dialog window.
Reproduce file structure	When this check box is activated, the directory structure as found on the foreign system will be recreated on your storage as well, i.e. the complete path to the clip on the foreign system will be created in the specified target directory (**RT-path for data**). If deactivated, only the main directory of the clip with the clip stored beneath it will be created.
Add heads tails	With this check box activated, you can determine the amount of heads and tails that should be copied in addition to the material pointed to by the source in- and outpoint. Afterwards the transferred clip will provide the entered handles on either side of the clip or, if not enough material is available, the maximum amount that is possible. Enter the number of heads and tails in the entry field to the right either in frames or timecode notation (can be switched with the combo box to the left).

Avoid warnings if file/folder already exists	Normally, when transferring data, it is checked whether the material to be copied already exists in the target directory. If files/folders are already present, you will be notified about this by the software. By activating this check box you can suppress these notifications, i.e. such messages will no longer appear and the material will be overwritten immediately.
Apply to	This setting allows you to limit the procedure. You can perform it either on all clips of an EDL or on a selection of clips/reels. A selection can be specified either when the EDL is available in the timeline (see section "Working with EDLs from the Timeline" on page 8-22) or in the conforming mode (see section "The Conforming Mode in General" on page 8-25).

When everything is set, you can start the transfer of data with the button **TRANSFER DATA**. Then the source data will be copied by the DVS high-speed copying routine to the specified target directory on your main storage. During this time the statuses of these events will be changed to 'Is transferring' (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31). Once the transfer is complete, the statuses will be set to 'Online RT' indicating that the material of these events is now available on your main storage and properly linked to the events.



The progress of the copy procedure(s) can be seen on the tab **Job List** of Spycer.

Copy processes via the 'transfer data' feature of the conforming tool can be paused manually on the remote Spycer or automatically via a real-time process of the DVS software. However, in the conforming mode they will still be displayed as 'Is transferring'. Via the tab **Job List** of Spycer you can check the state of copy processes and, if required, resume them.

For further information about the tab **Job List**, Spycer in general as well as the high-speed copying routine see the "Spycer" user guide.

Capture data...



In case the material for a conforming is not already online stored on a storage, you can capture it from an externally connected system with this button. It creates a batch capture list for either the selected or all unconformed events displayed on the tab **EDL Clips** that have been

manually set to VTR as the 'Source type' (see section "Conforming Mode – The Work Area" on page 8-27).

A setting to VTR for 'Source type' can be performed automatically: For this simply follow the message displayed in case no clip of the EDL is set to VTR.

After this the batch list will be transferred to the I/O Tool of the DVS software where it is displayed in the batch record mode ready for a capturing. When finished with the batch capturing, the clips of the EDL will be automatically linked to the new source material in the Edit Tool.

A click on the button **CAPTURE DATA...** opens the following window:

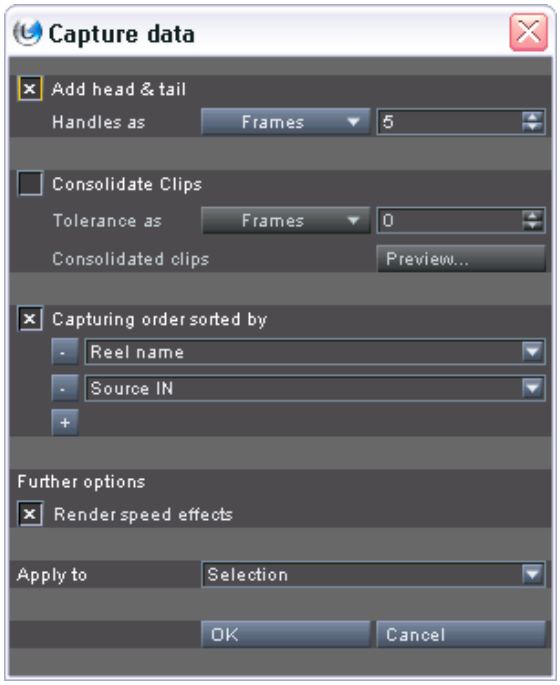


Figure 8-36: Capturing data

With the check box **Add head & tail** activated, you can determine the amount of heads and tails that should be captured in addition to the material pointed to by the source in- and outpoints. Afterwards the captured clips will provide the entered handles on either side of their in-/outpoints. Enter the number of heads and tails in the entry field to the right either in frames or timecode notation. The notation can be switched with the combo box to the left.

By activating the check box **Consolidate Clips** you can prevent multiple capturings of the same material. This is useful if the captured material comes from the same source (reel) and some source in-/outpoints are either overlapping or near each other. Use the **Tolerance as** settings items to determine the tolerance for the detection of the consolidated clips. It specifies the maximal allowed gap length between two events of the same reel (plus one frame). If within the tolerance, their

source material will be combined (consolidated) and captured as a single clip. The tolerance can be entered in the entry field to the right either in frames or timecode notation which can be switched with the combo box to the left. The button **PREVIEW...** allows you to view the consolidation. It opens the following window:

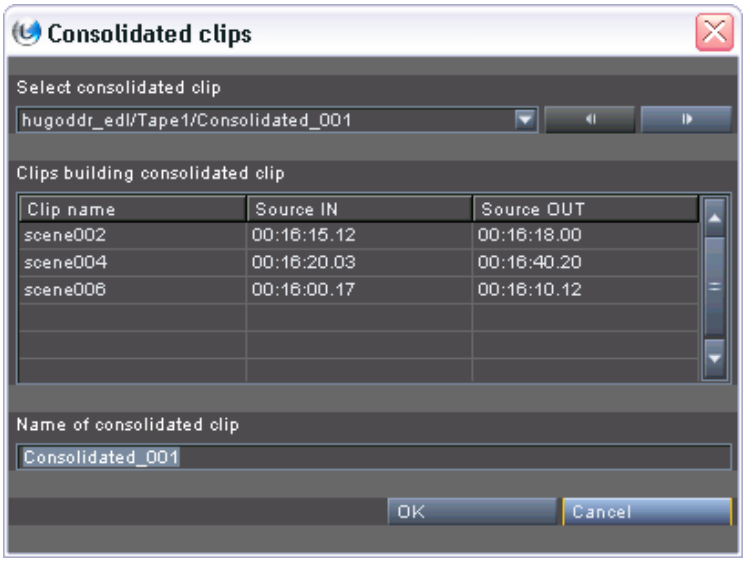


Figure 8-37: Previewing consolidated clips

In this window the consolidated clips are shown.

Only those events will be displayed that have been set to VTR and are selected by the current setting of the item **Apply to** (see below).

Either by selecting an entry from the combo box at the top or by using the buttons to the right ( ) you can step through the detected consolidated clips. In the table you can see for each consolidated clip the events of the EDL whose source material will only be captured once. Via the entry field at the bottom of the window a new name can be specified for the displayed consolidated clip. Once confirmed with the button **OK**, the source material of the EDL events shown in this window will be captured with the specified names and linked to the EDL events right after capturing.

With the check box **Capturing order sorted by** activated you can determine the sequence in which the clips should be captured. If you are capturing from an externally connected VTR, it is recommended to sort the capturing in C-mode to avoid cueing times of the VTR (default setting). Select from the combo boxes the column headings (tab **EDL Clips**) that the batch list should be sorted by. The batch list will be sorted in the specified sequence from top to bottom (e.g. first by reel names, then by source inpoint). With the button **+** ( ) you can add additional combo boxes for further sorting criteria. With the **-** button(s) ( ) you can remove a combo box from the sorting order list. In case

the check box of this setting is deactivated, the events on the tab **EDL Clips** will be captured in the sequence that the table is sorted by.

Speed effects of the EDL to be captured must be rendered, meaning image files may be omitted or created anew according to the specified speed. To receive speed effects the check box **Render speed effects** has to be activated.

The **Apply to** setting allows you to limit the capturing. You can perform it either on all clips of an EDL or on a selection of clips/reels. A selection can be specified either when the EDL is available in the timeline (see section "Working with EDLs from the Timeline" on page 8-22) or in the conforming mode (see section "The Conforming Mode in General" on page 8-25). Choose the appropriate option from the combo box.

When everything is set as desired, you can begin the capturing procedure by clicking on the **OK** button. Then a batch list of the events to be captured will be created and the DVS software switches to the batch record mode of the I/O Tool. The batch list will be displayed in the capture list table of the I/O Tool ready to be captured.

For further information about how to adapt the capturing (e.g. the record path) or how to initiate the record operation see the "CLIPSTER I/O Tool" user guide.

As soon as the capturing is finished, you can switch back to the Edit Tool of the DVS software and find the clips of the EDL already linked to the newly recorded material.

Create in TL... 

This button creates and builds up the EDL that is currently selected in the work area in the timeline. In case the events of the EDL are already conformed, the clips in the timeline will show the linked material right away. After pressing it the same window will be displayed as after dragging an EDL to the timeline directly. For further information about this see section "Building up a Timeline" on page 8-9.

Creating an EDL twice in the timeline will duplicate it (in the bin and timeline). However, if the first created EDL exists only partially in the timeline, a dialog window appears beforehand asking you whether you want to duplicate the EDL or (re-)create the missing clips. By default newly added clips/EDLs will be added for video in the next higher video track (> no. 1), and for audio in the lowest audio tracks (> no. 16). Anyhow, this can be adjusted freely with the settings items of the displayed window.

Show handles... 

When the tab **EDL Clips** is activated with the currently displayed EDL built up in the timeline, you can use this button to show/hide heads and

tails, i.e. with this function you can relocate the trim points of all clips in the timeline in a single step. It works also with standard clips of the Edit Tool when the EDL of the timeline ('Timeline as EDL', see section "The Tab 'EDLs'" on page 8-29) is duplicated and built up in the timline.

A click on this button opens the following window:

When showing or hiding handles, transitions may be replaced by hard cuts. However, they can be restored again by selecting the menu option ***Undo*** on the ***Edit*** menu (see section "The 'Edit' Menu" on page 9-17).

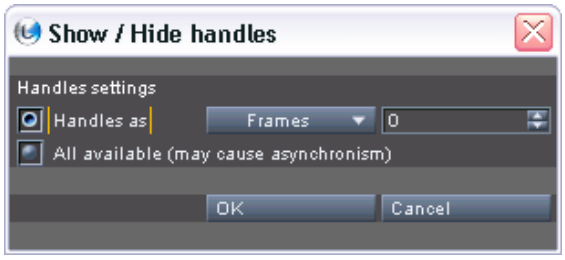


Figure 8-38: Showing or hiding heads and tails

In this window you can choose between several possibilities to show or hide handles by selecting one with the radio buttons to the left:

Handles as	Determines the lengths of the heads and tails that should be shown or hidden. Afterwards each trim point of the clips in the timeline (i.e. their in- and outpoints) will be adjusted accordingly. Enter the length in the entry field to the right either in frames or timecode notation (can be switched with the combo box to the left): > 0 (positive) — More of the handles will be shown in the timeline, i.e. the durations of the clips increase. < 0 (negative) — Hides handles, i.e. the durations of the clips decrease.
All available	Displays all heads and tails in the timeline as they are available for each clip. However, because handles rarely are of the same lengths, they cannot be restored by using this function again with an inversed setting (see below).

By performing this function a second time with an inverse sign (e.g. plus instead of minus), the effect on the clips in the timeline can be reversed. Yet, the same can be achieved (even if transitions are replaced by hard cuts) with the menu option ***Undo*** on the ***Edit*** menu (see section "The 'Edit' Menu" on page 9-17).

When everything is set and the **OK** button is clicked, the showing/hiding of heads and tails will be applied to the clips in the timeline. If the entered lengths of handles would either reduce or exceed the duration of at least one clip beyond the boundaries of its source material, you will be informed about this by the DVS software. Then, when returning to the window **'Show / Hide handles'**, the maximum lengths of the handles that can be set for the clips in the timeline will be indicated in the entry field of the setting **Handles as**. With this applied the showing/hiding of handles can be performed without causing a further warning.

Add pre/post-roll... 

This function adds black clips in front and/or behind each clip in the timeline. These can be used as pre-/post-rolls for the clips of an EDL, for instance, when recording them back on tape again. The black clips that are inserted are generated virtually from a single black image added to the main storage of your system. The clips also provide virtual source timecodes matching the source timecodes of the clips they precede or follow in the timeline. For further information about virtual source timecode see section "About Source Timecode" on page 2-15.

Audio files are disregarded when using this function.

When adding pre-/post-rolls, transitions will be replaced by hard cuts. However, they can be restored again by selecting the menu option ***Undo*** on the ***Edit*** menu (see section "The 'Edit' Menu" on page 9-17).

A click on this button opens the following window:

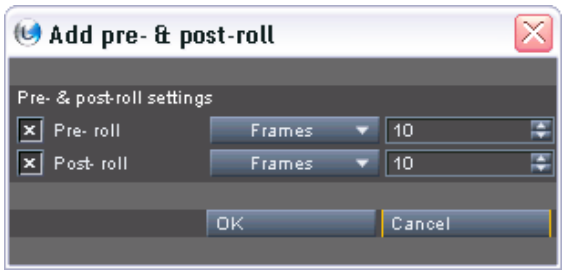


Figure 8-39: Adding pre-/post-rolls

By activating the check boxes to the left you can decide whether pre- or post-rolls or both should be added to the clips in the timeline. Their lengths can be entered in the entry fields to the right either in frames or timecode notation (which can be switched with the provided combo boxes).

When everything is set and the **OK** button is pressed, the pre-/post-rolls will be added as clips showing black images in front and/or behind each clip in the timeline. Once set, they can be adjusted easily by ap-

plying this function again with different settings (i.e. they will be adjusted, not doubled). This way they can also be removed from the timeline: Either set them to a length of zero (0) or deactivate their check boxes. After this the pre-/post-rolls will be removed from the timeline.

Update linking

Update linking

With this button you can check the 'Online' statuses of the EDL clips (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31), i.e. you can check if the material that is linked to these clips is still available on the storage. If inconsistencies are found, you will receive the following error message:

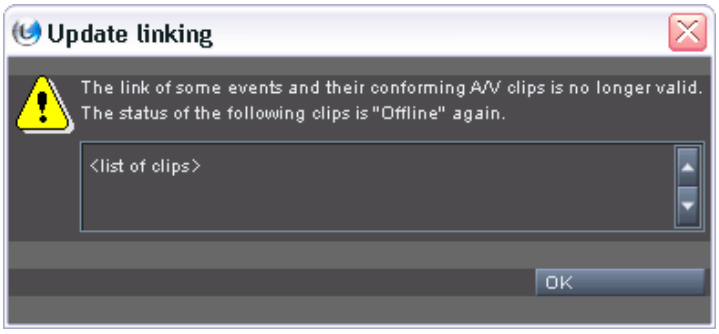


Figure 8-40: Error message of inconsistencies in source material

The error message provides you with a detailed list of all clips that could not be verified. Afterwards all inconsistent clips will be set to the status 'Offline' and must be conformed again.

8.7 Conforming Mode – The Preview Area

With the conforming mode of the Edit Tool's control area activated, the result of your work on the timeline/EDL can be reviewed and monitored in the preview area. It can be found at the right-hand side of the conforming mode and switched between a view of the timeline and the selected EDL:

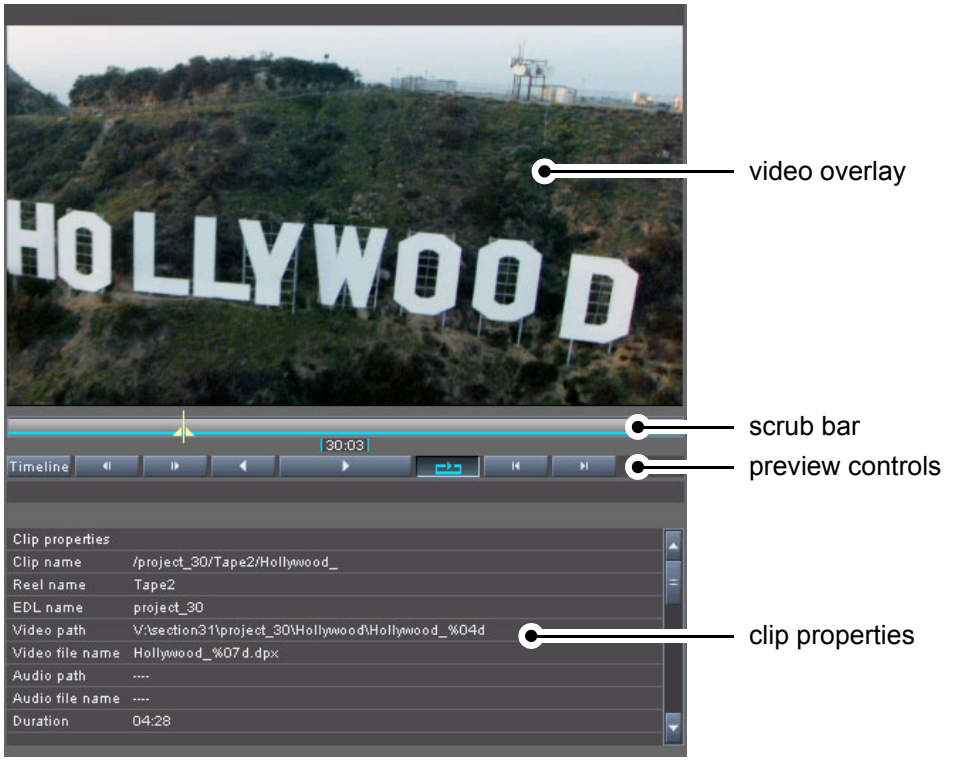


Figure 8-41: The preview area

At the top of the preview area you can find a video overlay showing you the contents of the timeline/EDL. Additionally, a scrub bar is provided below the video overlay as well as preview controls, both allowing you to move within the displayed contents. At the very bottom some text information can be found detailing properties of the currently displayed clip.

With the preview area you can view either the clips assembled in the timeline or the clips of the EDL. Furthermore, it can be used in a split screen operation (see section "Working with Split Screen" on page 8-64) and to resolve multiple search results found during conforming (status 'Multiple found', see section "Multiple Search Results" on page 8-19).

8.7.1 Selecting Contents for Viewing

With the preview area you can view either the clips assembled in the timeline or the clips of the EDL. Whether it shows the contents of the timeline or the EDL depends on the state of the toggle button **TIMELINE/EDL** of the preview controls (see section "The Preview Controls" on page 8-63). With it you can manually select what should be displayed in the preview area.

Furthermore, the preview area shows whatever you select in the work or timeline area. For example, if you select an EDL from the tab **EDLs** in the work area (see section "The Tab 'EDLs'" on page 8-29), the complete EDL will be shown in the preview area (in the current sorting order of the EDL on the tab **EDL Clips**, see section "Adapting the Appearances of the Tables" on page 8-28). This can be used on complete EDLs, individual events or reels. Then, if appropriate, the toggle button **TIMELINE/EDL** will be switched accordingly and the scrub bar of the preview area will show the timeline of the selected EDL or EDL event (see section "The Scrub Bar" on page 8-62).



If more than one element of an EDL is selected, the preview area will show you the one at the top of the selection.

When working in the timeline (timeline has focus), the toggle button **TIMELINE/EDL** will be switched accordingly and the preview area will show you the contents of the timeline at the current position of the timeline cursor.



EDL events with the status 'Online NRT' (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31) cannot be played because their content is located on remote systems in the network. They can only be viewed in still images. Additionally, there may be a time delay until the material is displayed in the video overlay depending on the current data transfer rate of your network.

8.7.2 The Video Overlay

The video overlay at the top of the preview area allows you to preview the contents of the timeline or EDL. Once an item is selected (see section "Selecting Contents for Viewing" on page 8-61), its contents is displayed there.

The context menu of the video overlay provides the same menu options as the video overlay in the edit mode of the control area (see section

"The Video Scopes" on page 5-3). In addition to these the following one is provided:

Split Screen When the preview area shows the contents of the timeline (see section "Selecting Contents for Viewing" on page 8-61), this menu option activates the split screen operation of the video overlay. Further information about this can be found in section "Working with Split Screen" on page 8-64.

8.7.3 The Scrub Bar

Beneath the video overlay you can find a scrub bar offering you a timeline of the currently displayed contents. With its cursor () you can move within and view the contents of the selected item. While working with the scrub bar or the preview controls, the video overlay always adjusts to your moves and displays the image at the selected position.

The scrub bar of the preview area is similar to the other scrub bars of the Edit Tool. For further information about them see chapter "The Control Area" on page 5-1. The following features are provided by the scrub bar:

Items of Scrub Bar	Description
in dark grey	Parts of the scrub bar displayed in dark grey indicate either parts of the timeline that are not visible in the timeline area at the moment due to zooming, or parts of an EDL event which are deselected via a set in- and outpoint (i.e. its head and tail).
in light grey	Parts in light grey indicate either the part of the timeline that is currently visible in the timeline area, or the part of an EDL event that is selected via a set in- and outpoint (i.e. the visible part of the EDL event after building up the EDL in the timeline)
	The blue line indicates the part of the EDL event/timeline that is selected via in- and outpoint.
	With the scrub bar cursor you can move within the EDL event/timeline. Simply select the cursor with the mouse and move it along the scrub bar to the desired position. You can also click somewhere on the scrub bar to move the cursor there immediately.

8.7.4 The Preview Controls

In addition to moving the scrub bar cursor manually you can control it via the preview controls below the scrub bar, e.g. the play button. In detail the controls beneath the scrub bar perform the following functions:

A preview can also be controlled with some of the keyboard shortcuts described in section “Keyboard Shortcuts” on page A-7.

Depending on the statuses of EDL events (see section “The Tab 'EDL Clips'” on page 8-31), some controls may not be available (e.g. a play-out cannot be performed with material on a remote system).



The **TIMELINE/EDL** button is a toggle button. If it is activated, its label will be changed to 'EDL' (

) and the contents of the EDL will be displayed in the preview area.

If this button is deactivated, its label will show 'Timeline' and the contents of the timeline at the current position of the timeline cursor will be displayed in the preview area.

For further information about this button see section “Selecting Contents for Viewing” on page 8-61.



With these buttons you can step one frame for- or backward in the displayed contents. The scrub bar cursor will move accordingly.



With this button you can play-out the displayed contents backwards, i.e. it will start a reverse play-out. Once activated, the button changes its appearance to its active state. To stop the reverse play-out you have to click it again.



With this button you can play out the contents that is currently displayed. After activation the button changes its appearance to its active state (
) and you have to press it again to stop the play.



With this button activated a play of the displayed contents will be performed endlessly in a loop: Once the scrub bar cursor reaches the end of the contents, the play will start from the beginning again. To switch off the loop mode simply click this button again.



These buttons jump to particular points on the contents currently displayed in the preview area, such as in-/outpoints or timeline markers. The first button jumps to the point that is previously located while the second button jumps to the next one.

8.7.5 Clip Properties

As soon as you select an element for viewing in the preview area (see section “Selecting Contents for Viewing” on page 8-61), additional information about the clip displayed in the video overlay will be provided at the bottom of the preview area:

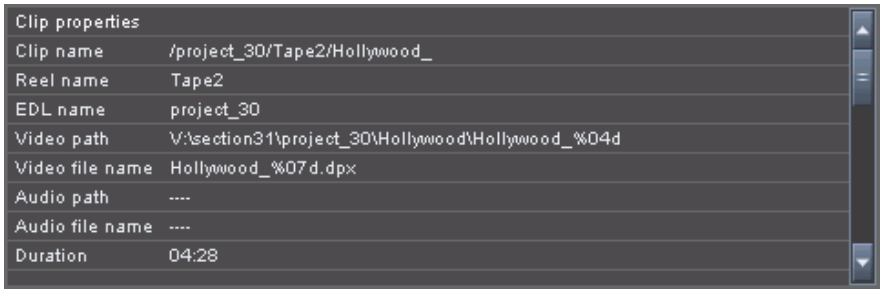


Figure 8-42: Clip properties

Besides standard information such as the clip’s name or the EDL and reel name it belongs to, you can find here, for example, information about the in- and outpoints of source, keycode and file number provided by the clip.

8.7.6 Working with Split Screen

This section describes how to set up a split screen operation in the Edit Tool. Using the split screen function it is possible to view the contents of two video tracks side by side in the video overlay of the preview area. With this you can, for example, compare a conformed EDL built up in the timeline with an offline edited low-resolution clip of the EDL. To set up a split screen operation perform the following:

The item to activate the split screen is only available with the preview area set to the timeline view (see also section “The Video Overlay” on page 8-61).

- If required build up your EDL in the timeline of the Edit Tool and conform it (see section “First Steps to Make a Conforming” on page 8-6).

- Then configure the timeline to provide a second video track (see section “Video and Audio Track Properties” on page 6-7).
- Add the offline edited low-resolution clip to a standard folder of the bin (see section “Adding Clips to the Bin” on page 4-6).
- Next add this clip to the second video track of the timeline (see section “Adding Clips to the Timeline” on page 6-2) so that it is synchronized with the contents of the built up EDL.

With this done you can activate the split screen function:

For a comparison with an offline edited clip it is also possible to recreate edit points. Further information about this can be found in section “Recreating Edit Points for an Offline Edited Clip” on page 8-67.

- If required switch the view of the preview area to the contents of the timeline (see section “Selecting Contents for Viewing” on page 8-61).
- On the video overlay of the preview area call up the context menu and activate the menu option ***Split screen*** (see section “The Video Overlay” on page 8-61).

After this the video overlay will show you the contents of the two video tracks with the highest priority that provide contents:



Figure 8-43: Split screen

In the bottom left part of the video overlay you can find the contents of the video track with the highest priority. In our demonstration here it is the low-resolution video material added to the second video track of the timeline. At the top right the original video material is displayed, i.e. the contents of the EDL built up in the first video track (lower priority).

However, because the EDL material is already linked to high-resolution content and the video format of the timeline is set appropriately, its size does not match the size of the low-resolution clip. To change this you

have to adjust the scaling of the clip/timeline by setting one of the following:

- Either adjust the autoscaling of the timeline (see section “How to Configure the Video Output” on page 6-12) or
- use the zooming and panning operator (see section “The Operator 'Zoom + Pan'” on page 7-16) to scale the clip to the appropriate output format.

Once this is done the two different contents can be compared, for instance, by playing out the timeline, and you can view it in the video overlay as well as at the outputs of the DVS system:



Figure 8-44: Split screen in operation

With the yellow line separating the tracks' contents the split screen operation can be adapted to your needs:

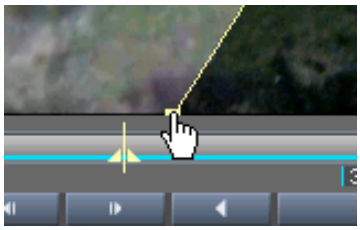




Figure 8-45: Adapting the split screen operation

By positioning the squares at either end of the yellow line with the mouse you can change the orientation of the line in the video overlay freely. Additionally, the line itself can be moved in the video overlay to set the separation to a different part of the displayed images.

8.7.7 Recreating Edit Points for an Offline Edited Clip

For a comparison with an offline edited clip (see section "Working with Split Screen" on page 8-64) it is also possible to recreate its edit points, for instance, to verify more easily that transitions match the conformed high-resolution master in the timeline:

- Add the EDL of the master once more to the bin (see section "Importing and Adding EDLs" on page 8-6).
- When setting up the import of the EDL configure its source in- and outpoints to the destination in- and outpoints (set **Source TC will be** to `Destination timecode`).
- After this build up the EDL in the timeline (see section "Building up a Timeline" on page 8-9). During the configuration of the build-up select as its position `According to destination TC` as well as empty video/audio tracks for the creation.
- Then perform an autoconforming for this EDL (see section "Conforming" on page 8-13) by configuring it to find the offline edited clip.

Once the events of the EDL are successfully conformed and linked to the offline edited clip, it will be available in the timeline with all its edit points.

8.7.8 Resolving Multiple Found

The preview area of the conforming mode can also be used to resolve multiple search results found during conforming (see section "Multiple Search Results" on page 8-19).

With the conforming mode activated and switched to the tab **EDL Clips** the multiple found hits can be identified easily via the status 'Multiple found' (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31). When such an EDL event is selected in the table, the preview area will alter its appearance and the found search results for this event will be displayed:



You can also switch to the conforming mode and display the search results of such a clip in the preview area when working on an EDL from the timeline (see menu option ***Resolve "Multiple found"-clip...*** in section "Working with EDLs from the Timeline" on page 8-22).

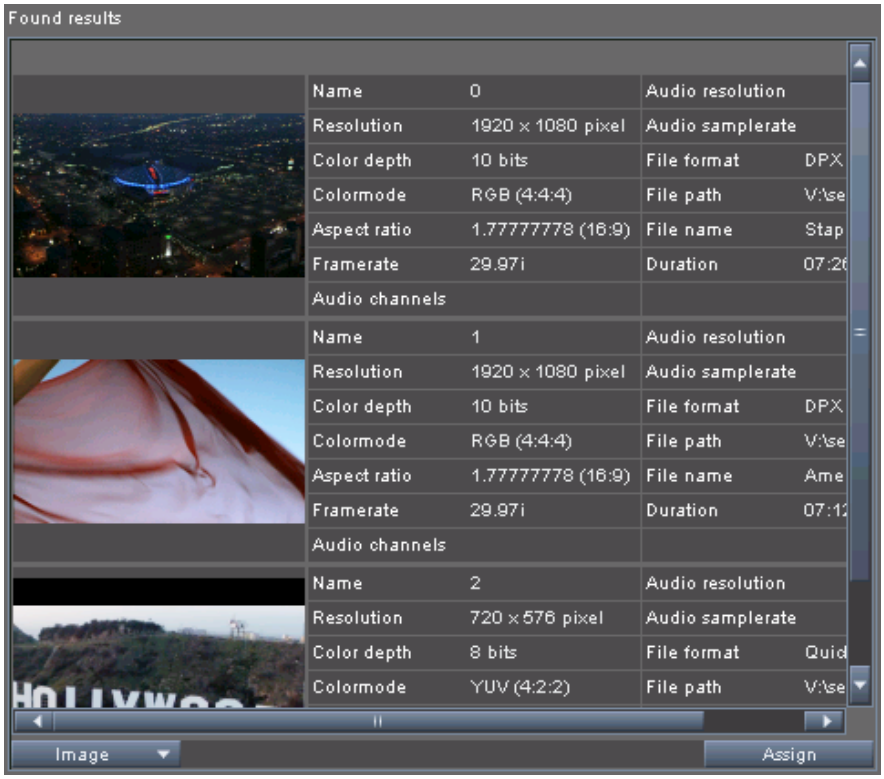


Figure 8-46: Multiple search results in preview area

Via the combo box at the bottom left of the preview area you can configure the appearance of the displayed clips, i.e. whether they should be displayed as thumbnails with text or with their text information only.

By selecting one of the clips in the thumbnail view, the thumbnail provides as usual in the DVS software a scrub bar which allows you to preview the material in still images (see also section “Preparing Clips for Editing Purposes” on page 4-20). With this you may be able to identify the clip that belongs to the selected event more easily.

Once the correct clip has been found that should be linked to the event, you have to select it in the preview area and press the button **ASSIGN** at the bottom right of the preview area. This will resolve the status 'Multiple found' of the event and it will be linked to the selected material.

The Menus

At the top of the Edit Tool software module you can see a menu bar.

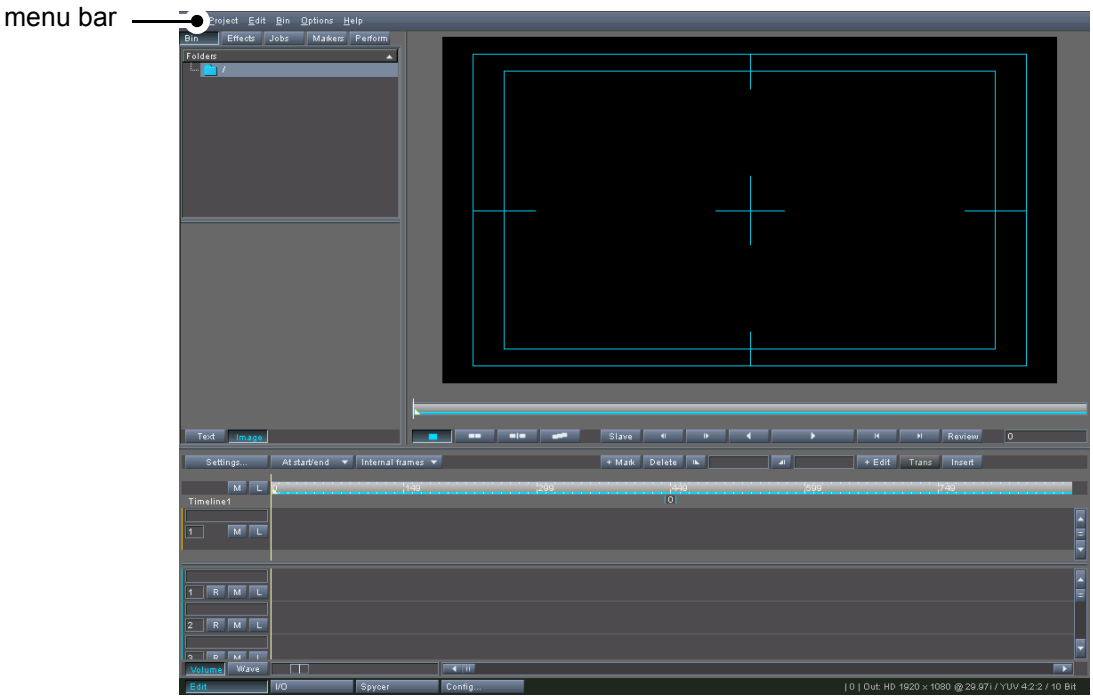


Figure 9-1: Menu bar of DVS software

This menu bar provides access to functions and tasks of an administrative nature for the Edit Tool. Here you can find, for example, import and export functions as well as several menu options generally concerned with projects and project files.

This chapter describes the menu bar of the user interface. All menus and menu options will be explained.

9.1 The Menu of the Program Icon

The program icon on the menu bar of the user interface provides menu options to control the user interface of the DVS software in general. Here you can find the following menu options:

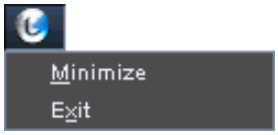
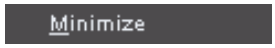


Figure 9-2: The menu of the program icon

They are described in the following sections.

9.1.1 Minimize 

To reduce the DVS software to a button on the taskbar of the Windows operating system, click the ***Minimize*** menu option on the menu of the program icon. You can then, for instance, access other programs that are installed on your system.

9.1.2 Exit 

The menu option ***Exit*** ends the current Edit Tool session.



There is no way to end the Edit Tool alone. When you exit the Edit Tool, the whole DVS software will shut down. Therefore, it is recommended to finish all tasks, such as a record or a play-out operation, beforehand. Otherwise the respective task may get interrupted.

This closes the DVS software. After that you can, for example, shut down the system.

9.2 The 'Project' Menu

The menu ***Project*** contains the following menu options:

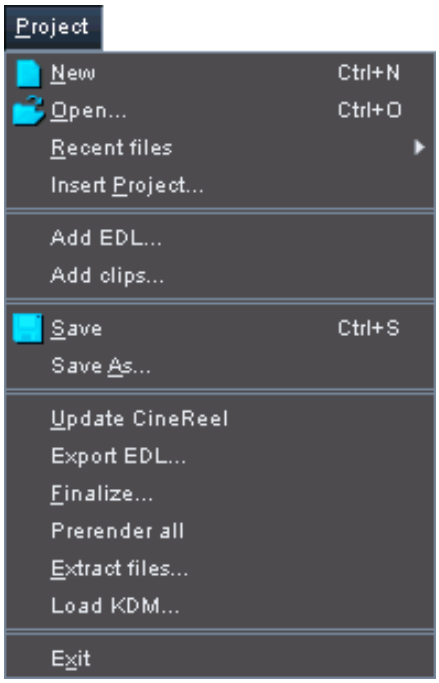


Figure 9-3: The 'Project' menu

They are in detail described in the following sections.

9.2.1 New



The menu option ***New*** on the ***Project*** menu opens a new project file in the Edit Tool.

Once the new project file is loaded, you can begin your new project, for instance, by adding clips to the bin.



In the Edit Tool only one project file can be processed at a time. If you open an already saved project or activate the menu option ***New*** again, the currently active project file will be closed. However, if you have already performed changes to the project, you will be asked by the program if you want to save the current project.

When you start a new project file, the autosave function is disabled because of a missing file name for the project. The autosave function automatically saves your project file after a certain period of time for backup purposes (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more details). To enable the autosave function you have to save the project file first and thus assign a name to it.

The VTR task mode of the I/O Tool that is optionally available uses project files different from the ones usually saved via the DVS software. Further information about this can be found in the "CLIPSTER I/O Tool" user guide.

9.2.2 Open... 

The ***Open...*** menu option opens the standard dialog window of the operating system for the selection of a file. In this dialog window select the project file that you want to open in the Edit Tool.

File extensions:	`*.cp`	Project file
	`*.cp.autosave`	Automatically saved intermediate situation
	`*.backup.cp`	Backup file of old project file

You may select the file from the list box or enter its name in the entry field **File name**. Confirm your selection with the button **OPEN**. The selected project file will then be loaded into the Edit Tool. During the loading, the bin and thus the timeline will be checked for inconsistencies, i.e. it is tested whether the first and the last frame of each clip present in the bin is actually available on the storage.

Missing frames will be substituted during a play-out with the Edit Tool by a standard image (see section "Consistencies of Clips" on page 6-63). Then it is recommended to perform a more accurate testing of the bin with the menu option ***Check Bin*** on the ***Bin*** menu (see section "Check Bin" on page 9-19).

If the first and/or last frame of a clip is missing, you will be informed about this the same way as described in section "Check Bin" on page 9-19.

Additionally, with the project file the bin, the timeline, the viewing settings, the output settings, etc. will be set anew and the layout will be updated.

In the Edit Tool only one project file can be processed at a time. If you open another project or activate the menu option ***New***, the currently active project file will be closed. However, if you have already performed changes to the project, you will be asked by the program if you want to save the current project.

The VTR task mode of the I/O Tool that is optionally available uses project files different from the ones usually saved via the DVS software. Further information about this can be found in the "CLIPSTER I/O Tool" user guide.

9.2.3 Recent files



The ***Recent files*** option on the ***Project*** menu opens a submenu where you can find project files that were recently opened in the DVS software. From the submenu select a file to work with the respective project again.

You can adjust the number of files that will be listed on this submenu via the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more details).

9.2.4 Insert Project...



The menu option ***Insert Project...*** enables you to import already finished and saved projects into the currently loaded project. The bin as well as clips present in the timeline, including all transitions and effects settings, will be imported. With this feature you can, for example, assemble a master project from smaller projects which contain individual scenes.

In general the menu option ***Insert Project...*** works like the menu option ***Open...***, but instead of opening a project, it will be inserted into the currently active project at the position of the timeline cursor. The clips in the bin of the inserted project will be added to the bin of the current project in a further subfolder carrying the name `inserted project`. Further information about the menu option ***Open...*** can be found in section "Open..." on page 9-4.

You can adjust the inserting of projects to your liking with the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more details). There you can, for instance, adjust the name of the bin subfolder where the bin clips will be added.

9.2.5 Add EDL...



Via the menu option ***Add EDL...*** you can add an EDL or cut list to your project. This is described in detail in section "Importing and Adding EDLs" on page 8-6.

9.2.6 Add clips...



The menu option ***Add clips...*** performs the same operation as the ***Add Clip*** menu option on the context menu of the bin's contents area. See section "Adding Clips to the Bin Using the 'Add Clip' Menu Options" on page 4-9 for further information about this.

9.2.7 Save



With the menu option ***Save*** you can save the current project. If the edited project file was a new one, a dialog window opens where you have to specify the storage path and file name for the project. Project files are by default stored with the file extensions `*.cp` (or `*.cp.autosave` if it is saved via the autosave function, see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more details). Furthermore, during the saving procedure the old project file is saved as an additional backup file with the file extension `*.backup.cp`.

File extensions:	`*.cp`	Project file
	`*.cp.autosave`	Automatically saved intermediate situation
	`*.backup.cp`	Backup file of old project file

If a file name is already assigned to the currently opened project, this menu option will immediately save the project under the assigned name.

In the project file the bin and the clips of the timeline including all operators will be saved. Additionally, a lot of settings will be saved within the project file as well, for example, the viewing settings of the software modules, the timeline and the control area, the output settings as well as the project related configuration settings made in the Configuration Tool of the DVS software.

The VTR task mode of the I/O Tool that is optionally available uses project files different from the ones usually saved via the DVS software. Further information about this can be found in the "CLIPSTER I/O Tool" user guide.

9.2.8 Save As...



The standard dialog window to save a file will open after the selection of the menu option ***Save As...***. This menu option allows you to save a project file under a different name. Further information about the saving procedure itself can be found in section "Save" on page 9-6.

The VTR task mode of the I/O Tool that is optionally available uses project files different from the ones usually saved via the DVS software. Further information about this can be found in the "CLIPSTER I/O Tool" user guide.

9.2.9 Update CineReel



The DVS CineReel is a transportable, outdoor-proof hard disk array especially designed for the on-set use of digital film capturing: The film material is directly stored on the hard disk array, and when finished, the array can be disconnected and transported to an editing site while the crew continues to capture on the set with an empty DVS CineReel. At the editing site the hard disk array can be connected to a DVS system easily and the material will be instantly recognized. Then it can be processed right away.

Of course, a DVS CineReel can also be used to transport large projects between DVS systems.

The menu option ***Update CineReel*** on the ***Project*** menu checks whether a DVS CineReel is connected to the DVS system. Then, in the bin a folder with the name `CineReel` is created and the film material on the hard disk array is referenced to this folder. In the newly created folder of the Edit Tool's bin, the directory structure on the DVS CineReel is imitated and for each clip present on the hard disk array a thumbnail/text entry will be available. You can then work with the data immediately.

With the menu option ***Update CineReel*** no copying process of any kind is initiated. Only representations of the clips with references to the externally connected DVS CineReel are created in the bin of the Edit Tool. Furthermore, the DVS CineReel as a storage for video material will be too slow for editing purposes in real time (e.g. transitions). Therefore, it is recommended to copy the material to the main storage of the DVS system before processing.

Do not reference material on one DVS CineReel with the DVS software and then connect another DVS CineReel without saving the project first. Only if the project was saved, you may connect another DVS CineReel and begin a new project. Otherwise your changes to the first project may be lost.

9.2.10 Export EDL... Export EDL...

With the menu option ***Export EDL...*** of the Edit Tool you are able to create an EDL from its timeline, either in the CMX or GVG format. The selection of this menu option opens the following window where you have to specify the creation of the EDL further:

This procedure will also be initiated when exporting an EDL in the conforming mode (see section "Export as..." on page 8-41). However, then only the selected EDL will be exported.

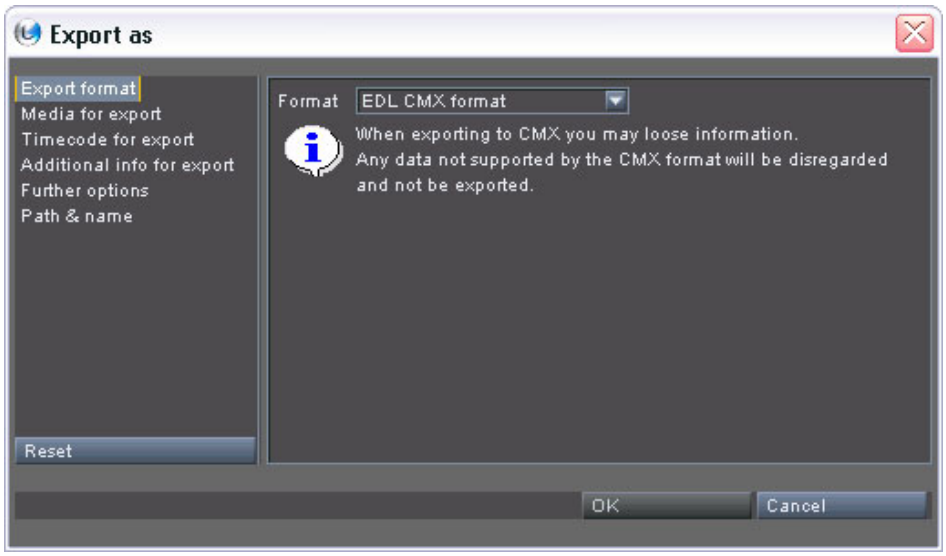


Figure 9-4: Window to specify the export of an EDL

To the left you can find several settings groups to configure the export. When selecting one of them with the mouse, its configuration settings will be displayed to the right of the window. Select each of the settings groups and specify the necessary details for the export as described in the following.

The button **RESET** sets all settings of this dialog window back to their default values.

Settings Group 'Export format'

This settings group will be available right after initiating the export (see figure 9-4 on page 9-8). Select from the combo box **Format** the format that the EDL should be created in.

Settings Group 'Media for export'

When the settings group **Media for export** is selected, you can choose and configure the media that should be exported:

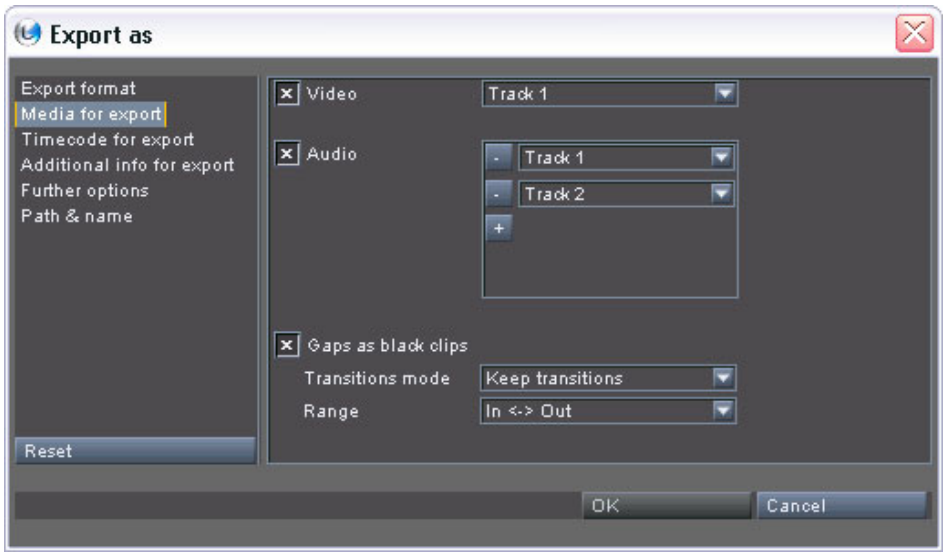


Figure 9-5: 'Media for export' settings

Video	The check box to the left determines that video should be part of the EDL. When activated, the video of the selected EDL or the contents of the video track selected via the combo box to the right will be exported. If exporting an EDL, no track can be selected. When exporting the timeline, the combo box will display only those tracks where content is available and only one video track can be chosen for an export.
Audio	The check box to the left determines that audio should be part of the EDL. When activated, the audio of the selected EDL or the contents of the audio tracks selected via the combo box(es) to the right will be exported. If exporting an EDL, no track can be selected. When exporting the timeline, you can add additional combo boxes via the button **+** (+) to select more tracks for an export. However, the combo box(es) will display only those tracks where content is available. The **-** button (-) will remove the respective combo box.
Gaps as black clips	If this check box is enabled, gaps present in the timeline/EDL will be handled as black clips in the EDL.
Transition mode	With this combo box you determine whether transitions should be retained in the EDL or replaced by hard cuts instead.

Range	With this combo box you have to set whether the EDL should include the complete timeline (`All`), or the part between a set in- and outpoint of the timeline only (`In <-> Out`). If the latter is selected but no in- and outpoint defined in the timeline, the whole timeline will be used for the creation. When exporting an EDL, `All` should be selected.

Settings Group 'Timecode for export'

With the settings group **Timecode for export** you can configure the timecode information that should be exported:

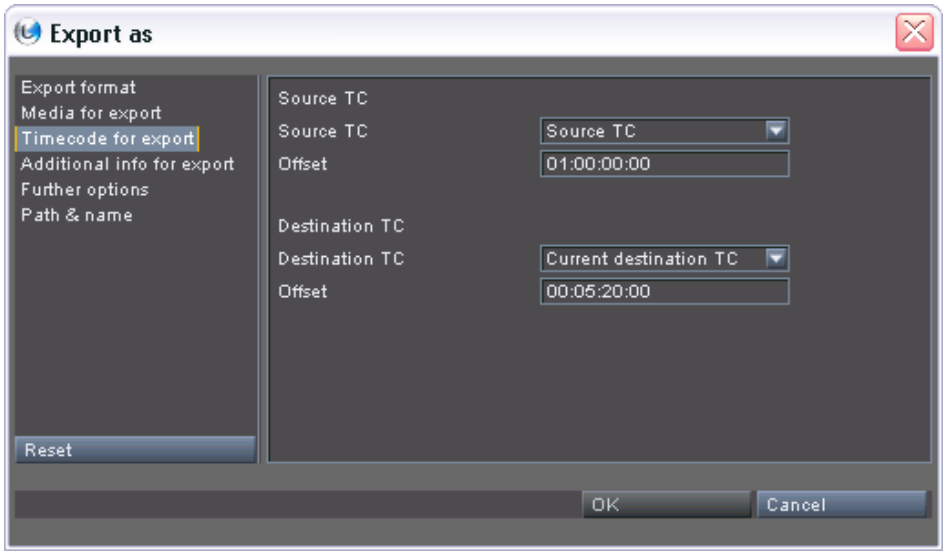


Figure 9-6: 'Timecode for export' settings

Source TC	This combo box determines the type of timecode that should be set as the source in- and outpoints in the exported EDL. You can select between `Source TC`, `File number as TC`, `Current destination TC`, and `Original destination TC`.

	The `Source TC` setting uses either the source timecodes available in the files' headers (when exporting the timeline) or the source in- and outpoints specified in the selected EDL (when exporting an EDL). If the clips in the timeline are configured to show a virtual source timecode, this timecode will be taken. When exporting the timeline and no source timecodes are provided by the clips, their file numbers will be translated into timecode instead. Further information about source timecode can be found in section "Notes on Source Timecode and Keycode" on page 2-15. When selecting `File number as TC`, the file numbers of the file names on the storage(s) will be translated into timecode and set as the source in- and outpoints of the exported EDL. When exporting an EDL, the source in- and outpoints specified in the EDL will be used. With the destination timecode settings you can specify that the internal timecode count of the timeline (when exporting the timeline) or the destination timecodes of the selected EDL (when exporting an EDL) should be set as the source in- and outpoints. When exporting an EDL, you can also select between the destination values as they are currently set (`Current destination TC`) or as they are available in the original EDL (`Original destination TC`, see section "The Tab 'Original EDL'" on page 8-38).
Offset	With this entry field you can define an offset for the source in-/outpoints selected via the **Source TC** setting. Enter the respective offset that will be added to the in- and outpoint values in timecode format.
Destination TC	Determines the type of timecode that should be set as the destination in- and outpoints in the exported EDL. You can select between `Current destination TC` and `Original destination TC`. These settings perform the same as the ones explained for **Source TC** only for the destination timecodes.
Offset	Same as **Offset** above only for the destination timecodes.

Settings Group 'Additional info for export'

The settings group **Additional info for export** allows you to specify further information that should be saved as comments in the EDL:

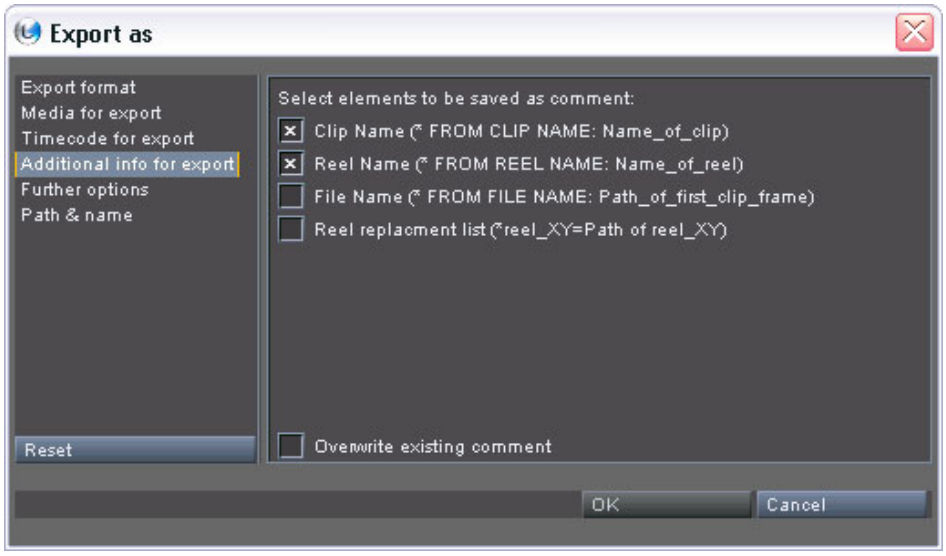


Figure 9-7: 'Additional info for export' settings

Activate the item that should be saved as comments in the EDL with its respective check box. Each clip will then detail in the exported EDL the additional information in the indicated notation (e.g. `* FROM CLIP NAME: <clip name>`).

The **Reel replacement list** check box adds a list (as comments) below the generated EDL that maps the abbreviated reel/tape names used in the EDL to their original names. If no reel names are available, the list will detail the path and file to the source material on the storage.

When exporting an EDL, you can overwrite existing comments in the EDL (see section "The Tab 'EDL Clips'" on page 8-31) by activating the check box **Overwrite existing comment**.

Settings Group 'Further options'

In the settings group **Further options** you can configure further options for the EDL to be exported:

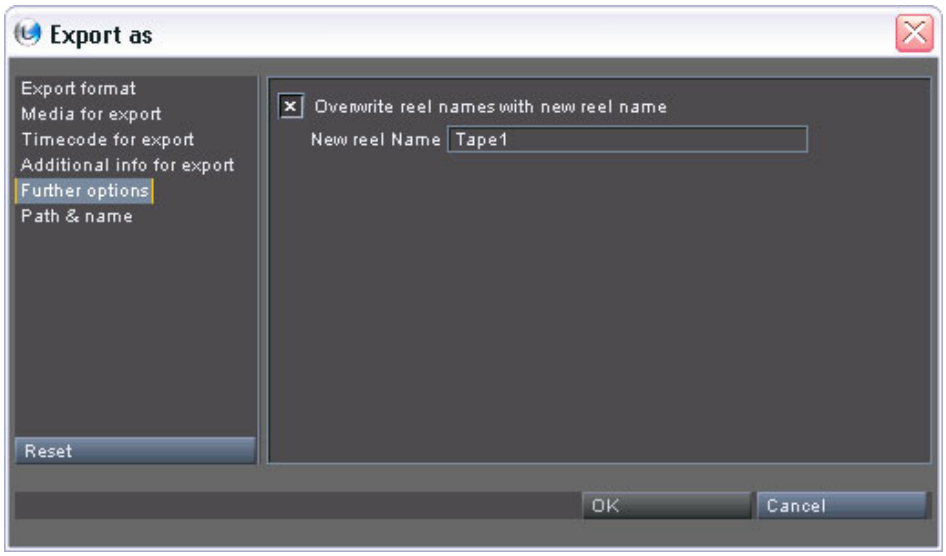


Figure 9-8: 'Further options' settings

Usually when creating an EDL from the timeline, abbreviated names of the clips as they can be seen in the timeline will be used as the reel/tape name (see, for instance, section "The Clip's Information" on page 6-60). By selecting this check box you can enter a different reel name in the entry field **New reel name**. When exporting an EDL, the entered reel name will overwrite already existing reel names.

Settings Group 'Path & name'

With the settings group **Path & name** you have to specify a storage location and name for the EDL to be exported:

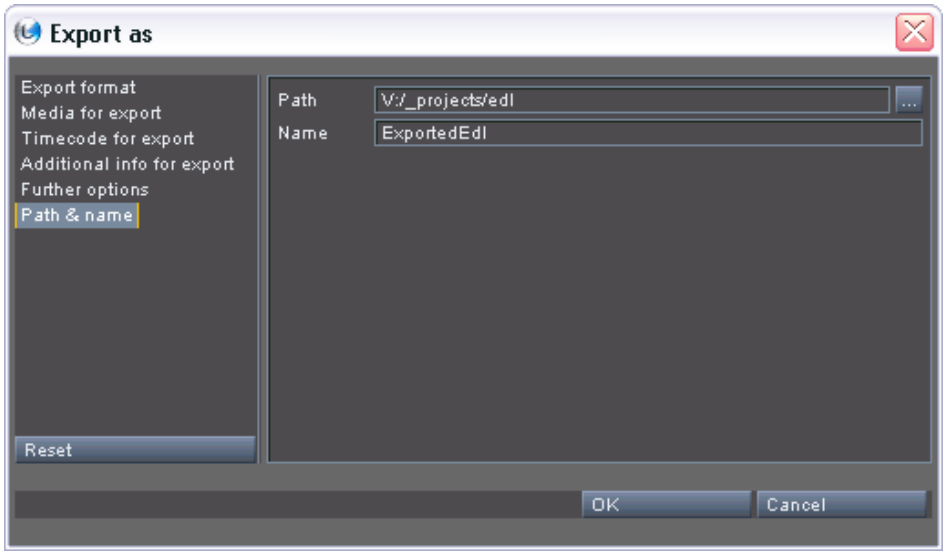


Figure 9-9: 'Path & name' settings

In the entry field **Path** enter the drive/directory where the EDL should be saved. You may also click on the button to the right of this field (...) to select an already existing file.

Notation: `drive_letter:\directory\subdirecto-ry\filename`

Instead of the backslash (\) you may also use a slash (/).

Example: `V:\tempest\edl\`

In the entry field **Name** you have to state the file name of the EDL to be created.

Notation: The file name can be a standard file name of the Windows operating system, i.e. do not use one of the following characters:
`% / \ : * ? " < > |`

You may leave out the file extension.

Example: `tempest_edl`

Creating the EDL

Once the settings to export an EDL are complete, you can start the generation of the EDL with the buttons at the bottom of the window:

OK	Use this button to start the generation of the EDL. After the EDL is successfully created, the window to set up the EDL creation will be closed and you will return to the main window of the DVS software.
CANCEL	With this button you can close the window to export an EDL without creating it. You will then return to the main window of the DVS software.



Time stretching or time compression information will not be observed during the creation of the EDL (see section “Time Stretching or Time Compression of Clips” on page 6-56).

9.2.11 Finalize... 

With the menu option ***Finalize...*** you can generate a new clip from a project’s timeline in a freely configurable format and raster without affecting the original material. This is in detail described in section “Finalizing the Timeline” on page 6-80.

9.2.12 Prerender all

Prerender all

With the ***Prerender all*** menu option you can prerender all parts of the timeline that need to be processed before a play-out together in one step. A prerendering may be indicated prior to a play-out when the DVS system is not able to handle the contents of the timeline in real time, for instance, a special operator. Further information about this can be found in section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46).

Depending on the number of elements to be prerendered, the length of the elements and the configured output settings, the prerendering may take some time.

Further information about how to manage projects best when parts of the timeline need to be prerendered can be found in section "Notes on Project Management" on page 2-14.

After a prerendering save your project file. If an already saved project file is not saved after a prerendering process again, the prerendered files will not be recognized by the Edit Tool when the project file is loaded once more, i.e. they will not be used for a play-out. They remain on your storage and have to be deleted manually as described in section "Cleaning Temporary Data Manually" on page A-21.

9.2.13 Extract files...

Extract files...

The ***Extract files...*** menu option copies all files on the timeline to a specified directory or volume, thus allowing you to archive an edited project. The directory structure of the files on the storage will be copied as well. Once this menu option is selected, the following window will be displayed on the screen:

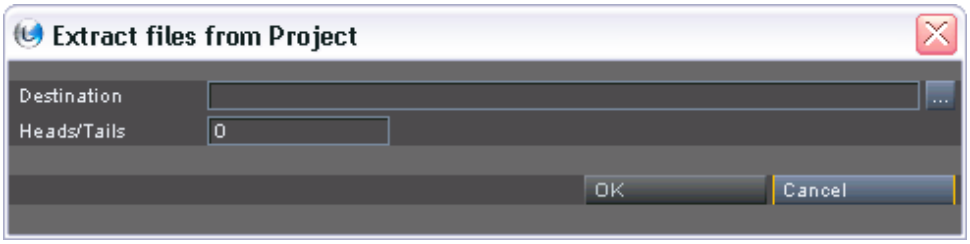


Figure 9-10: Archiving a project

In this window enter the target directory/volume of the files to be copied in the field **Destination**. You may also use the button to the right of this entry field (...) to select an already existing directory/volume or create a new one via the provided buttons of the opening dialog window. If the entered path does not exist, it will be created.

The content (frames) to be copied is determined by the in- and out-points of the clips on the timeline. With the **Heads/Tails** entry field you can set the number of frames that should be copied in addition to these for later heads or tails adjustments.

When everything is set, you can initiate the copying process with a click on the button **OK**. Then the DVS high-speed copying process will copy the files to the selected destination.



To archive the whole project you have to save the project file as well.

Further information about the DVS high-speed copying process can be found in the “Spycer” user guide.

9.2.14 Load KDM...



The menu option ***Load KDM...*** is part of the optionally available DCI Mastering feature of CLIPSTER. Further information about it can be found in a separate document available via the online help of the software (see section “Manuals” on page 9-27).

9.2.15 Exit



The menu option ***Exit*** ends the current Edit Tool session.



There is no way to end the Edit Tool alone. When you exit the Edit Tool, the whole DVS software will shut down. Therefore, it is recommended to finish all tasks, such as a record or a play-out operation, beforehand. Otherwise the respective task may get interrupted.

This closes the DVS software. After that you can, for example, shut down the system.

9.3 The 'Edit' Menu

The menu ***Edit*** provides functions to aid you in your editing process. In detail it contains the menu options shown below:



Figure 9-11: The 'Edit' menu

They are described in the following sections.

9.3.1 Undo



The menu option ***Undo*** allows to undo your latest timeline related action. When this option is selected, the timeline will be restored to the state before your last timeline operation.

9.3.2 Redo



The ***Redo*** menu option will reverse the action performed via the ***Undo*** menu option (see section “Undo” on page 9-17). To redo an action select this menu option.

9.4 The 'Bin' Menu

The menu ***Bin*** provides several functions to facilitate your work with the bin. In detail it contains the menu options shown below:



Figure 9-12: The 'Bin' menu

They will be described in detail in the following sections.

9.4.1 Import Bin...



With the menu option ***Import Bin...*** you can import the bin of another project into your currently active project. The selection of this menu option opens a standard dialog window for a file selection.

To import a bin choose in the dialog window for the selection of a file the project file that contains the desired bin. For the import you may also select a bin file which may have been previously created via the menu option ***Export Bin...*** (see section "Export Bin…" on page 9-19).

File extensions:	`*.cp`	Project file
	`*.cb`	Bin file
	`*.cp.autosave`	Automatically saved intermediate situation
	`*.backup.cp`	Backup file of old project file

Select the file from the list box of the dialog window or enter its name in the entry field **File name**. Confirm your selection with the button **OPEN**. The selected bin with folders and clips of the respective file will then be loaded into your currently active project. The imported bin will

be checked for inconsistencies, i.e. it is tested whether the first and the last frame of each clip is actually present on the storage.

With the help of the menu option ***Check Bin*** of the ***Bin*** menu you can perform a more accurate testing of your bin (see section "Check Bin" on page 9-19).

If the first and/or last frame of a clip is missing, you will be informed about this the same way as described in section "Check Bin" on page 9-19.

9.4.2 Export Bin...



You can export the bin of your currently active project with the menu option ***Export Bin...***.

The selection of this menu option opens a standard dialog window to save a file. There you have to specify the storage path and file name to export the bin. Once you confirm your settings with the button **SAVE**, the contents of your bin containing all folders and clips will be saved to an extra file.

File extension:	*.cb	Bin file

After that you can import the contents of this file again into another project (see section "Import Bin..." on page 9-18).

9.4.3 Clear Bin



The ***Clear Bin*** menu option on the menu ***Bin*** deletes all folders and clips from the bin of your current project.

The selection of this menu option calls up a warning message. After the confirmation that you really want to delete the contents of the bin, the bin will be cleared.

If your currently active bin was altered and not saved, you will be asked by the program whether you want to save its contents to a bin file. When you answer this query with **YES**, the same procedure as to export a bin will be initiated (see section "Export Bin..." on page 9-19).

9.4.4 Check Bin



During the loading of a project file and the import of a bin, the DVS software performs a limited test regarding the availability of the clips present in the bin: It is tested whether the first and the last frame of each video clip is available on the storage. Via the ***Check Bin*** menu op-

tion you can check your bin, and thus your timeline, more thoroughly for errors and inconsistencies.

If the first and/or last frame of a clip is missing, you will be informed about this the same way as described in this section.

After the selection of the menu option ***Check Bin*** the DVS software verifies that each frame of each clip and each audio file is present on the storage. If inconsistencies are found, i.e. missing files, you will get the following error message:

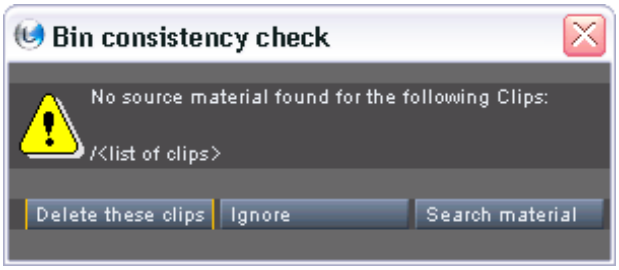


Figure 9-13: Error message of inconsistencies in the bin

The error message provides a detailed list of all clips that could not be verified. With the button **DELETE THESE CLIPS** you can then delete the faulty clips from your bin, or you can proceed to the inconsistent bin with the button **IGNORE**.

Missing frames will be substituted during a play-out with the DVS software by a standard image (see section "Consistencies of Clips" on page 6-63).

If you are opening a project created on another system, you can also search for the missing material by altering the default paths of the DVS software (e.g. the **System base video directory**, see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide). A click on the button **SEARCH MATERIAL** opens the following window:

Changing theses paths will alter the DVS software's default settings – not only for this project but for the DVS software in general. If not set back to the original default paths following your work on this project, it will have implications on previously created as well as future projects.

For more details about the individual paths and their meaning see the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.

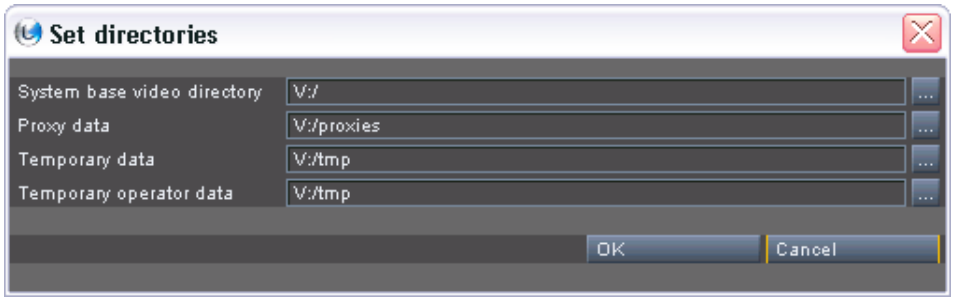


Figure 9-14: Setting system-wide directories

Either type in the appropriate paths or use the buttons to the right (...) to select them. After confirming your alterations with the button **OK** the DVS software will change its default paths and search for the clips at the new locations. If found, they will be immediately available in your project.

9.4.5 Generate proxies

Generate proxies

For each clip available in the bin that may exceed the real-time capability of the DVS system you can create a proxy to ensure a real-time capable environment. To create proxies select the clips that you want to create a proxy of from the bin. Afterwards use the menu option ***Generate proxies*** to create the proxies.

Alternatively, you can select the menu option ***Create proxy*** on the context menu of a clip in the bin. Further information about this can be found in section "Using Proxies" on page 4-22. More general information about proxies and their handling can be found in section "Working in Real Time" on page 2-11.

This activates the **Jobs** tab in the tool area which will then detail the status of the render operation(s). For each triggered render job one entry will be displayed. In case of several render jobs, they will be dealt with in the current sorting order of the bin (see section "Sorting Clips" on page 4-19). During the rendering the downconverted images of the proxy will be stored in a reserved location for proxies on the main storage.

It is best to handle and administer the proxy data project specific, meaning for each project in a different storage location. Further information about this can be found in section "Notes on Project Management" on page 2-14.

Once the render operations are finished, their entries will disappear from the list of the **Jobs** tab. Afterwards you can begin to work with the proxies. They will be already activated in the bin and ready for use.



After a proxy generation save your project file. If an already saved project file is not saved again after creating proxies, the proxy files will not be recognized by the Edit Tool when the project file is loaded once more: Neither will they be used for the project nor can they be deleted via the software. They have to be deleted manually (see section "Cleaning Temporary Data Manually" on page A-21).



For further information about the **Jobs** tab see section "Jobs" on page 4-33.

9.4.6 Delete all proxies



When you are finished with your editing work using the proxies, you might want to dispose of them, i.e. delete them from the storage. For this select the menu option ***Delete all proxies*** on the ***Bin*** menu. It will delete all proxies that were created for the current project.



In case you want to delete a single proxy only, you can use the menu option ***Delete proxy*** on the context menu of a clip in the bin.

Further information about proxies in general and their handling can be found in section "Working in Real Time" on page 2-11 and section "Using Proxies" on page 4-22.

After the selection of the menu option ***Delete all proxies*** all proxies will be deleted immediately from the storage and, if appropriate, the bin clips will be configured back to their original source material.

9.4.7 Activate all proxies



With the menu option ***Activate all proxies*** you can activate the usage of all proxies that are currently available for your project in one step. Then the respective bin clips and all their representations in the timeline will show you the downconverted materials instead of the originals that exceed the real-time capability of the DVS system. After this the bin

clips are configured to the proxies as their source and the properties of the clips will detail this accordingly.

Alternatively, you can use the menu option ***Activate proxy*** on the context menu of a clip in the bin to activate a proxy individually.

Further information about proxies in general and their handling can be found in section "Working in Real Time" on page 2-11 and section "Using Proxies" on page 4-22.

9.4.8 Deactivate all proxies



The menu option ***Deactivate all proxies*** deactivates the usage of all proxies currently available for your project in a single step. When proxies are deactivated, the bin clips and all their representations in the timeline will show you the original high-resolution materials in the Edit Tool instead of the downconverted data. The properties of the clips in the bin will detail this accordingly. Afterwards it may not be possible to play-out the contents of the timeline in real-time.

Alternatively, you can use the menu option ***Deactivate proxy*** on the context menu of a clip in the bin to deactivate an individual proxy.

Further information about proxies in general and their handling can be found in section "Working in Real Time" on page 2-11 and section "Using Proxies" on page 4-22.

9.5 The 'Options' Menu

The ***Options*** menu provides menu options to set up and configure the DVS system and its software. In detail it contains the menu options shown below:

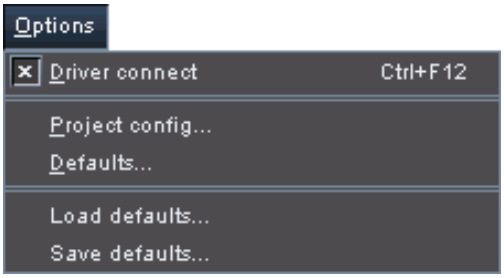


Figure 9-15: The 'Options' menu

They will be described in the following sections.

9.5.1 Driver connect



Because the DVS system is based on an open platform, other programs than the DVS software may want to access the video board of the system. To make this possible even with the DVS software running, the menu option ***Driver connect*** was implemented.

When the driver of the video board is connected to the software, the check box in front of this menu option is activated. If the driver is disconnected and free to be used by other programs, the check box is deactivated.

If the driver is not in use by another program, a simple play-out operation of the timeline in the DVS software will connect the driver to the DVS software again automatically.

9.5.2 Project config...



The Configuration Tool provides overall two configuration groupings:

- You can define project related settings in a project grouping (tab **Project**), or
- you can configure default settings that will be used for the DVS system in general as well as for each new project (tab **Defaults**, see section “Defaults…” on page 9-25).

While the first one includes settings that will be used for the currently active project only and stored together with the project file, the latter contains settings that will be used for each new project as well as for a

general setup of the DVS system. Because the default settings include configurations regarding the DVS system as well, it provides comparatively more settings than the project related ones. Use the default settings in case you want to change the system settings or the default values for each initialized new project. The settings of the tab **Project** will be stored together with the current project in the project file only and are therefore just temporarily available as long as this particular project is not closed.

The ***Project config…*** menu option on the menu ***Options*** enables you to configure and set up the project related settings of the DVS system and software. It will open the Configuration Tool with the tab **Project** activated. Then you can configure, for example, the paths for the temporary data as well as other project specific settings, such as the appearances of clips in the bin. All changes performed on this tab will be saved together with the project file.

For more information and a complete description of the Configuration Tool please consult the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.

9.5.3 Defaults... 

The Configuration Tool provides overall two configuration groupings: one for project related settings (tab **Project**) and one for default settings that will be used for the DVS system in general as well as for each new project (tab **Default**).



Further information about the two configuration groupings as well as about the project related settings can be found in section "Project config…" on page 9-24.

The ***Defaults…*** menu option on the menu ***Options*** enables you to configure and set up the system settings as well as the default values for each initialized new project. It will open the Configuration Tool with the tab **Defaults** activated. Then you can set up, for example, the TCP/IP settings of the DVS software as well as the period for the automatic save function of opened projects (autosave). The default configuration settings are saved automatically together with the software when it is shut down. The project related settings available on the **Defaults** tab will be used for each initialized new project.

For more information and a complete description of the Configuration Tool please consult the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.

9.5.4 Load defaults... 

With the menu option ***Load defaults…*** you can load configuration settings previously saved to a file as the new default settings of the Configuration Tool (see section "Save defaults…" on page 9-26). The

selection of this menu option opens the standard dialog window for a file selection.

To load previously saved default configuration settings select in the dialog window the file that contains the desired settings from the list box or enter its name in the entry field **File name**.

File extension:	*.cf	Configuration file

Confirm your selection with the button **OPEN**. The selected configuration settings will then be loaded into the DVS software. After this the new settings will be applied, for example, every time a new project is initialized. Additionally, in the Configuration Tool you have the possibility at hand to transfer the default settings to the project related settings, and thus to enable them for your currently active project.



Some changes to the settings will be in effect after a restart of the software only.

Further information about the Configuration Tool and its settings can be found in the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.

9.5.5 Save defaults... 

Different tasks may ask for different settings: With the menu option ***Save defaults...*** you can save the current default and system settings to an extra file. Thus, you can build up a library of different configuration settings and use them in the future again for different purposes without configuring the whole system anew. Furthermore, in the Configuration Tool you have the possibility at hand to transfer the default settings to the project related settings, and thus to enable them for your currently active project.

The selection of the menu option ***Save defaults...*** opens the standard dialog window to save a file. There you have to specify the storage path and file name to save the current default and system settings. As soon as your entries are confirmed with the button **SAVE**, they will be saved to an extra file.

File extension:	*.cf	Configuration file

After that you can load the contents of this file again into the DVS software (see section "Load defaults…" on page 9-25) which will change, for example, the default settings for each initialized new project as well as the system settings. However, some changes to the system settings will be in effect only after a restart of the software.



Further information about the Configuration Tool and its settings can be found in the "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide.

9.6 The 'Help' Menu

You can get additional information about the DVS software via the menu options of the menu ***Help***. It contains the following menu options:

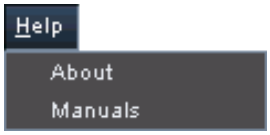


Figure 9-16: The 'Help' menu

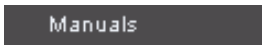
They will be described in the following sections.

9.6.1 About



You can receive further information about the DVS software with the menu option ***About*** on the menu ***Help***. For example, here you can find detailed version numbers of the individual software parts of the DVS system.

9.6.2 Manuals



The online documentation of the DVS system can be accessed via the menu option ***Manuals*** on the ***Help*** menu. It opens an overview page in HTML format where you can select a separate documentation for the different parts of the DVS system, all in HTML format.

The manuals for the DVS system are also available in PDF format which is suited most if you want to print out the document. The documentation in PDF format can be accessed easily via the navigation buttons at the bottom of each HTML page.

Appendix



This chapter provides further information about the Edit Tool.

A.1 Glossary of Terms

Here you can find several terms and their meaning as they are used in this documentation:

1D LUT	A look-up table (LUT, see below) that provides for one input value a set of output values (usually RGB).
3D LUT	A look-up table (LUT, see below) that provides for three input values (RGB) a set of output values (RGB).
9-pin protocol (RS-422)	Protocol for serial data communication. The RS-422 9-pin protocol is widely used for a communication between a range of equipment, such as VTRs, digital disk recorders, mixers, edit controllers, etc. See also RS-422 and Odetics protocol. DVS supports this protocol in master and slave mode.
A-mode	Sorting of material according to a final edited timeline (non-linear editing). With this an EDL would be sorted by destination in- and out-points, for example. See also C-mode.
audio clip	A file of the Windows file system that contains audio data.
autoconforming	The initial and automatic conforming of an EDL or cut list. See conforming.
bin	Library and clip management tool of the DVS software.

bin clip	Either a clip present in the bin or dragged to the control area of the DVS software. With the latter and when in the Edit Tool, the software switches to the source-edit mode and the bin clip will be available in the left of the two video overlays.
C-mode	Sorting of material according to a source (linear editing, e.g. when capturing from a tape). With this an EDL would be sorted by reel names and source in- and outpoints, for example. See also A-mode.
clip	A clip can either be an audio or video clip. See audio clip and video clip respectively.
conforming	The referencing of events of EDLs or cut lists to video and audio material.
container format	File format that contains audio as well as video data in a single file only, i.e. the video and audio files are not stored as single image or audio files but together in one file (e.g. QuickTime or MXF).
cut list	A list generated by another application which describes a timeline with clips via timecode/key-code data of succeeding in- and outpoints. A cut list may also contain information about the type of cut (hard cut or transition). Cut lists exist in various different, not standardized formats. See also EDL.
cutting/edit point	A cut between clips. New cuts can be created with the button **+ EDIT** of the timeline area.
drop/dropped frames/audio	Either frames (image files) or audio data that the DVS system could not load from or write to the storage in time for the performed real-time operation.
EDL	Edit decision list. A list that describes a timeline with clips together with a series of operators (effects). EDLs can be created offline and passed to the online workstation to perform the final conforming. See also cut list.
effect	See operator.
embedded operator	An operator such as a transition that is embedded in the timeline and visible as a timeline element.
frame-end marker	When zoomed far into the timeline, the timeline cursor will provide a dotted yellow line that indicates where the selected image ends on the timeline.

full	Color value range of video clips indicating a full value range (full). With this black will be represented in 8 bit data by 0 and white by 255. See also head.
head (vs. full)	Color value range of video clips indicating a restricted value range and thus headroom (head). With this black may be represented in 8 bit data by 16 and white by 235. See also full.
head (vs. tail)	Material at the beginning of a clip that is available but neither used nor visible in the timeline of the DVS software due to an inpoint adjustment (trimming). See also tail.
inpoint (clip)	Starting point of a clip. For video material either the first file on the storage or a first frame virtually set (trimmed) in the DVS software. For audio material either the first sample of a file or a virtually set (trimmed) inpoint in the DVS software.
inpoint (data list)	Starting point of a data list event. Usually, two inpoints are set in a data list (e.g. EDL or cut list), one for the source material on a storage and one for the destination of this material on a timeline.
inpoint (timeline)	Starting point of a timeline. It is either a user-defined inpoint or the very beginning of a timeline.
insert mode	Timeline mode during your work with timeline elements. When moving or adding clips in this mode, no gaps will appear in the timeline and the current content of the timeline will be preserved.
keycode	A machine-readable code printed along the edge of the camera negative film. It provides data, for example, about the film type, the name of the manufacturer and the film stock. Additionally, a reference number for the respective image is given in order to match the film with a particular position of an EDL/cut list. Keycodes can also be stored in file headers if supported by the file format (see also source timecode).
keyframing	The usage of an effect on a timeline with definable points of settings (keyframes), e.g. for to fade in/out this effect.

LUT (look-up table)	In general, a table used to transform data. With the DVS software a LUT is used to map indexed colors of video images to a specified set of output values.
multi-clip	A clip that is handled as one clip although it consists of several individual clips. Multi-clips are directories of the file system that contain subdirectories with frames (image files) and/or audio files. The subdirectories and files must follow specific guidelines to be recognized by the DVS software as a multi-clip.
Odetics protocol (RS-422)	Protocol for serial data communication similar to the 9-pin protocol but with an extended command set. See also RS-422 and 9-pin protocol. DVS supports the major commands of this protocol in slave mode.
online-conforming	Special term indicating the process of using and referencing to clips that are already present on a storage via an EDL or cut list.
operator	An editing effect that can be applied to video clips either as an embedded operator or as an operator set via the clip's timeline element properties.
outpoint (clip)	End of a clip. For video material either the last file on the storage or a last frame virtually set (trimmed) in the DVS software. For audio material either the last sample of a file or a virtually set (trimmed) outpoint in the DVS software.
outpoint (data list)	End of a data list event. Usually, two outpoints are set in a data list (e.g. EDL or cut list), one for the source material on a storage and one for the destination of this material on a timeline.
outpoint (timeline)	The end of a timeline. It is either a user-defined outpoint or the last frame/sample of the timeline's content.
overwrite mode	Timeline mode during your work with timeline elements. When deleting or moving clips in the timeline gaps may appear, and by adding or moving timeline elements the contents of the timeline may be overwritten.
prerendering	The calculation and rendering of timeline elements prior to a play-out because they exceed the real-time capability of the DVS system.

preset effect	User defined settings of an effects operator. They are available as 'subeffects' under the respective effects operator in the tool area. With them you can apply the same settings of an effect over and over again in the timeline.
proxy	A proxy is a downscaled clip of high-resolution data that will be internally used by the Edit Tool as a substitute for its original material to ensure a real-time environment. By activating or deactivating proxies you decide whether the real-time capable material is used or the high-resolution data.
reel	In the DVS software reels are used to distinguish between different sources of video material. Each specified reel can point to one location, such as different tapes from a VTR or another externally connected player/device.
RS-422	Interface for serial data communication. See also 9-pin protocol and Odetics protocol.
scrub bar	A representation of a timeline in software. It provides a slider or cursor that you can use to move through the data of the material.
to scrub	To shuttle or perform a search run.
source timecode	Timecode information stored in the header of a file (e.g. in *.dpx image files). You can use the source timecodes, for example, in the timeline of the Edit Tool instead of the internal relative timecode provided by the timeline. If a clip does not contain source timecode information, it can be virtually provided with one.
tail	Material at the end of a clip that is available but neither used nor visible in a timeline of the DVS software due to an outpoint adjustment (trimming). See also head.
timeline cursor	Position indicator of the timeline.
timeline element	Video and audio clips or operators that are visible in the tracks of the timeline.
transition	A transition effect between two video clips.
vertical editing	To add timeline elements to other video tracks in the timeline than the first one. When different timeline elements occupy the same space at the same time in the timeline, the contents of a play-out can be easily changed at that particular position.

video clip	Usually, a folder/directory of the file system that contains frames (image files).
VTR	Video tape recorder. A device to record image and sound data magnetically on tapes.
VTR timeline	Timeline of the VTR task mode that provides a length of 24 hours. Video and audio material can be stored anywhere on the timeline. See the "CLIPSTER I/O Tool" user guide.

A.2 Keyboard Shortcuts

For a more easy and a faster control of the Edit Tool there are various keyboard shortcuts available which are listed in the table below:

Action	Shortcut
Play (speed 1)	[Space], [5]
Stop (speed 0)	[Space], [K], [Shift + K]
Start play-out from inpoint	[6]
Increase speed by 1	[L]
Increase speed by 0.1	[Shift + L]
Decrease speed by 1	[J]
Decrease speed by 0.1	[Shift + J]
Step one (1) frame forward	[Right Arrow], [4]
Step one (1) frame backward	[Left Arrow], [3]
Step ten (10) frames forward	[Shift + Left Arrow], [2]
Step ten (10) frames backward	[Shift + Right Arrow], [1]
Jump to project begin	[Pos 1]
Jump to project end	[End]
Go to previous cutting point	[Ctrl + Left Arrow], [A]
Go to next cutting point	[Ctrl + Right Arrow], [S]
Activate insert mode	[V]
Activate overwrite mode	[B]
Add edit/cutting point	[Shift + H]
Set timeline inpoint	[E], [I]
Set timeline outpoint	[R], [O]
Set timeline in- and outpoint at the cutting points of the current clip	[T]
Delete timeline inpoint	[D]
Delete timeline outpoint	[F]
Delete timeline in- and outpoint	[G]
Go to timeline inpoint	[Q]
Go to timeline outpoint	[W]
Add timeline marker	[Shift + N]
Zoom into timeline	[Up Arrow]
Zoom out of timeline	[Down Arrow]
Trim by one (1) frame forward	[.]

Action	Shortcut
Trim by one (1) frame backward	[,]
Trim by ten (10) frames forward	[/]
Trim by ten (10) frames backward	[M]

Additionally, the following keyboard actions and shortcuts may be helpful:

Action	Key Action
Deactivate snapping mode	Hold [Shift] key while working in the timeline with the mouse
Select several clips and/or transitions disjointedly	Hold [Ctrl] key while selecting clips/transitions with the mouse
Select a range of adjoining clips and/or transitions	Hold [Shift] key while selecting clips/transitions with the mouse
Select all elements in the area that has the focus	[Ctrl + A]
Copy bin clip to a folder of the bin instead of moving	Hold [Ctrl] key while drag and drop of clip with mouse
Copy selected elements to the clipboard	[Ctrl + C]
Cut selected elements to the clipboard	[Ctrl + X]
Paste from clipboard to the selected position/location	[Ctrl + V]
Open Windows Explorer	[Windows () + E]
Open Task Manager	[Ctrl + Alt + Del]
Switch to Windows desktop	[Windows () + D]
Switch to another program	[Alt + TAB]

A.3 Supported File Formats

The DVS software supports over 100 graphic and image file formats. Most are made available by a special library. For a list of all these file formats see `http://perso.orange.fr/pierre.g/xnview/enformats.html`.

The tables in the following list the file formats that are supported by the DVS software directly. They are listed according to their file types: First the video file formats are detailed, followed by a table of the audio file formats.

Some of the file formats may not be real-time capable and/or cannot be captured.

To be usable in the DVS software some file formats, such as the **.mov* file format, may require the installation of third-party programs.

Table A-1: Supported video file formats

Format Name	Default Extension	File storage format	Description
BMP	**.bmp*	3 × 8 bit RGB	Windows bitmap format. Only uncompressed bitmaps are supported (no RLE compression).
Cineon	**.cin*	3 × 10 bit RGB	10 bit RGB format. Subset of the ANSI/SMPTE DPX file format. Flexible file format by Kodak, allowing for variable image headers.[1]
DPX	**.dpx*	3 × 8 bit RGB and 4 × 8 bit RGBA	8 bit RGB file format with or without key. SMPTE Standard File Format for digital moving-picture exchange.[1]
		8 bit YUV422 and YUVA4224	8 bit YUV file format with or without key. SMPTE Standard File Format for digital moving-picture exchange.[1]
		3 × 10 bit RGB and 4 × 10 bit RGBA	10 bit RGB file format with or without key. SMPTE Standard File Format for digital moving-picture exchange.[1]
		10 bit YUV422 and YUVA4224	10 bit YUV file format with or without key. SMPTE Standard File Format for digital moving-picture exchange.[1]
		3 × 12 bit RGB	12 bit RGB file format. SMPTE Standard File Format for digital moving-picture exchange.[1]
		3 × 16 bit RGB and 4 × 16 bit RGBA	16 bit RGB file format with or without key. SMPTE Standard File Format for digital moving-picture exchange.[1]

Table A-1: Supported video file formats (cont.)

Format Name	Default Extension	File storage format	Description
JPEG2000[2]	*.jp2 *.jpc	3 × 10 bit RGB	10 bit RGB file format. Flexible data and still image compression standard, operating either compressed or uncompressed.
		3 × 12 bit RGB	12 bit RGB file format. Flexible data and still image compression standard, operating either compressed or uncompressed.
		3 × 12 bit XYZ	12 bit XYZ file format. Flexible data and still image compression standard, operating either compressed or uncompressed.
MPEG 1[3] MPEG 2[3]	*.mpg	3 × 8 bit RGB or 8 bit YUV (compressed + audio)	File format for the compression of video and audio. The whole video clip as well as audio are stored in one file only (container format).
MXF	*.mxf	8 or 10 bit RGB(A) (DNxHD compressed)	Material eXchange Format that contains (wraps) compressed DNxHD material in 8 or 10 bit. Video is stored in one file only (container format). Audio is available as a separate file.
QuickTime	*.mov	various (e.g. RGB or YUV either compressed or uncompressed + audio)	Video file format that supports various file storage formats, either compressed or uncompressed. The whole video clip as well as audio are stored in one file only (container format). Proprietary streaming video technology developed by Apple.
SGI[4]	*.sgi *.rgb	3 × 8 bit RGB	8 bit RGB file format. SGI IRIX image format.
		3 × 16 bit RGB	16 bit RGB file format. SGI IRIX image format.
Targa	*.tga	3 × 8 bit RGB, 4 × 8 bit RGBA and 8 bit Luma, uncompressed	Targa image format.

Table A-1: Supported video file formats (cont.)

Format Name	Default Extension	File storage format	Description
TIFF	*.tif *.tiff	3 × 8 bit RGB, 4 × 8 bit RGBA and 8 bit Luma	TIFF or Tagged Image File Format in 8 bit RGB with or without key. Highly flexible and platform-independent image format. Not all variants of this format are supported by DVS.
		3 × 12 bit RGB, 4 × 12 bit RGBA and 12 bit Luma	TIFF or Tagged Image File Format in 12 bit RGB with or without key. Highly flexible and platform-independent image format. Not all variants of this format are supported by DVS.
		3 × 16 bit RGB, 4 × 16 bit RGBA and 16 bit Luma	TIFF or Tagged Image File Format in 16 bit RGB with or without key. Highly flexible and platform-independent image format. Not all variants of this format are supported by DVS.
Windows Media[3]	*.wmv	3 × 8 bit RGB (either compressed or uncompressed + audio)	Video file format that supports various file storage formats, either compressed or uncompressed. The whole video clip as well as audio are stored in one file only (container format). Proprietary streaming video technology developed by Microsoft.
YUV	*.qnt *.qtl *.yuv *.yuv8	8 bit YUV422 and YUVA4224	Raw 8 bit YUV422 and YUVA4224 format.[5] This file has no header. The image format is recognized by the file size. This is done with a table of predefined file sizes. Component order UYVY.
	*.yuv10	10 bit YUV422 and YUVA4224	Raw 10 bit YUV422 and YUVA4224 format. This file has no header. The image format is recognized by the file size. This is done with a table of predefined file sizes. Component order UYVY. Bits are packed tightly from left to right for three component samples, then two bits of padding (zero) to fill up to four bytes. The lines are padded to a multiple of four bytes. The file is padded to a multiple of 512 bytes.
	*.yuv16	16 bit YUV422	Raw 16 bit YUV422 format.[6] This file has no header. The image format is recognized by the file size. This is done with a table of predefined file sizes. Each component is stored as a 16 bit value in big-endian byte order (left-aligned). Component order UYVY.

1) DVS saves files of this format by default in big-endian byte order. However, during loading both formats (little- and big-endian byte order) can be read.

2) *Real-time capability optional. Cannot be captured.*
3) *Available for a finalizing process only.*
4) *Not real-time capable. A finalizing can only be performed uncompressed. Cannot be captured.*
5) *8 bit YUV422 and YUVA4224: 8 bit per component, 16 bit average per pixel*
6) *16 bit YUV422 and YUVA4224: 16 bit per component, 32 bit average per pixel*

Table A-2: Supported audio file formats

Format Name	Default Extension	Description
AIF AIFF	*.aif *.aiff	Audio interchange format. Platform-independent file format for sound. Capable of storing multiple mono or stereo channels.
BWF	*.rf64	Broadcast wave format. Platform-independent file format for sound. Extension of the *.wav format capable of storing multiple mono or stereo channels and enabling file sizes of more than 4 GB.
MPEG 1[1] MPEG 2[1]	*.mpg	Container file format that stores video as well as audio data compressed in a single file only.
QuickTime	*.mov	Container file format that stores video as well as audio data in a single file only. Proprietary streaming video technology developed by Apple.
Wave	*.wav	File format for digital audio (waveform) data under Windows. Capable of storing multiple mono or stereo channels.
Windows Media[1]	*.wmv	Container file format that stores video as well as audio data in a single file only. Proprietary streaming video technology developed by Microsoft.

1) *Available for a finalizing process only.*

A.4 1D LUT Files

A one-dimensional look-up table (1D LUT) file defines values for color and/or gamma correction. Depending on the color depth, for each input value the file specifies an output value for each color component and the alpha channel (key). It is a plain ASCII text file that has to match the following properties:

- Lines starting with a hash (#) are comments and will not be evaluated.
- There is a designated line (designated with the color depth) for the four color component values (RGBA). For example, for 10 bit video data the lines will start with zero (0) and end with 1023.
- Each designated line consists of four values (RGBA). The separation is made via tabulators ([TAB]).
- The LUT file has to provide 1024 × 5 input/output values as used in 10 bit video mode. If you work with 8 bit video data, only every fourth value will be used from the LUT.
- The values have to be in incrementing order.
- The color component values have to be stated as floating point values between zero (0) and one (1).

After some comments, for example, about the file and its values the file starts to list the color correction values. Each line starts with the designation of the input value (bit depth), succeeded by the four color component values: first blue, second green, then red, and last the alpha channel.

This leads to the following syntax:

```
# Any comment
# Any comment
<input value>      <B>       <G>       <R>       <A>
```

A finished and complete LUT file may look like the following (value pairs in the middle left out):

```
# Any comment
# Any comment
0       0.009766      0.000000      0.000000      0.0
1       0.011719      0.000000      0.000000      0.0
2       0.013672      0.000000      0.000000      0.0
3       0.015625      0.001953      0.000000      0.0
4       0.017578      0.003906      0.000000      0.0
5       0.019531      0.005859      0.000000      0.0
...
1022    0.999023      0.988281      0.999023      0.0
1023    0.999023      0.991211      0.999023      0.0
```

A.5 3D LUT Files

Three-dimensional look-up table (3D LUT) files are used for color corrections and/or color space conversions by defining output color values for input values. They are available in various formats, either encrypted (e.g. **.e3d*) or unencrypted (e.g. **.3dl* or **.xml*). This section describes the unencrypted 3D LUT files.

A.5.1 General Description

A 3D LUT file lists triplets of values for a color transformation. Depending on the color depth of the 3D LUT, each triplet of values (R'G'B') specifies the output values for a certain RGB node, i.e. the resulting mapped values of input values. The RGB nodes (input values) are not explicitly listed in a 3D LUT file. In a **.3dl* file they are available in the first uncommented line of the file and determine bit depth and number of nodes for the 3D LUT. In an **.xml* file these information are set as attributes of the 3D LUT tag.

The DVS hardware can handle 17 nodes in a 3D LUT with an accuracy of 12 bit, meaning 17 nodes for R times 17 nodes for G times 17 nodes for B ($17 \times 17 \times 17 = 17^3 = 4913$ R'G'B' values).

The nodes determine the RGB input values:

Nodes as, for example, listed in a **.3dl* file (17 nodes, 10 bit):

```
0 64 128 192 256 320 384 448 512 576 640 704 768 832 896 960 1023
```

Resulting in the following RGB nodes:

# of node	R	G	B
1	0	0	0
2	0	0	64
3	0	0	128
	...		
17	0	0	1023
18	0	64	0
19	0	64	64
20	0	64	128
	...		
34	0	64	1023
35	0	128	0
36	0	128	64
	...		
289	0	1023	1023
290	64	0	0
291	64	0	64
	...		
4911	1023	1023	896
4912	1023	1023	960
4913	1023	1023	1023

For the 17^3 nodes 17^3 output R'G'B' values have to be set in the 3D LUT file. The first triplet describes the output value of the first node, the second triplet of the second node, and so on.

The numbers (lines) of an RGB node can be calculated with the following formula:

$$\#\ of\ node = 17^2 \times index_R + 17 \times index_G + index_B + 1$$

[indices range from zero (0) to 16]

Example for the node (768, 384, 192):

$$17^2 \times 12 + 17 \times 6 + 3 + 1 = 3574$$

In case a particular RGB value of an image's pixel is not directly described through a node, it has to be interpolated: The RGB nodes can be placed in a spatial graph (cube). Any input RGB value will be described by a set of surrounding RGB nodes:

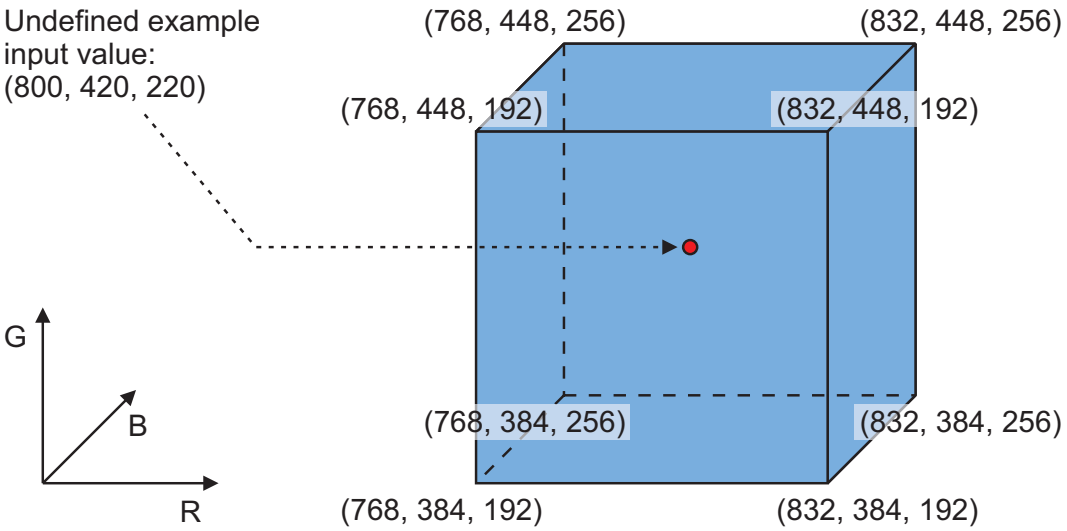


Figure A-1: Surrounding RGB nodes of an undefined input value

With the known look-up (output) values of these eight RGB nodes the required R'G'B' value can be calculated (interpolated).

A.5.2 3DL Files

A **.3dl* LUT file is a plain ASCII text file that has to match the following properties:

– Lines starting with a hash (#) are comments and will not be evaluated.

- The first uncommented line defines the input values (RGB nodes), i.e. the bit depth (e.g. if the end value is `1023`, than 10 bit) and the number of nodes.
- All following lines provide the output values (R'G'B') for one RGB node.
- Each following line consists of three values (R'G'B'). The separation is made by spaces.
- You have to define all $17^3 \times 3$ values and the triplets have to be in ascending order.
- The values have to be stated according to the bit depth between zero (`0`) and `<end value of RGB nodes>`.

After some comments, for example, about the file and its values the file starts with the input values. Then it lists the color correction values, leading to the following syntax:

```
# Any comment
# Any comment
<RGB nodes according to bit depth and # of nodes>
<R' of 1. node> <G' of 1.> <B' of 1.>
<R' of 2. node> <G' of 2.> <B' of 2.>
<R' of 3. node> <G' of 3.> <B' of 3.>
...
<R' of <# of nodes>^3. node> <G' of <# of nodes>^3.> <B' of <# of nodes>^3.>
```

The following shows an example of a 3DL file (10 bit, value pairs in the middle left out):

```
# Any comment
# Any comment
0 64 128 192 256 320 384 448 512 576 640 704 768 832 896 960 1023
   27     25     23
   27     26     23
   34     35     39
   41     43     51
   56     59     75
   87     88    117
  117    126    192
  120    122    252
   43      0    280
   98      0    334
  134      0    375
  159      0    404
  171      0    423
 ...
 1023    988    893
 1023    989    893
 1023    990    894
```

A.5.3 XML Files

A 3D LUT **.xml* file is a plain ASCII text file that has to conform to the XML standard. It offers the following tags and attributes:

<LUT3D>	The root element/base tag that includes the other elements and tags. It should provide the following attributes:	
	name	The name of the 3D LUT file.
	N	The number of nodes, i.e. 17.
	BitDepth	The bit depth of the 3D LUT file.
<values>	Child element/tag that contains the R'G'B' output values for the RGB nodes. Each line consists of three values (R'G'B'). The separation is made by spaces. You have to define all $17^3 \times 3$ values and the triplets have to be in ascending order. The values have to be stated according to the bit depth.	

The following shows an example of a 3D LUT XML file (value pairs in the middle left out):

```
<LUT3D name='DVS Example 3D LUT' N='17' BitDepth='16'>
   <values>
     3113      0   2674
     3011      0   2341
     3055      0   2484
     2833      0   3307
     2721      0   4971
     3078      0   7032
     4249      0   9383
     5632      0  12272
     6910      0  15632
     7805      0  18808
     8417      0  21373
     8964      0  23256
     9366      0  24656
    ...
    65535  65395  57730
    65535  65378  57973
    65535  65368  58109
   </values>
</LUT3D>
```

A.6 Slave Mode / RS-422 Control

For slave mode the DVS system supports the RS-422 9-pin control protocol as well as a subset (major commands) of the Odetics protocol. When master the DVS system uses the RS-422 9-pin control protocol only.

In case you want to control the DVS system in slave mode via RS-422, the following specifications have to be set on the master device to ensure a frame accurate editing:

preroll	>= 1 sec.
edit lag	7 frames
postroll	1 sec.

A.7 System Maintenance

This section contains topics related to system maintenance work. Carry out the described tasks whenever necessary.

A.7.1 The Automatic Defragmentation Process

The DVS system provides an automatic defragmentation process for the connected storage that defragments previously copied or recorded data on the hard disk array so that they are more suited for real-time operations.

The automatic defragmentation process is supplemented by the defragmenter included in Spycer which can be used, for example, for a selective defragmentation of single clips. Further information about this can be found in the "Spycer" user guide.

Starting the Process

The automatic defragmentation process is automatically started together with the DVS software. It is then running in the background of the system and will operate during stand-still times.

The automatic starting of the defragmentation tool of the DVS software can be enabled or disabled via the Configuration Tool (see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide for more information).

An automatic defragmentation will not be performed if real-time tasks (play-out or record) are running on your system or when the slave mode/VTR task mode is activated.

The process can also be started manually at any time when the DVS software is not running (see section "Starting the Process Manually" on page A-21).

Exiting the Process

Because the defragmentation process is automatically started together with the DVS software, it will be exited with it as well. As soon as the user interface of the DVS software is closed, the process will be halted and shut down as well.

Operation

When running, the defragmentation process reorganizes the files present on the storage during stand-still times of the DVS system. This

means a defragmentation will not be performed under the following conditions:

- When the system performs real-time tasks such as a play-out or record,
- when the software is running in slave mode, or
- when the software is running with the VTR task mode of the I/O Tool activated.

If one of the above said is the case, no defragmentation will take place.

After starting the DVS software the defragmentation process is running in the background of the system. It operates in loops at certain intervals. Each time it is started it will go through various checkings and phases of defragmentation. Whether a defragmentation has to be performed is indicated by a special assessment that evaluates the fragmentation degree of the clips on the storage. Once a defragmentation is indicated, it will start by defragmenting the worst fragmented files and align them on the storage so that they are optimized for real-time tasks such as a play-out or a record. In its next cycle it will take other, not so worse fragmented files and so on, until all data is defragmented sufficiently. Afterwards in each cycle only the checking is performed until a fragmentation is detected once more.



When operating at regular intervals with sufficient stand-still times and a moderate acquisition of data, the storage of the DVS system will always be in a perfect state for real-time operations.



The DVS defragmentation process uses proprietary routines to defragment the data on the storage. Because the Windows defragmentation tool does not apply the same routines, it is best not to use it for a defragmentation of the main storage but to leave this task to the DVS defragmentation process alone.

A triggered defragmentation process is automatically halted as soon as a real-time task is performed or the DVS software is set to one of the other above mentioned states, and it will be started again when the software provides the operating conditions of the defragmentation process once more.



After copying or recording large amounts of data to the storage, it is recommended to leave the DVS software running for a longer period of time (e.g. over night) without performing any real-time tasks (play-out or record) or having the slave mode/VTR task mode activated. This will give the defragmentation tool time to reorganize the files on the storage for an optimized real-time performance. For this you may also start the defragmentation process manually (see section “Starting the Process Manually” on page A-21).

Starting the Process Manually

The defragmentation process can also be started manually, for example, if its automatic starting during the starting of the DVS software is disabled.

To run the defragmentation process manually perform the following:



Before starting the defragmentation process manually make sure that the DVS software is no longer running on your system. A manually started process forces a defragmentation at all times, meaning regardless of the state of the DVS system (e.g. real-time operation) a defragmentation will be performed. This may result in a limited real-time performance.

- Open a command line (for example, via ***All Programs » DVS » Maintenance » cmd***).
- Type in the command `avusdefrag <drive>`.



The default value for `<drive>` is `V:`.

- After this press [Enter].

This will start the defragmentation of the storage.

During the defragmentation process the command line window will display the various checkings and phases of the defragmentation. Once finished with all phases, it will start again after a certain interval. Whether a defragmentation has to be performed is indicated by a special assessment that evaluates the fragmentation degree of the clips on the storage. Once a defragmentation is indicated, it will start by defragmenting the worst fragmented files first and align them on the storage so that they are optimized for real-time tasks such as a play-out or a record. In its next cycle it will take other, not so worse fragmented files and so on, until all data is defragmented sufficiently. Afterwards in each cycle only the checking is performed until a fragmentation is detected once more.



To terminate the manually started defragmentation process either close the command line window or press the key combination [Ctrl + C].

A.7.2 Cleaning Temporary Data Manually

When working with the Edit Tool, temporary data may be created to ensure a real-time capable environment. Temporary data can be proxies and/or prerendered files, both usually written to a location on your main storage especially reserved for this kind of data. In case you are not sure whether the temporary data in this directory is necessary, you can delete its whole contents manually. Afterwards you may load your

project file(s) again and begin new proxy generations and/or prerendering processes.



It is recommended to perform the procedure described in the following only when you are sure that the directory for the temporary data contains material for the respective project(s) only. For this it is best to use a project specific directory structure as described in section "Notes on Project Management" on page 2-14.

Do not delete temporary data manually while the DVS software is running.



The path to the location of the temporary data is stored project specific in each project file. With the respective project file loaded in the Edit Tool, it can be found in the Configuration Tool of the DVS software (group **Project**, field **Path for proxy data**, see "CLIPSTER Configurations" user guide).

- If applicable, shut down the DVS software.
- Open a file manager, e.g. the Windows Explorer.
- Select the project specific path of the temporary data on your main storage.
- Delete all files and directories stored in the respective directory manually.
- After that start the DVS software and load the project(s) in question.

Once each project is loaded, the DVS software recognizes that the temporary data is no longer available.

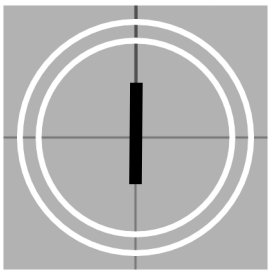
For prerendering this means that all parts of the timeline that had to be prerendered are marked for a prerendering again (see section "Prerendering of Timeline Elements" on page 6-46). Then you may start a new prerendering process, for example, with the menu option ***Prerender all*** (see section "Prerender all" on page 9-15).

For proxies this means that you will receive the original material automatically again. Afterwards you may start a new proxy generation process, for example, with the menu option ***Generate proxies*** (see section "Generate proxies" on page 9-21).

Once the creation of the new temporary data is finished, you can be sure that all files in the directory for the temporary data are valid ones.



After the creation of temporary data save your project file. If an already saved project file is not saved after such a process again, the temporary files will not be recognized by the DVS software when the project file is loaded once more: Neither will they be used for a play-out nor can they be deleted via the software. In such a case they have to be deleted manually again.



Index

Numerics

1D LUT 7-31, A-13
3D LUT 6-18, A-14
color cube 6-20, A-15
description A-14
enable 6-21
file 6-20
file syntax A-15, A-17
finalizing 6-84
logarithmic color space 6-20
profile 6-19
visualization 6-20
4K 2-11, 4-22
6-vector color correction 7-10, 7-55
alpha channel 7-56
high 7-55
low 7-55

A

about the software 9-27
accessing properties .. 4-21, 6-63, 6-77, 7-2
action safety areas 5-2
activating proxies 4-23, 9-22
add clip
to bin 3-4, 4-6, 9-6
to timeline 3-7, 6-2
to timeline (certain length) 6-41
add EDL
to bin 8-6, 8-40, 9-6
to timeline 8-9, 8-56
AIV 6-13, 6-17
alpha channel 7-40, 7-47, 7-54
of video clip 6-63, 6-72
A-mode 8-12, A-1
analog output settings 6-12
audio 6-17
aperture
see sharpness
application export 5-21, 6-62, 6-66
destructive 5-21, 5-22, 6-66
sequence processing 5-22, 6-65, 6-67
applying effects 3-15, 4-25, 7-11
applying preset effects 4-28, 7-15
archiving a project 9-15
aspect ratio 5-2, 6-85
during cropping 6-23
during finalizing 6-85
video overlay 5-2, 6-14
zoom and pan 7-17
asterisk (timecode) 2-17
At start/end 6-9
attaching audio to video 6-55, 6-61, 6-76
audio 3-6, 3-8, 4-7, 6-4, 6-5, 6-74
analog output 6-17
channels 6-16, 6-87
channels (embedded) 6-13, 6-17
during scrubbing 6-18
fades 6-78
file formats A-12
mixing 6-16
monitoring 6-17
multi-clip 4-8, 4-12
multiple channels 4-11, 6-4, 6-5, 6-74, 6-87
output 6-14, 6-87
peaks 6-78
sample 6-15, A-3, A-4
slip sync 6-15
thumbnail of clip 4-11
volume 6-77
waveform 5-15, 6-79
audio clip 6-74, A-1
see also audio

attach to video 6-55, 6-61, 6-76
change length 6-49, 6-51
delete volume control point 6-75
file number (display type) 6-75
properties 3-6, 4-21, 6-77, 8-64
properties of multi-clip ...4-12, 4-21
thumbnail 4-11
volume 6-77
volume control line 6-77
volume control point 6-77
waveform display 5-15, 6-79
audio options 6-17
Audio Scrubbing 6-18
audio track 3-8, 6-3, 6-4, 6-5, 6-74
button 3-10, 6-37
EDL 8-11, 8-30
hide 6-6
lock 6-36
mute 6-36
name 6-28
number 6-7
properties 6-14
routing 6-14
size 6-7
size (manual setting) 6-8
autoconforming 6-69, 8-13, 8-23, 8-49, A-1
result 8-18
autosave 2-4, 9-4, 9-25
prerendering 1-7
autoscaling 3-10, 6-13, 6-86

B

background jobs 4-33
backup 9-4
backup file 9-6
base video directory 4-14, 9-20
bin 3-3, 4-3, A-1
add clip 3-4, 4-6, 9-6
add EDL 8-6, 8-40, 9-6
change layout 4-4
check for inconsistencies ..9-4, 9-19, 9-20
clear 9-19
configuration 3-4, 4-4
contents area 3-3, 4-4, 4-16
context menu (contents area) ... 4-17
context menu (folder area) 4-14
context menu (title bar) 4-4
copying clips 4-18, 4-20
creating a folder 4-8, 4-15
deleting a clip 4-21
deleting a folder 4-16
export 9-19
folder area 3-3, 4-3, 4-14
import 9-18
inpoint setting 3-6, 4-20
load 9-18
new 9-19
pasting clips 4-18
renaming a folder 4-15
selecting clips 4-18
sorting clips into folders 4-19
sorting of clips 4-19
sorting of folders 4-15
text only 4-6
thumbnail 3-5, 4-11
thumbnail with text 4-5
title bar 4-3, 4-4, 4-15
view buttons 4-4, 4-5
bin clip 5-15, A-2
see also bin
inpoint setting 3-6, 4-20
play 5-17
reverse play 5-16
brightness 7-33, 7-40, 7-50
broadcast signal (legal) 5-4
broadcast standard 5-3
burn-in feature 6-25
enable 6-28
button 8-48
- 7-32, 8-44, 8-45, 8-55, 9-9
+ 6-16, 7-32, 8-11, 8-43, 8-45, 8-55, 9-9
+ Edit 3-13, 6-44
+ Mark 6-53
3D LUT 6-19
a 7-47, 7-48, 7-55
a + P 7-47, 7-48, 7-55
Accept changes 8-49
Add 6-20, 7-27
Add pre/post-roll 8-58
Assign 8-68
audio routing 6-14
Autoconform 8-49
Burn-In 6-26
Capture data 8-54
Center 6-24
Clear 4-44
Close 8-40
Combine 8-45
Config 2-9
conforming mode 5-11

Create in TL 8-56
Cropping 6-22
Delete 5-19, 6-20, 6-32, 7-29
Duplicate 8-41
DVSInfo 4-41
Edit 2-9
edit mode 5-11
end of clip 5-17, 8-64
Export as 8-41
frame backward . 5-12, 5-16, 5-30, 7-27, 8-63
frame forward 5-12, 5-16, 5-30, 7-27, 8-63
Frame In/Out 7-24
Graph Zoom 7-24
I/O 2-9
Image 4-6
inpoint 5-19, 6-33
Insert 6-34
Invert 7-47, 7-52
Lin to Log 6-20
Link data 8-50
Load 8-40
Lock 5-17, 7-46
Mark All 4-43
Modify after 7-4
Modify all 7-4
Modify before 7-3
Monitoring 6-18
next cutting point 3-13, 5-13, 8-64
of timeline tracks . 3-10, 6-14, 6-37
outpoint 5-19, 6-33
Overwrite 6-34
Pipette 7-39, 7-46
play 5-12, 5-17, 5-30, 8-63
Preview 8-55
previous cutting point ... 3-13, 5-13, 8-64
Print 8-41
Reconform 8-46
Remove from TL 8-47
Reset .4-41, 7-4, 7-23, 7-37, 7-47, 7-50, 7-52
Reset All 7-52
reverse play 5-12, 5-16, 8-63
Review 5-13
sample backward 5-16
sample forward 5-16
Save 4-43, 7-32
Select 8-43
Set status to offline 8-47
Settings 3-7, 3-10, 6-7, 6-12, 6-17, 6-19, 6-21, 6-25
Setup 8-44
Slave 5-12, 5-29
Slip source KC 8-48
Slip source TC 8-47
source-edit mode 5-11, 5-14
Spycer 2-9
start of clip 5-17, 8-64
Text 4-5
Timeline/EDL 8-61, 8-63
Trans 3-14, 6-45
trim backward 5-27
trim forward 5-27
trim mode 5-11
Unmark All 4-44
Update linking 8-59
View settings 8-42
Volume 6-77
Wave 6-79

C

cancel job 4-33
capacity (storage) 1-7
capturing 2-3, 4-10
change contents of timeline 6-67
chapter overview 1-4
chart 4-36, 4-38
  controls 4-37, 4-40
  resolution 4-41
check for inconsistencies 8-59, 9-4, 9-19, 9-20
chroma 5-5
CineReel 9-7
clear bin 9-19
clip A-2
  add to bin 3-4, 4-6, 9-6
  add to timeline 3-7, 6-2
  add to timeline (certain length) . 6-41
  alpha channel 6-63, 6-72
  arrange on timeline 6-38
  audio 4-11, 6-74
  change appearance (video) 6-8
  change contents only 6-52
  colors 6-47, 8-25
  consistency 6-63, 9-20
  copying 4-18, 4-20, 6-41
  crop contents 6-21
  cutting a clip 6-44
  delete effect 7-15
  delete from bin 4-21

delete from timeline 3-10, 6-42, 6-61, 6-75
duration 3-17, 6-61, 6-75, 7-3
file name display 6-9
frame missing 4-39, 6-64, 8-21, 9-20
inpoint information 6-60, 6-74
invalid 4-11
length .3-8, 3-11, 3-12, 5-20, 6-3, 6-41, 6-50, 6-51, 7-3
looped preview 8-63
move 6-38
multi-clip 4-11
multiple found 8-19
name 4-21, 6-61, 6-75
offline edited 5-17, 8-64, 8-67
outpoint information 6-61, 6-75
pasting 4-18, 6-41
pending 4-12, 8-9
position ..3-8, 6-3, 6-5, 6-52, 8-34
prerendering 6-46
properties 2-5, 3-6, 4-21, 6-63, 6-77, 7-10, 8-64
real-time capability 2-11, 4-13, 4-46
relinking 6-58, 6-63, 6-77, 8-3
selecting in bin 4-18
selecting in timeline 6-40
sorting in bin 4-19
sorting into folder 4-19
source 4-23, 5-21, 5-22, 6-58, 6-61, 6-64, 6-66
text information 6-60, 6-74
time stretching/compression ... 6-56, 6-62, 6-76
tooltip 6-61, 6-62, 6-75, 6-76
tooltip configuration 6-10
trimming 5-27, 6-50
types 4-11
unknown 4-12
video 4-11, 6-60
yellow marking 4-13
clipboard 4-18, 6-41, 6-63, 6-76
CLIPSTER 1-1
C-mode 8-12, A-2
CMX 8-2, 9-8
color component 7-34
color correction 6-63
see also 6-vector color correction
see also primary color correction
see also secondary color correction
library 7-42
monitoring of correction 5-3
settings (1st CC) 7-31
settings (2nd CC) 7-38
settings (6-Vector CC) 7-55
color cube 6-20, A-15
color mask 7-42
setting 7-39
color scheme (clips)
conforming tool 8-25
prerendering 6-47
color space range 5-4, 6-25
finalize 6-84
color value 6-25, A-13, A-14
color vector 7-38, 7-41
disable 7-42
enable 7-42
reset 7-47
color wheel 7-36, 7-43, 7-49
comment
burn-in 6-25
in EDL 8-8, 8-36, 9-12
LUT file A-13, A-15
markers 4-35
reel replacement list (EDL) 9-12
configuration
bin 3-4, 4-4
load defaults 9-26
of default settings 9-25
of projects 9-24
save defaults 9-26
timeline 6-6
timeline marker 6-53
video scopes 5-5
Configuration Tool 2-4, 2-9, 9-26
default settings 9-25
project settings 9-25
conforming 5-17, 8-1, 8-13, A-2
see also conforming tool
auto 6-69, 8-13, 8-23, 8-49
capture data 8-23, 8-53
clip not found 8-20
first steps 8-6
general information 8-2
important notes 8-3
link data 8-50
multiple found 8-19
reconform 8-46
result 8-18
search criteria 8-15, 8-35, 8-38
source/search type 8-16, 8-34, 8-37
transfer data 8-23, 8-51

conforming mode 2-7, 5-11, 8-25
conforming tool 5-11, 8-1, 8-2
see also conforming
see also EDL
autoconforming ... 8-13, 8-23, 8-49
capture data 8-23, 8-53
changing EDLs 8-28
clip not found 8-20
color scheme (clips) 8-25
cut list 8-2, 8-7, 8-8
EDL 8-2
first steps 8-6
important notes 8-3
multiple found 8-19
offline clip 8-23, 8-32, 8-47
offline edited clip 8-64, 8-67
preview area 8-60
preview controls 8-63
resolve multiple found 8-23, 8-67
scrub bar 8-62
split screen 8-64
Spycer 8-4
supported file formats 8-3
Timeline as EDL 8-24, 8-30
transfer data 8-23, 8-51
trimming clips 8-22
view contents 8-61
viewing EDL events 8-31
viewing EDL reels 8-36
viewing EDLs 8-29
viewing original EDL 8-38
working in the timeline 8-22
connecting the driver 9-24
consistency of clip 6-63, 9-20
container format 6-83, 6-86, 6-90, A-2
contents (storage) 2-4, 4-10
contents area (bin) 3-3, 4-4, 4-16
context menu 4-17
Continuously 6-9
contrast 7-33
control area 2-7, 5-1
scrub bar 5-9, 6-30
controls 5-11, 6-31
chart controls 4-37, 4-40
conforming controls 8-40
table controls 4-37, 4-43
trim controls 5-26
conventions of user guide 1-6
copy 4-18, 6-41, 6-63, 6-76
counter 5-20, 5-26
create
EDL 8-41, 9-8
preset effect 4-26, 7-15
proxy 4-22, 9-21
cropping 6-21
enable 6-25
Custom Name 6-20
cut 3-13, 5-25, 6-44
move 5-26
cut list 8-2, 8-7, 8-8, A-2
cutting point 6-44, A-2
in trim mode 5-26
in-/outpoint 3-14, 5-11, 5-24, 6-48, 8-64
previous/next 3-13, 5-13, 8-64

D

deactivating proxies 4-23, 9-23
default configuration 9-25
load 9-26
save 9-26
default video raster 6-14
defragmentation tool 1-7, 2-4, A-19
deinterlace 7-10, 7-57
delete
clip from bin 4-21
clip from timeline . 3-10, 6-61, 6-75
EDL 8-40
effect from clip properties 3-16, 7-14, 7-15
elements/range in timeline 6-42
folder (bin) 4-16
from in to out 6-42
inconsistent clips 9-20
inpoint of bin clip 5-19
inpoint of timeline 6-32, 6-34
outpoint of bin clip 5-19
outpoint of timeline 6-32, 6-34
preset effect 4-30
temporary data (prerender) 4-33, 6-47, 6-62, A-21
temporary data (proxy) .. 4-24, 9-22, A-21
timeline marker 6-54
transition 3-14, 6-45
volume control point 6-75
destructive export 5-21, 5-22, 6-66
disabling
3D LUT 6-21
audio scrubbing 6-18
burn-in 6-28
color vectors 7-42
cropping 6-25

effects 7-13
tooltips 6-10
disconnect attached clips 6-56
element 6-56
group 6-56
timeline 6-56
Disk Online 8-4, 8-16, 8-36, 8-50
disk space 2-11, 2-13
display type 6-10
dominance 6-85
driver 2-2
connect 9-24
drop 4-36, 4-37, 4-39, 4-40, 4-42, A-2
during play-out 4-47
during record 4-48
location 4-42
report 4-37, 4-43
reset counter 4-41
troubleshooting 4-47
drop table 4-37, 4-42
drop-frame timecode 2-17, 6-85
EDL 8-7
dropped frames/audio
see drop
duration
clip 3-17, 6-61, 6-75, 7-3
EDL 8-31
EDL event 8-8, 8-34
timeline 2-10, 6-2
timeline element 7-3
transition 3-14, 7-3
DVI output settings 6-12
DVS CineReel 9-7
DVS information file .. 4-37, 4-40, 4-41

E

edit mode 2-7, 5-1, 5-11
edit point
see cutting point
Edit Tool 2-3, 2-9
editing 4-25, 7-1, 7-10
3-/4-point 6-41
scene markers 6-62, 6-72
EDL 2-3, 8-2, 9-8, A-2
see also cut list
accept changes 8-49
add to bin 8-6, 8-40, 9-6
add to timeline 8-9, 8-56
A-mode 8-12
audio track 8-11, 8-30
autoconforming ... 8-13, 8-23, 8-49
batch capture 8-53
black clips 8-58
building up a timeline 8-9, 8-56
capture data 8-23, 8-53
changing events 8-28
check for inconsistencies 8-59
clip properties 8-64
clips 8-30
close 8-40
C-mode 8-12
combine EDLs 8-45
comments 8-8, 8-36, 9-12
configuration 8-6, 8-44
conforming tool 8-2
consolidate clips 8-36, 8-54
convert frame rate 8-8
create 8-41, 9-8
delete 8-40
destination in-/outpoints . 8-8, 8-22, 8-26, 8-34
Disk Online ..8-4, 8-16, 8-36, 8-50
drop-frame timecode 8-7
duplicate 8-11, 8-41, 8-56
duration 8-31
duration of event 8-8, 8-34
export 8-41, 9-8
File number as TC 8-15, 8-36
file number in-/outpoints 8-64
format 8-2, 9-8
frame rate 8-7, 8-27, 8-30
head/tail 8-33, 8-56, 8-62
head/tail (capture data) 8-54
head/tail (transfer data) 8-52
import 8-6, 8-40
keycode 8-8
Keycode (in header) 8-15
keycode in-/outpoints .. 8-34, 8-48, 8-64
length 8-31
length of event 8-34
link data 8-50
load 8-40
load updated EDL 8-46
name 8-7, 8-30
None 8-35
offline clip 8-23, 8-32, 8-47
offline edited clip . 5-17, 8-64, 8-67
offset 8-36, 8-38
play 8-63
position in timeline 8-12
position of event 8-34
print 8-41

reconform 8-46
reel name 8-33, 8-37
reels 8-30
remove from Edit Tool 8-40
remove from timeline 8-47
resolve multiple found 8-23, 8-67
reverse play 8-63
search criteria 8-15, 8-38
select 8-41
select entries 8-43
select updated EDL 8-46
selecting 8-27, 8-31, 8-37
setup 8-6, 8-44
show/hide handles 8-56
size of thumbnails 8-42
sort 8-28
source in-/outpoints 8-8, 8-22, 8-26, 8-33, 8-47, 8-64
Source TC (in header) 8-4, 8-15
source/search criteria 8-35
source/search type 8-16, 8-34, 8-37
speed effects 8-18
SpycerNet 8-16, 8-50
start export 9-14
start frame 8-35, 8-36, 8-38
statuses of clips 8-32
thumbnails 8-43
timecode 9-10
timeline status 8-30
transfer data 8-23, 8-51
transitions 8-12, 8-33, 9-9
trimming clips 8-22
update 8-46
values in orange 8-26, 8-29
video track 8-11, 8-30
view contents 8-61
view of EDLs 8-28, 8-42, 8-44
view selected only 8-44
VTR 8-35, 8-54
VTR-TL 8-16, 8-36, 8-50
effect 3-15, 4-25
see also preset effect
apply 3-15, 4-25, 7-11
delete from clip ... 3-16, 7-14, 7-15
disable 7-13
effects list 7-11
enable 7-13
import 4-31
sequence 7-14
settings 4-26, 7-12, 7-14
sort 4-32
title bar 4-32
effects list 7-11
embedded audio 6-13, 6-17
embedded operator A-2
enabling
3D LUT 6-21
audio scrubbing 6-18
burn-in 6-28
color vectors 7-42
cropping 6-25
effects 7-13
tooltips 6-10
ending point (transition) 7-9
entering timecode 2-18
entry field for in-/outpoint 5-19, 6-32
error diagnostic 2-4, 4-47
exiting the program 3-18, 9-2, 9-16
export
bin 9-19
default configuration (save) 9-26
destructive 5-21, 5-22, 6-66
EDL 8-41, 9-8
effects 4-31
sequence processing 5-22, 6-65, 6-67
to application 5-21, 6-62, 6-66
extension of files 4-31, 4-32, 7-32, 8-6, 9-4, 9-6, 9-18, 9-19, 9-26
extracting files 9-15

F

fast motion 6-57, 6-62, 6-76
file extension 4-31, 4-32, 7-32, 8-6, 9-4, 9-6, 9-18, 9-19, 9-26
file format A-9
for conforming tool (source TC) .. 8-3
graphic A-9
file manager 3-4, 4-7
File names 6-9
File number 6-11
see also frame number
with audio clips 6-75
File number as TC 8-15, 8-36
file/frame numbering (finalizing) ... 6-82, 6-90
files per folder (finalizing) 6-84, 6-88
film raster 6-14
film-look 6-18
filter 7-18
finalizing 2-12, 6-80
3D LUT 6-84
audio output 6-86

autoscale 6-85
channels 6-89
color space range 6-84
drop-frame timecode 6-85
file format 6-83, 6-87
file/frame numbering 6-82, 6-90
files per folder 6-84, 6-88
hardware support 6-83
name options 6-90
pulldown 6-85
resizing of material 6-85
resolution 6-85
result 6-88
saving types 6-84
source timecode 6-81
start 6-88
start index 6-93
storage of audio files 6-89
storage of files 6-81
storage of video files 6-88
video output 6-82
fine tuning mode 3-8, 6-39
flip 7-10, 7-30
flop 7-10, 7-30
folder 3-3, 4-3, 4-14
copying clips 4-20
create 4-8, 4-15
delete 4-16
rename 4-15
root 4-16
sorting 4-15
sorting clips 4-19
folder area (bin) 3-3, 4-3, 4-14
context menu 4-14
format 3-7, 6-2
forward-backward play mode 5-30
fragmentation assessment ... A-20, A-21
frame backward 5-12, 5-16, 5-30, 7-27, 8-63
frame forward . 5-12, 5-16, 5-30, 7-27, 8-63
frame information 6-25
frame matching 6-61, 6-64
frame missing . 4-38, 4-39, 6-64, 8-21, 9-20
frame number 2-18
see also File number
finalizing 6-82, 6-90
offset 6-93
frame number/timecode field 2-18, 5-13
switch notation 2-18, 6-9, 8-43
frame offset 6-9, 6-84
frame rate 2-17
EDL 8-7, 8-27, 8-30
frame-end marker (timeline cursor) 6-30, A-2
frames 2-18
Full 6-25, 6-84
full A-3
full-screen 2-6, 3-2
function key 4-28

G

gain 7-35
gamma 7-33, 7-35
gap in timeline 6-39
close 6-40
fill 6-41
gauge 8-7
generic source timecode 2-15, 6-81, 8-5
glossary A-1
GVG 8-2, 9-8

H

Head 6-25, 6-84
head 3-14, 6-35, 6-36, 6-45, 6-50, 8-33, 8-52, 8-54, 8-56, 8-62
head (vs. full) A-3
head (vs. tail) A-3
headroom 5-4, 5-6, 5-7
help 9-27
for menu options 2-10
high 7-33, 7-37, 7-55
HSL color space 7-34, 7-36, 7-43
hue 7-34, 7-46

I

I/O mode
multi-threaded 4-37, 4-38, 4-46
single-threaded 4-37, 4-38
I/O Tool 2-3, 2-9, 4-10
icon menu 9-2
import
bin 9-18
default configuration (load) 9-26
EDL 2-3, 8-6, 8-40
effects 4-31
project 9-5

important notes 1-7, 8-3
information
clip duration 6-61, 6-75
clip inpoint 6-60, 6-74
clip outpoint 6-61, 6-75
name of clip 6-61, 6-75
project file 2-10
timeline duration 2-10
via tooltips 6-10, 6-61
video raster 2-10
information file 4-37, 4-40, 4-41
inpoint A-3
change 5-26, 6-47
delete 5-19, 6-32, 6-34
details 5-25
handler 5-20, 5-26, 6-48, 6-49
handler trimming 6-51
information 5-25, 6-60, 6-74
marker 5-26
setting for timeline 6-32, 6-33
setting in bin 3-6, 4-20
setting in source-edit mode 3-8, 5-18
setting in timeline 3-12, 6-49
setting in trim mode 5-24, 5-27, 6-48
slave mode control 5-29
trimming 5-26
inpoint entry field 5-19, 6-32
insert mode 3-8, 6-34, 6-39
with attached clips 6-56
insert project 9-5
interlace material (deinterlace) 7-10, 7-57
Internal 6-11
Is transferring 8-5, 8-32, 8-53

J

job 4-33
background 4-33
cancel 4-33
video overlay 4-33

K

key
see alpha channel
keyboard shortcuts 6-32
keycode 2-15, 2-16
conforming tool 8-16, 8-48
EDL 8-8
information 6-25
notation 2-16
reference number .. 2-16, 8-8, 8-34, 8-49
Keycode (in header) 8-15
keyframing 7-21
activate 7-20
color coding 7-22
curving 7-23
deleting keyframes 7-29
positioning of keyframes .7-25, 7-27
reset 7-23
selecting keyframes 7-27, 7-28
selecting settings 7-22
timeline cursor 7-25
tooltip 7-29
view/zoom 7-23

L

length
EDL 8-31
of audio clips 6-49, 6-51
of clip . 3-8, 3-11, 3-12, 6-3, 6-41, 6-50, 6-51, 7-3
of EDL event 8-34
of timeline 6-2
of timeline elements 7-3
of transitions 6-49, 6-51
of video clips 5-20
lift 7-35
load
bin 9-18
default configuration 9-26
EDL 8-40
preset effects 4-31
project 9-4, 9-5
updated EDL 8-46
location
of prerender data 2-14
of proxy data 2-14
of storage 4-13
locking tracks 6-36
log (drops) 4-37, 4-43
log files 4-41
look-up table 7-10, A-4
sample files 6-20, 7-32
setting of 1D-LUT 7-31
setting of 3D-LUT 6-18, 6-84
setting of static LUT 7-31
specification (1D-LUT) A-13
specification (3D-LUT) A-14

loop 5-13
loop mode 5-30
looped preview 8-63
low 7-34, 7-37, 7-55
luma 5-5, 5-7
luminance 7-46
LUT
see 3D LUT
see look-up table

M

maintenance A-19
marker (scene) 6-71
edit 6-62, 6-72
marker (timeline) 4-34, 4-38, 4-42, 4-43, 6-52
add automatically 6-54
add manually 6-53
configuration 6-53
delete 6-54
moving to 5-13, 6-53, 8-64
position 4-34
sort 4-35
table 4-34
thumbnail 4-35
types 6-53
marking of clips 4-13
master lock 6-37
master mute 6-37
matching a frame 6-61, 6-64
menu bar 2-7, 9-1
help 2-10
program icon 9-2
mid 7-37
minimizing the user interface 9-2
mirroring the video image 7-10, 7-30
missing frames 4-38, 4-39, 6-64, 8-21, 9-20
mixing audio 6-16
mode
conforming 2-7, 5-11
edit 2-7, 5-1, 5-11
fine tuning 3-8, 6-39
insert 3-8, 6-34, 6-39
overwrite 3-8, 6-35, 6-39
slave 5-12, 5-29
snapping 3-8, 3-11, 6-39
source-edit 2-7, 3-8, 5-11, 5-14
trim 2-7, 3-14, 5-11, 5-24, 6-48
modules 2-9
Moiré 7-19
monitoring
audio 6-17
color correction 5-3
performance 4-36
mono 6-15, 6-75, 8-11
moving clips 6-38
multi-clip 4-11, A-4
audio 4-8, 4-12
properties 4-12, 4-21
SequenceInfo.xml 4-12, 6-90
multiple channels (audio) 4-11, 6-4, 6-5, 6-74, 6-87
Multiple found 8-32
multiple found 8-19
multi-threaded I/O mode ... 4-37, 4-38, 4-46
muting tracks 6-36

N

name
of clip 4-21, 6-61, 6-75
of EDL 8-7, 8-30
of tracks 6-28
name options (finalizing) 6-90
new
bin 9-19
folder 4-8, 4-15
project 9-3
next cutting point 5-13, 8-64
No thumbnails 6-9
None 8-35
notes 1-7, 8-3
project management 2-14
number of tracks 6-7

O

Offline 8-23, 8-32, 8-47
offset
EDL event 8-36
EDL reel 8-38
export EDL 9-11
frame number (finalizing) 6-93
source timecode 2-16
timecode/frames (finalizing) 6-84
timeline 6-9

Online 8-59
Online NRT 8-32, 8-51
Online RT 8-32, 8-53
online-conforming 8-8, A-4
open
bin 9-18
project 9-4, 9-5
open platform 9-24
OpenFX plug-in interface 2-5, 7-10
operator 4-25, 7-1, A-4
embedded A-2
making settings 7-12
prerendering 2-14, 6-46
temporary data (prerender) 2-12, 6-46
transitions 6-44
optional features .. 1-2, 4-25, 6-19, 7-1
Original 8-33
outpoint 3-8, 6-3, 6-5, A-4
change 5-26, 6-47
delete 5-19, 6-32, 6-34
details 5-25
handler 5-20, 5-26, 6-48, 6-49
handler trimming 6-51
information 5-25, 6-61, 6-75
marker 5-26
setting for timeline 6-32, 6-33
setting in source-edit mode 3-8, 5-18
setting in timeline 3-12, 6-49
setting in trim mode 5-24, 5-27, 6-48
slave mode control 5-29
trimming 5-26
outpoint entry field 5-19, 6-32
output
alpha channel 6-63, 6-72
analog video 6-12
audio 6-14
crop 6-21
default video raster 6-14
DVI 6-12
format information 2-10
SD video 6-14
SDI 6-12
video 5-2, 6-12
overlay
see video overlay
overview
of chapters 1-4
software structure 2-2
user interface 2-6
overwrite mode 3-8, 6-35, 6-39
attaching clips 6-56

P

panning 6-63, 7-10, 7-16
items 7-17
paste 4-18, 6-41, 6-63, 6-76
PCI video board 2-2
PDF (documentation) 9-27
perforation 8-7
performance monitor 4-36
chart 4-36, 4-38
chart controls 4-37, 4-40
chart resolution 4-41
disabled 4-37, 4-45
drop 4-39, 4-40
drop location 4-42
drop table 4-37, 4-42
DVS information file 4-37, 4-40, 4-41
missing frame 4-38, 4-39
reset counter 4-41
resolving drops 4-47
result file 4-43
start 4-46
status messages 4-37, 4-41
table controls 4-37, 4-43
timeline marker 4-42, 4-43, 6-53
usage 4-44
picture mask 7-51
adjust 7-54
invert 7-52
polygon 7-53
preview window 7-53
reset 7-52
reset all 7-52
select shape 7-51
setting shape 7-52
softness 7-54
spline 7-53
x-position 7-54
x-size 7-54
y-position 7-54
y-size 7-54
pipette 7-39, 7-47
placeholder for missing frame 4-39, 6-64, 8-21
placeholder for multiple found 8-19
play-out 2-12, 5-12, 5-17, 5-30, 6-31, 8-63
connecting the driver 9-24

in reverse 5-12, 5-16, 8-63
performance 4-44, 4-46
position of play-out 5-30
resolving drops 4-47
plug-in interface (OpenFX) 2-5, 7-10
position 5-19
of clip 3-8, 6-2, 6-3, 6-5, 6-52, 8-34
of EDL in timeline 8-12
prerendering 2-12, 6-46
autosave 1-7
color scheme (clips) 6-47
data location 2-14
delete temporary data ...4-33, 6-47, 6-62, A-21
progress 4-33
secondary color correction 7-41
start process 6-47, 6-62, 9-15
preset effect 4-26, 4-29, 7-14
apply 4-28, 7-15
create 4-26, 7-15
delete 4-30
export 4-31
import 4-31
load 4-31, 7-15
rename 4-30
save 4-31, 7-15
sort 4-32
preview window 7-39, 7-46, 7-47
alpha channel 7-47, 7-56
picture masks 7-53
previous cutting point 5-13, 8-64
primary color correction 7-10, 7-31
brightness 7-33
color wheel 7-36
contrast 7-33
gain 7-35
gamma 7-33, 7-35
global settings 7-34
high 7-33
hue 7-34
lift 7-35
low 7-34
master/luma/chroma 7-32
reset color correction 7-37
saturation 7-34
setting of static LUT 7-31
static LUT 7-10
priority (vertical editing) 6-68
program exit 3-18, 9-2, 9-16
program icon menu 9-2
program start 3-2
progress of job 4-33
project
archive 9-15
configuration 9-24
create EDL 8-41, 9-8
extract files 9-15
insert 9-5
management 2-14
project file 9-3, 9-5
file name 9-6, 9-7
information 2-10
insert 9-5
new 9-3
open 9-4, 9-5
recent 9-5
save 9-6, 9-7
status messages 2-10
project management 2-14
properties
accessing 4-21, 6-63, 6-77, 7-2
closing 7-6
of clips 2-5, 3-6, 4-21, 6-63, 6-77, 8-64
of timeline elements 7-1
of transitions 7-7
of video clips 7-10
protocol (RS-422) 5-29, A-1, A-4
proxy 2-11, 2-14, A-5
activate 4-23, 9-22
create 4-22, 9-21
creation progress 4-33
data location 2-14
deactivate 4-23, 9-23
delete temporary data .. 4-24, 9-22, A-21
usage 4-22
workflow 2-12
pulldown 6-85

R

real time
capability of clips ..2-11, 4-13, 4-46
core 4-38
operation ..2-11, 2-14, 4-13, 4-36, 4-46, 5-2
performance 1-7, 4-36, 4-44
warning 4-13

recent files 9-5
record
performance 4-44
resolving drops 4-48
redo 9-17
reel A-5
reference number (keycode) ..2-16, 8-8, 8-34, 8-49
relinking clips 6-58, 6-63, 6-77, 8-3
renaming preset effects 4-30
report (drops) 4-37, 4-43
resetting timeline element properties 7-4
resizing of material 6-85
resizing timeline element 6-57
resolution 6-12, 6-85
result file 4-43
retiming 6-57, 6-87
reverse wipe 7-9
review 3-14
part of timeline 5-13
RGB parade 5-5, 5-6, 6-71
root folder (bin) 4-16
rotation 7-18
settings 7-20
RS-422 ..... 5-12, A-5, A-18
9-pin protocol A-1, A-18
Odetics A-4, A-18
protocol 5-29, A-1, A-4

S

safety areas 5-2
sample backward 5-16
sample forward 5-16
saturation .5-5, 7-34, 7-40, 7-46, 7-50
save
bin 9-19
default configuration 9-26
preset effects 4-31
project 9-6, 9-7
scale of timeline
see timeline scale
scaling (auto) 3-10, 6-86
scene detection 6-69
edit scene markers 6-62, 6-72
higher speed 6-70
scene marker 6-71
start 6-70
video scope 6-71
scrub A-5
audio configuration 6-18
scrub bar A-5
conforming tool 8-62
control area 5-9, 6-30
cursor 5-10, 5-16, 5-19, 6-31, 8-62, 8-63
cursor position 5-19
preview area 8-60
synchronize with timeline 5-17
thumbnail 3-6, 4-20
SD outputs 6-14
SDI output 6-12, 6-25
enable burn-in 6-28
settings 6-12
secondary color correction 7-10, 7-38
alpha channel 7-47
color mask 7-39, 7-42
color vector list 7-41
high/mid/low 7-37
pipette 7-39, 7-47
prerendering 7-41
preview window .. 7-39, 7-46, 7-47
primary color correction ..7-40, 7-48
reset color correction 7-50
reset color vector 7-47
selection shape 7-44
softness 7-44, 7-47
usage 7-38
selecting
clips in bin 4-18
clips in timeline 6-40
EDL events 8-31
EDL reels 8-37
EDLs 8-27
updated EDL 8-46
selection shape 7-44
sequence processing .. 5-22, 6-65, 6-67
SequenceInfo.xml 4-12, 6-90
setting 3-7, 3-10, 6-12
effects 4-26, 7-12, 7-14
effects operator 7-12
save defaults 9-26
transition 6-44
shapes
see picture mask
sharpness 7-18
filter 7-18
settings 7-19
shortcuts 3-2, A-7
single-threaded I/O mode 4-37, 4-38
size
of audio tracks 6-7, 6-8
of timeline area 4-2, 6-6

of tool area 4-2
of tracks 6-7, 6-8
of video overlay 5-3
of video tracks 6-7, 6-8
slave mode 5-12
control window 5-29
in-/outpoint (control window) .. 5-29
RS-422 protocol 5-29, A-1, A-4
specifications A-18
slide trimming 6-52
slip source KC 8-48
slip source TC 8-47
slip sync (audio) 6-15
slip trimming 6-52
slow motion 6-57, 6-62, 6-76
snapping mode 3-8, 3-11, 6-39
softness 7-9, 7-44, 7-47
software modules 2-2, 2-9
software structure 2-2
sorting
clips in bin 4-19
clips into folders (bin) 4-19
EDL 8-28
EDL events 8-28
EDL reels 8-28
effects 4-32
folders in bin 4-15
timeline markers 4-35
source material 6-61
export 5-21, 5-22, 6-66
frame position 6-64
proxy 4-23
relinking 6-58
Source TC 6-11, 6-82
Source TC (in header) 8-4, 8-15
source timecode 2-15, 6-11, 6-82, 9-11, A-5
conforming tool 8-3, 8-4, 8-16
finalizing 6-81
generic 2-15, 6-81, 8-5
offset 2-16, 8-36, 8-38
virtual 2-16, 6-11, 8-58, 9-11
source-edit mode . 2-7, 3-8, 5-11, 5-14
synchronize with timeline 5-17
split screen 8-64
Spycer 2-4, 2-9, 4-10
conforming tool 8-4
SpycerNet 8-4, 8-16, 8-50
stack 6-67
Start frame 8-35, 8-36, 8-38
start index (finalizing) 6-93
starting of play .5-12, 5-17, 5-30, 8-63
starting of program 3-2
starting point
clip 3-8, 6-3, 6-5
EDL reel 8-38
transition 7-9
status messages 2-10
performance monitor 4-37, 4-41
stereo 6-15, 6-75, 8-11
stopping of play 5-12, 5-17, 5-30, 8-63
storage 1-7, 3-4, 4-6, 4-44
capacity 1-7
contents 2-4, 4-10
disk space 2-11, 2-13
files per folder (finalizing) 6-84, 6-88
location 4-13
performance 4-36, 4-44
synchronization 6-15, 6-55
System base video directory . 4-14, 9-20

T

tab 4-1
Bin 4-3
EDL Clips 8-31
EDL Reels 8-36
EDLs 8-29
Effects 4-25
Jobs 4-22, 4-33, 9-21
Markers 4-34
Original EDL 8-38
Perform 4-36
table controls 4-37, 4-43
tail 3-12, 3-14, 6-35, 6-36, 6-45, 6-50, 8-33, 8-52, 8-54, 8-56, 8-62, A-5
target group 1-5
task bar 2-3, 2-8, 2-9
temporary data
clean manually A-21
prerender 2-12, 6-46
prerender data location .. 2-14, A-22
proxies 2-11, 9-21
proxy data location 2-14
text of clips 6-60, 6-74
third-party software 1-7
thumbnail 3-5, 4-11
at start and end only 6-8, 6-9
audio clip 4-11

conforming tool 8-42, 8-68
continuous 6-8, 6-9
file names instead of 6-9
in video track 6-8
invalid clip 4-11
multi-clip 4-11
no thumbnail 6-8, 6-9
pending clip 4-12, 8-9
scrub bar 3-6, 4-20
text only 4-6
timeline markers 4-35
unknown 4-12
video clip 4-11
with text 4-5
yellow marking 4-13
time compression 6-56, 6-62, 6-76
time stretching 6-56, 6-62, 6-76
time stretching mode 6-58
timecode 2-15
asterisk 2-17
drop-frame 2-17, 6-85, 8-7
EDL timecode 8-7, 9-10
entering 2-18
entries 2-17
format 2-17
greater 30 Hz 2-17
information 6-25
notation 2-18
offset 6-9, 6-84
source .2-15, 6-11, 6-82, 8-3, 8-4, 8-16, 9-11, A-5
switch notation 2-18, 6-9, 8-43
timecode/frame number field 2-18, 5-13
timeline 3-6, 6-1
activate in-/outpoint 5-29
add clip 3-7, 6-2
add clip of certain length 6-41
add EDL 8-9, 8-56
add timeline marker 6-53, 6-54
arrange clips 6-38
blue line 6-33
build-up of EDL 8-9, 8-56
change appearance 6-6
change contents 6-67
check for inconsistencies ..8-59, 9-4, 9-19, 9-20
close gap 6-40
configuration 6-6
control 6-29
copy clip 6-41
create EDL 8-41, 9-8
crop 6-21
delete clip 6-61, 6-75
delete volume control point 6-75
duration 2-10, 6-2
enable 3D LUT file 6-21
enable cropping 6-25
forward-backward play mode ... 5-30
gap 6-39
in-/outpoint 6-32, 6-33, 6-49
inconsistencies 6-63
indicator line 6-46
length indicator 6-2
lock 6-37
loop mode 5-30
move within 6-29
mute 6-37
new 9-3
offset 6-9
paste clips 6-41
play 5-12, 8-63
properties of video clips 2-5, 6-63
red line 6-39
redo 9-17
relinking clips 6-58, 6-63, 6-77, 8-3
reverse play 5-12, 8-63
save 9-6, 9-7
selecting clips 6-40
time stretching/compression 6-56, 6-62, 6-76
tooltip 6-61, 6-62, 6-75, 6-76
tooltip configuration 6-10
undo 9-17
vertical editing 6-67
yellow line 6-46
zoom 3-9, 5-9, 6-30
timeline area 2-7
change size 4-2, 6-6
timeline cursor ... 3-13, 5-12, 6-29, A-5
frame-end marker 6-30, A-2
synchronize with source 5-17
timeline marker 6-53
timeline element A-5
delete range in timeline 6-42
duration 7-3
length 7-3
properties 2-5, 3-15, 7-1
resize 6-57
timeline element properties 7-1
accessing 7-2
close 7-6
effect settings 7-12
effects list 7-11
length of element 7-3

of transitions 7-7
of video clips 7-10
reset 7-4
timeline marker 4-34, 4-38, 4-42, 4-43, 6-52
add automatically 6-54
add manually 6-53
configuration 6-53
delete 6-54
moving to 5-13, 6-53, 8-64
position 4-34
sort 4-35
table 4-34
thumbnail 4-35
types 6-53
Timeline output TC 6-81
timeline scale 6-29
configuration 6-9
title bar
bin 4-3, 4-4, 4-15
context menu (bin) 4-4
effects pane 4-32
title safety areas 5-2
tool area 2-7, 4-1
change size 4-2
tab 4-1
tools 4-1
conforming tool 8-1
tools and services 2-4
defragmentation 2-4, A-19
tooltip 6-10, 6-61, 6-62, 6-75, 6-76
configuration 6-10
keyframing 7-29
track
lock 6-36
mute 6-36
name 6-28
track buttons 3-10, 6-37
track size 6-7
manual setting 6-8
options 6-7
transition 3-13, 3-14, 5-25, A-5
automatic creation 3-14, 6-36, 6-45
change length 6-49, 6-51
delete 3-14
duration 3-14, 7-3
ending point 7-9
in EDL 8-12, 8-33, 9-9
length 7-3
prerendering 6-46
properties 3-14, 7-1, 7-7
reverse 7-9
setting a transition 6-44
shapes of wipes 7-8
softness 7-9
starting point 7-9
trim backward 5-27
trim forward 5-27
trim mode 2-7, 3-14, 5-11, 5-24, 6-48
in-/outpoint information 5-25
trimming 5-27, 6-50
conforming tool 8-22
controls 5-26
cut 5-26
inpoint 5-26
keyboard shortcuts 5-28, 6-48
outpoint 5-26
slide 6-52
slip 6-52
tutorial 3-3
type of clips 4-11
type of display 6-10
typographical conventions 1-6

U

undo 9-17
user interface
minimize 9-2
overview 2-6

V

vectorscope 100 % 5-5
vectorscope 75 % 5-5
vertical editing 6-67, A-5
video
file format A-9
format 3-7, 6-2
looped preview 8-63
output 6-12
resolution 6-12, 6-85
thumbnail of clip 4-11
vertical editing 6-67
video board 2-2
connecting the driver 9-24
driver 2-2
video clip 6-60, A-6
see also video
alpha channel 6-63, 6-72
attach to audio 6-55, 6-61, 6-76
length 5-20
properties 2-5, 3-6, 4-21, 6-63, 7-1, 7-10, 8-64

source 4-23, 5-21, 5-22, 6-58, 6-61, 6-64, 6-66
thumbnail 4-11
video drive 1-7
video format
see output format
video overlay 5-2, 8-61
alpha channel 6-63, 6-72
aspect ratio 5-2, 6-14
current job 4-33
safety areas 5-2
size 5-3
split screen 8-62, 8-65
video raster 3-7, 3-10, 5-2, 6-12
default 6-14
film 6-14
information 2-10
video scope 5-3
activation 5-3
configuration 5-5
deactivation 5-5
layout configuration 5-4
RGB parade 5-6
scene detection 5-5, 6-71
vectorscope 100 % 5-5
vectorscope 75 % 5-5
waveform 5-7
YUV parade 5-7
video track 3-7, 6-3, 6-4
button 3-10, 6-37
change display 6-8
EDL 8-11, 8-30
hide 6-6
lock 6-36
mute 6-36
name 6-28
number 6-7
size 6-7
size (manual setting) 6-8
view buttons (bin) 4-4, 4-5
view of EDLs 8-28, 8-42, 8-44
view of timeline 6-29
Timeline as EDL 8-24, 8-30
virtual source timecode 2-16, 6-11, 8-58
exporting EDL 9-11
volume 1-1
control line 6-77
control point 6-77
VTR 5-12, 8-35, 8-54, A-6
VTR timeline A-6
VTR-TL 8-16, 8-36, 8-50

W

warning message 4-13
waveform (video scope) 5-7
waveform display 5-15, 6-79
Windows
file manager 3-4, 4-7
shortcuts 3-2, A-7
wipe 3-14, 7-7
Crossfade 7-7
reverse 7-9
shapes 7-8
softness 7-9
workflow (proxy usage) 2-12

Y

YUV parade 5-7

Z

zoom on timeline 3-9, 5-9, 6-30
zooming 6-63, 7-10, 7-16
filter 7-18
items 7-16